Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2026

https://archive.org/details/bwb_Y0-EJP-106_2

(8) $20.00
12 Vols

A HALF-CENTURY OF CONFLICT.

VOL. II.

FRANCIS PARKMAN'S WRITINGS.

THE OREGON TRAIL . . . . . 1 vol.
THE CONSPIRACY OF PONTIAC . . . . . 2 vols.

France and England in North America.

PIONEERS OF FRANCE IN THE NEW WORLD . . 1 vol.
THE JESUITS IN NORTH AMERICA . . . . . 1 vol.
LA SALLE AND THE DISCOVERY OF THE GREAT WEST . . . . . 1 vol.
THE OLD RÉGIME IN CANADA UNDER LOUIS XIV. 1 vol.
COUNT FRONTENAC AND NEW FRANCE UNDER LOUIS XIV. . . . . 1 vol.
A HALF-CENTURY OF CONFLICT . . . . . 2 vols.
MONTCALM AND WOLFE . . . . . 2 vols.

FRANCE AND ENGLAND IN NORTH AMERICA.

PART SIXTH.

A HALF-CENTURY OF CONFLICT.

BY

FRANCIS PARKMAN,

AUTHOR OF "THE OREGON TRAIL," "THE CONSPIRACY OF PONTIAC," "PIONEERS OF FRANCE IN THE NEW WORLD," "THE JESUITS IN NORTH AMERICA," "LA SALLE," "THE OLD RÉGIME IN CANADA," AND "COUNT FRONTENAC."

IN TWO VOLUMES.

VOL. II.

COPYRIGHT EDITION

TORONTO

GEORGE N. MORANG & COMPANY, LIMITED

1901

Entered according to Act of the Parliament of Canada, in the year nineteen hundred, by George N. Morang & Company, Limited, at the Department of Agriculture.

Toronto
Brown-Searle Printing Co.

CONTENTS.

CHAPTER XV.

1697–1741.

FRANCE IN THE FAR WEST.

PAGE

French Explorers. — Le Sueur on the St. Peter's. — Canadians on the Missouri. — Juchereau de Saint-Denis. — Bénard de la Harpe on Red River. — Adventures of Du Tisné. — Bourgmont visits the Comanches. — The Brothers Mallet in Colorado and New Mexico. — Fabry de la Bruyère 1

CHAPTER XVI.

1716–1761.

SEARCH FOR THE PACIFIC.

The Western Sea. — Schemes for reaching it. — Journey of Charlevoix. — The Sioux Mission. — Varennes de la Vérendrye. — His Enterprise. — His Disasters. — Visits the Mandans. — His Sons. — Their Search for the Western Sea. — Their Adventures. — The Snake Indians. — A Great War-Party. — The Rocky Mountains. — A Panic. — Return of the Brothers. — Their Wrongs and their Fate 24

CHAPTER XVII.

1700–1750.

THE CHAIN OF POSTS.

Opposing Claims. — Attitude of the Rival Nations. — America a French Continent. — England a Usurper. — French Demands. — Magnanimous Proposals. — Warlike Preparation. — Niagara. — Oswego. — Crown Point. — The Passes of the West secured . . 63

CHAPTER XVIII.

1744, 1745.

A MAD SCHEME.

PAGE

War of the Austrian Succession. — The French seize Canseau and attack Annapolis. — Plan of Reprisal. — William Vaughan. — Governor Shirley. — He advises an Attack on Louisbourg. — The Assembly refuses, but at last consents. — Preparation. — William Pepperrell. — George Whitefield. — Parson Moody. — The Soldiers. — The Provincial Navy. — Commodore Warren. — Shirley as an Amateur Soldier. — The Fleet sails 78

CHAPTER XIX.

1745.

LOUISBOURG BESIEGED.

Seth Pomeroy. — The Voyage. — Canseau. — Unexpected Succors. — Delays. — Louisbourg. — The Landing. — The Grand Battery taken. — French Cannon turned on the Town. — Weakness of Duchambon. — Sufferings of the Besiegers. — Their Hardihood. — Their Irregular Proceedings. — Joseph Sherburn. — Amateur Gunnery. — Camp Frolics. — Sectarian Zeal. — Perplexities of Pepperrell 108

CHAPTER XX.

1745.

LOUISBOURG TAKEN.

A Rash Resolution. — The Island Battery. — The Volunteers — The Attack. — The Repulse. — Capture of the "Vigilant." — A Sortie. — Skirmishes. — Despondency of the French. — English Camp threatened. — Pepperrell and Warren. — Warren's Plan. — Preparation for a General Attack. — Flag of Truce. — Capitulation. — State of the Fortress. — Parson Moody. — Soldiers dissatisfied. — Disorders. — Army and Navy. — Rejoicings. — England repays Provincial Outlays 135

CHAPTER XXI.

1745–1747.

DUC D'ANVILLE.

Louisbourg after the Conquest. — Mutiny. — Pestilence. — Stephen Williams. — His Diary. — Scheme of conquering Canada. —

PAGE

Newcastle's Promises. — Alarm in Canada. — Promises broken. — Plan against Crown Point. — Startling News. — D'Anville's Fleet. — Louisbourg to be avenged. — Disasters of D'Anville. — Storm. — Pestilence. — Famine. — Death of D'Anville. — Suicide of the Vice-Admiral. — Ruinous Failure. — Return Voyage. — Defeat of La Jonquière 162

CHAPTER XXII.

1745–1747.

ACADIAN CONFLICTS.

Efforts of France. — Apathy of Newcastle. — Dilemma of Acadians. — Their Character. — Danger of the Province. — Plans of Shirley. — Acadian Priests. — Political Agitators. — Noble's Expedition. — Ramesay at Beaubassin. — Noble at Grand-Pré. — A Winter March. — Defeat and Death of Noble. — Grand-Pré re-occupied by the English. — Threats of Ramesay against the Acadians. — The British Ministry will not protect them . . . 186

CHAPTER XXIII.

1740–1747.

WAR AND POLITICS.

Governor and Assembly. — Saratoga destroyed. — William Johnson. — Border Ravages. — Upper Ashuelot. — French "Military Movements." — Number Four. — Niverville's Attack. — Phineas Stevens. — The French repulsed 221

CHAPTER XXIV.

1745–1748.

FORT MASSACHUSETTS.

Frontier Defence. — Northfield and its Minister. — Military Criticisms of Rev. Benjamin Doolittle. — Rigaud de Vaudreuil. — His Great War-Party. — He attacks Fort Massachusetts. — Sergeant Hawks and his Garrison. — A Gallant Defence. — Capitulation. — Humanity of the French. — Ravages. — Return to Crown Point. — Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle 245

APPENDIX.

PAGE

A. FRANCE CLAIMS ALL NORTH AMERICA EXCEPT THE SPANISH COLONIES 273

B. FRENCH VIEWS OF THE SIEGE OF LOUISBOURG 288

C. SHIRLEY'S RELATIONS WITH THE ACADIANS 321

INDEX 361

Illustrations

DANIEL HYACINTHE MARIE LIENARD DE BEAUJEU . . . . . *Frontispiece*

From a pastel miniature in the possession of Abbé Verreau, Montreal.

A HALF-CENTURY OF CONFLICT.

CHAPTER XV.

1697–1741.

FRANCE IN THE FAR WEST.

FRENCH EXPLORERS. — LE SUEUR ON THE ST. PETER'S. — CANADIANS ON THE MISSOURI. — JUCHEREAU DE SAINT-DENIS. — BÉNARD DE LA HARPE ON RED RIVER. — ADVENTURES OF DU TISNÉ. — BOURGMONT VISITS THE COMANCHES. — THE BROTHERS MALLET IN COLORADO AND NEW MEXICO. — FABRY DE LA BRUYÈRE.

THE occupation by France of the lower Mississippi gave a strong impulse to the exploration of the West, by supplying a base for discovery, stimulating enterprise by the longing to find gold mines, open trade with New Mexico, and get a fast hold on the countries beyond the Mississippi in anticipation of Spain; and to these motives was soon added the hope of finding an overland way to the Pacific. It was the Canadians, with their indomitable spirit of adventure, who led the way in the path of discovery.

As a bold and hardy pioneer of the wilderness, the Frenchman in America has rarely found his match. His civic virtues withered under the despotism of Versailles, and his mind and conscience were kept in leading-strings by an absolute Church; but the forest and the prairie offered him an unbridled liberty, which, lawless as it was, gave scope to his energies, till these savage

wastes became the field of his most noteworthy achievements.

Canada was divided between two opposing influences. On the one side were the monarchy and the hierarchy, with their principles of order, subordination, and obedience: substantially at one in purpose, since both wished to keep the colony within manageable bounds, domesticate it, and tame it to soberness, regularity, and obedience. On the other side was the spirit of liberty, or license, which was in the very air of this wilderness continent, reinforced in the chiefs of the colony by a spirit of adventure inherited from the Middle Ages, and by a spirit of trade born of present opportunities; for every official in Canada hoped to make a profit, if not a fortune, out of beaver-skins. Kindred impulses, in ruder forms, possessed the humbler colonists, drove them into the forest, and made them hardy woodsmen and skilful bush-fighters, though turbulent and lawless members of civilized society.

Time, the decline of the fur-trade, and the influence of the Canadian Church gradually diminished this erratic spirit, and at the same time impaired the qualities that were associated with it. The Canadian became a more stable colonist and a steadier farmer; but for forest journeyings and forest warfare he was scarcely his former self. At the middle of the eighteenth century we find complaints that the race of *voyageurs* is growing scarce. The taming process was most apparent in the central and lower parts of the colony, such as

the Côte de Beaupré and the opposite shore of the St. Lawrence, where the hands of the government and of the Church were strong: while at the head of the colony, — that is, about Montreal and its neighborhood, — which touched the primeval wilderness, an uncontrollable spirit of adventure still held its own. Here, at the beginning of the century, this spirit was as strong as it had ever been, and achieved a series of explorations and discoveries which revealed the plains of the Far West long before an Anglo-Saxon foot had pressed their soil.

The expedition of one Le Sueur to what is now the State of Minnesota may be taken as the starting-point of these enterprises. Le Sueur had visited the country of the Sioux as early as 1683. He returned thither in 1689 with the famous *voyageur* Nicolas Perrot.[1] Four years later, Count Frontenac sent him to the Sioux country again. The declared purpose of the mission was to keep those fierce tribes at peace with their neighbors; but the Governor's enemies declared that a contraband trade in beaver was the true object, and that Frontenac's secretary was to have half the profits.[2] Le Sueur returned after two years, bringing to Montreal a Sioux chief and his squaw, — the first of the tribe ever seen there. He then went to France, and represented to the court that he had built a fort at Lake Pepin, on the upper Mississippi; that he was the only white man who knew the languages

[1] *Journal historique de l'Etablissement des Français à la Louisiane*, 43.

[2] *Champigny au Ministre*, 4 *Nov.* 1693.

of that region; and that if the French did not speedily seize upon it, the English, who were already trading upon the Ohio, would be sure to do so. Thereupon he asked for the command of the upper Mississippi, with all its tributary waters, together with a monopoly of its fur-trade for ten years, and permission to work its mines, promising that if his petition were granted, he would secure the country to France without expense to the King. The commission was given him. He bought an outfit and sailed for Canada, but was captured by the English on the way. After the peace he returned to France and begged for a renewal of his commission. Leave was given him to work the copper and lead mines, but not to trade in beaver-skins. He now formed a company to aid him in his enterprise, on which a cry rose in Canada that under pretence of working mines he meant to trade in beaver,— which is very likely, since to bring lead and copper in bark canoes to Montreal from the Mississippi and Lake Superior would cost far more than the metal was worth. In consequence of this clamor his commission was revoked.

Perhaps it was to compensate him for the outlays into which he had been drawn that the colonial minister presently authorized him to embark for Louisiana and pursue his enterprise with that infant colony, instead of Canada, as his base of operations. Thither, therefore, he went; and in April, 1700, set out for the Sioux country with twenty-five men, in a small vessel of the kind called a "felucca," still used in the Mediterranean.

Among the party was an adventurous youth named Penecaut, a ship-carpenter by trade, who had come to Louisiana with Iberville two years before, and who has left us an account of his voyage with Le Sueur.[1]

The party slowly made their way, with sail and oar, against the muddy current of the Mississippi, till they reached the Arkansas, where they found an English trader from Carolina. On the 10th of June, spent with rowing, and half starved, they stopped to rest at a point fifteen leagues above the mouth of the Ohio. They had staved off famine with the buds and leaves of trees; but now, by good luck, one of them killed a bear, and, soon after, the Jesuit Limoges arrived from the neighboring mission of the Illinois, in a canoe well stored with provisions. Thus refreshed, they passed the mouth of the Missouri on the 13th of July, and soon after were met by three Canadians, who brought them a letter from the Jesuit Marest, warning them that the river was infested by war-parties. In fact, they presently saw seven canoes of Sioux warriors, bound against the Illinois; and not long after, five Canadians appeared, one of whom had been badly wounded in a recent encounter with a band of Outagamies, Sacs, and Winnebagoes bound against the Sioux. To take one another's scalps had been for ages the absorbing business and favorite recreation of all these West-

[1] *Relation de Penecaut.* In my possession is a contemporary manuscript of this narrative, for which I am indebted to the kindness of General J. Meredith Reade.

ern tribes. At or near the expansion of the Mississippi called Lake Pepin, the voyagers found a fort called Fort Perrot, after its builder;[1] and on an island near the upper end of the lake, another similar structure, built by Le Sueur himself on his last visit to the place. These forts were mere stockades, occupied from time to time by the roving fur-traders as their occasions required.

Towards the end of September, Le Sueur and his followers reached the mouth of the St. Peter, which they ascended to Blue Earth River. Pushing a league up this stream, they found a spot well suited to their purpose, and here they built a fort, of which there was great need, for they were soon after joined by seven Canadian traders, plundered and stripped to the skin by the neighboring Sioux. Le Sueur named the new post Fort l'Huillier. It was a fence of pickets, enclosing cabins for the men. The neighboring plains were black with buffalo, of which the party killed four hundred, and cut them into quarters, which they placed to freeze on scaffolds within the enclosure. Here they spent the winter, subsisting on the frozen meat, without bread, vegetables, or salt, and, according to Penecaut, thriving marvellously, though the

[1] Penecaut, *Journal*. *Procès-verbal de la Prise de Possession du Pays des Nadouessioux, etc., par Nicolas Perrot*, 1689. Fort Perrot seems to have been built in 1685, and to have stood near the outlet of the lake, probably on the west side. Perrot afterwards built another fort, called Fort St. Antoine, a little above, on the east bank. The position of these forts has been the subject of much discussion, and cannot be ascertained with precision. It appears by the *Prise de Possession*, cited above, that there was also, in 1689, a temporary French post near the mouth of the Wisconsin.

surrounding wilderness was buried five feet deep in snow.

Band after band of Sioux appeared, with their wolfish dogs and their sturdy and all-enduring squaws burdened with the heavy hide coverings of their teepees, or buffalo-skin tents. They professed friendship and begged for arms. Those of one band had blackened their faces in mourning for a dead chief, and calling on Le Sueur to share their sorrow, they wept over him, and wiped their tears on his hair. Another party of warriors arrived with yet deeper cause of grief, being the remnant of a village half exterminated by their enemies. They, too, wept profusely over the French commander, and then sang a dismal song, with heads muffled in their buffalo-robes.[1] Le Sueur took the needful precautions against his dangerous visitors, but got from them a large supply of beaver-skins in exchange for his goods.

When spring opened, he set out in search of mines, and found, not far above the fort, those beds of blue and green earth to which the stream owes its name. Of this his men dug out a large quantity, and selecting what seemed the best, stored it in their vessel as a precious commodity. With this and good store of beaver-skins, Le Sueur now began his return voyage for Louisiana, leaving a Canadian named D'Éraque and twelve men to keep the fort till he should come back to

[1] This weeping over strangers was a custom with the Sioux of that time mentioned by many early writers. La Mothe-Cadillac marvels that a people so brave and warlike should have such a fountain of tears always at command.

reclaim it, promising to send him a canoe-load of ammunition from the Illinois. But the canoe was wrecked, and D'Éraque, discouraged, abandoned Fort l'Huillier, and followed his commander down the Mississippi.[1]

Le Sueur, with no authority from government, had opened relations of trade with the wild Sioux of the Plains, whose westward range stretched to the Black Hills, and perhaps to the Rocky Mountains. He reached the settlements of Louisiana in safety, and sailed for France with four thousand pounds of his worthless blue earth.[2] Repairing at once to Versailles, he begged for help to continue his enterprise. His petition seems to have been granted. After long delay, he sailed again for Louisiana, fell ill on the voyage, and died soon after landing.[3]

Before 1700, the year when Le Sueur visited the St. Peter, little or nothing was known of the country west of the Mississippi, except from the report of Indians. The romances of La Hontan and Matthieu Sagean were justly set down as impostures by all but the most credulous. In this same year we find Le Moyne d'Iberville projecting journeys to the upper Missouri, in hopes of finding

[1] In 1702 the geographer De l'Isle made a remarkable MS. map entitled *Carte de la Rivière du Mississippi, dressée sur les Mémoires de M. Le Sueur.*

[2] According to the geologist Featherstonhaugh, who examined the locality, this earth owes its color to a bluish-green silicate of iron.

[3] Besides the long and circumstantial *Relation de Penecaut*, an account of the earlier part of Le Sueur's voyage up the Mississippi is contained in the *Mémoire du Chevalier de Beaurain*, which, with other papers relating to this explorer, including portions of his Journal, will be found in Margry, VI. See also *Journal historique de l'Etablissement des Français à la Louisiane*, 38–71.

a river flowing to the Western Sea. In 1703, twenty Canadians tried to find their way from the Illinois to New Mexico, in hope of opening trade with the Spaniards and discovering mines.[1] In 1704 we find it reported that more than a hundred Canadians are scattered in small parties along the Mississippi and the Missouri;[2] and in 1705 one Laurain appeared at the Illinois, declaring that he had been high up the Missouri and had visited many tribes on its borders.[3] A few months later, two Canadians told Bienville a similar story. In 1708 Nicolas de la Salle proposed an expedition of a hundred men to explore the same mysterious river; and in 1717 one Hubert laid before the Council of Marine a scheme for following the Missouri to its source, since, he says, "not only may we find the mines worked by the Spaniards, but also discover the great river that is said to rise in the mountains where the Missouri has its source, and is believed to flow to the Western Sea." And he advises that a hundred and fifty men be sent up the river in wooden canoes, since bark canoes would be dangerous, by reason of the multitude of snags.[4]

In 1714 Juchereau de Saint-Denis was sent by La Mothe-Cadillac to explore western Louisiana, and pushed up Red River to a point sixty-eight leagues, as he reckons, above Natchitoches. In the next year, journeying across country towards the

[1] *Iberville à* ——, 15 *Fév.* 1703 (Margry, VI. 180).
[2] *Bienville au Ministre*, 6 *Sept.* 1704.
[3] Beaurain, *Journal historique.*
[4] Hubert, *Mémoire envoyé au Conseil de la Marine.*

Spanish settlements, with a view to trade, he was seized near the Rio Grande and carried to the city of Mexico. The Spaniards, jealous of French designs, now sent priests and soldiers to occupy several points in Texas. Juchereau, however, was well treated, and permitted to marry a Spanish girl with whom he had fallen in love on the way; but when, in the autumn of 1716, he ventured another journey to the Mexican borders, still hoping to be allowed to trade, he and his goods were seized by order of the Mexican viceroy, and, lest worse should befall him, he fled empty handed, under cover of night.[1]

In March, 1719, Bénard de la Harpe left the feeble little French post at Natchitoches with six soldiers and a sergeant.[2] His errand was to explore the country, open trade if possible with the Spaniards, and establish another post high up Red River. He and his party soon came upon that vast entanglement of driftwood, or rather of uprooted forests, afterwards known as the Red River raft, which choked the stream and forced them to make their way through the inundated jungle that bordered it. As they pushed or dragged their canoes through the swamp, they saw with disgust and alarm a good number of snakes, coiled about twigs and boughs on the right and left, or sometimes over their heads. These were probably the deadly water-moccason, which in warm weather is

[1] Penecaut, *Relation*, chaps. xvii., xviii. Le Page du Pratz, *Histoire de la Louisiane*, I. 13–22. Various documents in Margry, VI. 193–202.

[2] For an interesting contemporary map of the French establishment at Natchitoches, see Thomassy, *Géologie pratique de la Louisiane.*

accustomed to crawl out of its favorite element and bask itself in the sun, precisely as described by La Harpe. Their nerves were further discomposed by the splashing and plunging of alligators lately wakened from their wintry torpor. Still, they pushed painfully on, till they reached navigable water again, and at the end of the month were, as they thought, a hundred and eight leagues above Natchitoches. In four days more they reached the Nassonites.

These savages belonged to a group of stationary tribes, only one of which, the Caddoes, survives to our day as a separate community. Their enemies the Chickasaws, Osages, Arkansas, and even the distant Illinois, waged such deadly war against them that, according to La Harpe, the unfortunate Nassonites were in the way of extinction, their numbers having fallen, within ten years, from twenty-five hundred souls to four hundred.[1]

La Harpe stopped among them to refresh his men, and build a house of cypress-wood as a beginning of the post he was ordered to establish; then, having heard that a war with Spain had ruined his hopes of trade with New Mexico, he resolved to pursue his explorations.

With him went ten men, white, red, and black, with twenty-two horses bought from the Indians, for his journeyings were henceforth to be by land. The party moved in a northerly and westerly course, by hills, forests, and prairies, passed two branches of the Wichita, and on the 3d of Septem-

[1] Bénard de la Harpe, in Margry, VI. 264.

ber came to a river which La Harpe calls the southwest branch of the Arkansas, but which, if his observation of latitude is correct, must have been the main stream, not far from the site of Fort Mann. Here he was met by seven Indian chiefs, mounted on excellent horses saddled and bridled after the Spanish manner. They led him to where, along the plateau of the low, treeless hills that bordered the valley, he saw a string of Indian villages, extending for a league and belonging to nine several bands, the names of which can no longer be recognized, and most of which are no doubt extinct. He says that they numbered in all six thousand souls; and their dwellings were high, dome-shaped structures, built of clay mixed with reeds and straw, resting, doubtless, on a frame of bent poles.[1] With them were also some of the roving Indians of the plains, with their conical teepees of dressed buffalo-skin.

The arrival of the strangers was a great and amazing event for these savages, few of whom had ever seen a white man. On the day after their arrival the whole multitude gathered to receive them and offer them the calumet, with a profusion of songs and speeches. Then warrior after warrior recounted his exploits and boasted of the scalps he had taken. From eight in the morning till two hours after midnight the din of drums, songs, harangues, and dances continued

[1] Beaurain says that each of these bands spoke a language of its own. They had horses in abundance, descended from Spanish stock. Among them appear to have been the Ouacos, or Huecos, and the Wichitas, — two tribes better known as the Pawnee Picts. See Marcy, *Exploration of Red River.*

without relenting, with a prospect of twelve hours more; and La Harpe, in desperation, withdrew to rest himself on a buffalo-robe, begging another Frenchman to take his place. His hosts left him in peace for a while; then the chiefs came to find him, painted his face blue, as a tribute of respect, put a cap of eagle-feathers on his head, and laid numerous gifts at his feet. When at last the ceremony ended, some of the performers were so hoarse from incessant singing that they could hardly speak.[1]

La Harpe was told by his hosts that the Spanish settlements could be reached by ascending their river; but to do this was at present impossible. He began his backward journey, fell desperately ill of a fever, and nearly died before reaching Natchitoches.

Having recovered, he made an attempt, two years later, to explore the Arkansas in canoes, from its mouth, but accomplished little besides killing a good number of buffalo, bears, deer, and wild turkeys. He was confirmed, however, in the belief that the Comanches and the Spaniards of New Mexico might be reached by this route.

In the year of La Harpe's first exploration, one Du Tisné went up the Missouri to a point six leagues above Grand River, where stood the village of the Missouris. He wished to go farther, but they would not let him. He then returned

[1] Compare the account of La Harpe with that of the Chevalier de Beaurain; both are in Margry, VI. There is an abstract in *Journal historique.*

to the Illinois, whence he set out on horseback with a few followers across what is now the State of Missouri, till he reached the village of the Osages, which stood on a hill high up the river Osage. At first he was well received; but when they found him disposed to push on to a town of their enemies, the Pawnees, forty leagues distant, they angrily refused to let him go. His firmness and hardihood prevailed, and at last they gave him leave. A ride of a few days over rich prairies brought him to the Pawnees, who, coming as he did from the hated Osages, took him for an enemy and threatened to kill him. Twice they raised the tomahawk over his head: but when the intrepid traveller dared them to strike, they began to treat him as a friend. When, however, he told them that he meant to go fifteen days' journey farther, to the Padoucas, or Comanches, their deadly enemies, they fiercely forbade him; and after planting a French flag in their village, he returned as he had come, guiding his way by compass, and reaching the Illinois in November, after extreme hardships.[1]

Early in 1721 two hundred mounted Spaniards, followed by a large body of Comanche warriors, came from New Mexico to attack the French at the Illinois, but were met and routed on the Missouri by tribes of that region.[2] In the next year, Bienville was told that they meant to return, pun-

[1] *Relation de Bénard de la Harpe. Autre Relation du même. Du Tisné à Bienville.* Margry, VI. 309, 310, 313.

[2] *Bienville au Conseil de Régence,* 20 *Juillet,* 1721.

ish those who had defeated them, and establish a post on the river Kansas; whereupon he ordered Boisbriant, commandant at the Illinois, to anticipate them by sending troops to build a French fort at or near the same place. But the West India Company had already sent one Bourgmont on a similar errand, the object being to trade with the Spaniards in time of peace, and stop their incursions in time of war.[1] It was hoped also that, in the interest of trade, peace might be made between the Comanches and the tribes of the Missouri.[2]

Bourgmont was a man of some education, and well acquainted with these tribes, among whom he had traded for years. In pursuance of his orders he built a fort, which he named Fort Orléans, and which stood on the Missouri not far above the mouth of Grand River. Having thus accomplished one part of his mission, he addressed himself to the other, and prepared to march for the Comanche villages.

Leaving a sufficient garrison at the fort, he sent his ensign, Saint-Ange, with a party of soldiers and Canadians, in wooden canoes, to the villages of the Kansas higher up the stream, and on the 3d of July set out by land to join him, with a hundred and nine Missouri Indians and sixty-eight Osages in his train. A ride of five days brought

1 *Instructions au Sieur de Bourgmont*, 17 *Jan.* 1722. Margry, VI. 389.

2 The French had at this time gained a knowledge of the tribes of the Missouri as far up as the Arickaras, who were not, it seems, many days' journey below the Yellowstone, and who told them of "prodigiously high mountains," — evidently the Rocky Mountains. *Mémoire de la Renaudière*, 1723.

him again to the banks of the Missouri, opposite a Kansas town. Saint-Ange had not yet arrived, the angry and turbid current, joined to fevers among his men, having retarded his progress. Meanwhile Bourgmont drew from the Kansas a promise that their warriors should go with him to the Comanches. Saint-Ange at last appeared, and at daybreak of the 24th the tents were struck and the pack-horses loaded. At six o'clock the party drew up in battle array on a hill above the Indian town, and then, with drum beating and flag flying, began their march. "A fine prairie country," writes Bourgmont, "with hills and dales and clumps of trees to right and left." Sometimes the landscape quivered under the sultry sun, and sometimes thunder bellowed over their heads, and rain fell in floods on the steaming plains.

Renaudière, engineer of the party, one day stood by the side of the path and watched the whole procession as it passed him. The white men were about twenty in all. He counted about three hundred Indian warriors, with as many squaws, some five hundred children, and a prodigious number of dogs, the largest and strongest of which dragged heavy loads. The squaws also served as beasts of burden; and, says the journal, "they will carry as much as a dog will drag." Horses were less abundant among these tribes than they afterwards became, so that their work fell largely upon the women.

On the sixth day the party was within three leagues of the river Kansas, at a considerable

distance above its mouth. Bourgmont had suffered from dysentery on the march, and an access of the malady made it impossible for him to go farther. It is easy to conceive the regret with which he saw himself compelled to return to Fort Orléans. The party retraced their steps, carrying their helpless commander on a litter.

First, however, he sent one Gaillard on a perilous errand. Taking with him two Comanche slaves bought for the purpose from the Kansas, Gaillard was ordered to go to the Comanche villages with the message that Bourgmont had been on his way to make them a friendly visit, and though stopped by illness, hoped soon to try again, with better success.

Early in September, Bourgmont, who had arrived safely at Fort Orléans, received news that the mission of Gaillard had completely succeeded; on which, though not wholly recovered from his illness, he set out again on his errand of peace, accompanied by his young son, besides Renaudière, a surgeon, and nine soldiers. On reaching the great village of the Kansas he found there five Comanche chiefs and warriors, whom Gaillard had induced to come thither with him. Seven chiefs of the Otoes presently appeared, in accordance with an invitation of Bourgmont; then six chiefs of the Iowas and the head chief of the Missouris. With these and the Kansas chiefs a solemn council was held around a fire before Bourgmont's tent; speeches were made, the pipe of peace was smoked, and presents were distributed.

On the 8th of October the march began, the five Comanches and the chiefs of several other tribes, including the Omahas, joining the cavalcade. Gaillard and another Frenchman named Quesnel were sent in advance to announce their approach to the Comanches, while Bourgmont and his followers moved up the north side of the river Kansas till the eleventh, when they forded it at a point twenty leagues from its mouth, and took a westward and southwestward course, sometimes threading the grassy valleys of little streams, sometimes crossing the dry upland prairie, covered with the short, tufted dull-green herbage since known as "buffalo grass." Wild turkeys clamored along every watercourse; deer were seen on all sides, buffalo were without number, sometimes in grazing droves, and sometimes dotting the endless plain as far as the eye could reach. Ruffian wolves, white and gray, eyed the travellers askance, keeping a safe distance by day, and howling about the camp all night. Of the antelope and the elk the journal makes no mention. Bourgmont chased a buffalo on horseback and shot him with a pistol, — which is probably the first recorded example of that way of hunting.

The stretches of high, rolling, treeless prairie grew more vast as the travellers advanced. On the 17th, they found an abandoned Comanche camp. On the next day as they stopped to dine, and had just unsaddled their horses, they saw a distant smoke towards the west, on which they set the dry grass on fire as an answering signal. Half an

hour later a body of wild horsemen came towards them at full speed, and among them were their two couriers, Gaillard and Quesnel, waving a French flag. The strangers were eighty Comanche warriors, with the grand chief of the tribe at their head. They dashed up to Bourgmont's bivouac and leaped from their horses, when a general shaking of hands ensued, after which white men and red seated themselves on the ground and smoked the pipe of peace. Then all rode together to the Comanche camp, three leagues distant.[1]

Bourgmont pitched his tents at a pistol-shot from the Comanche lodges, whence a crowd of warriors presently came to visit him. They spread buffalo-robes on the ground, placed upon them the French commander, his officers, and his young son; then lifted each, with its honored load, and carried them all, with yells of joy and gratulation, to the lodge of the Great Chief, where there was a feast of ceremony lasting till nightfall.

On the next day Bourgmont displayed to his hosts the marvellous store of gifts he had brought for them, — guns, swords, hatchets, kettles, gunpowder, bullets, red cloth, blue cloth, hand-mirrors, knives, shirts, awls, scissors, needles, hawks' bells, vermilion, beads, and other enviable commodities,

[1] This meeting took place a little north of the Arkansas, apparently where that river makes a northward bend, near the 22d degree of west longitude. The Comanche villages were several days' journey to the southwest. This tribe is always mentioned in the early French narratives as the Padoucas, — a name by which the Comanches are occasionally known to this day. See Whipple and Turner, *Reports upon Indian Tribes*, in *Explorations and Surveys for the Pacific Railroad* (Senate Doc., 1853, 1854).

of the like of which they had never dreamed. Two hundred savages gathered before the French tents, where Bourgmont, with the gifts spread on the ground before him, stood with a French flag in his hand, surrounded by his officers and the Indian chiefs of his party, and harangued the admiring auditors.

He told them that he had come to bring them a message from the King, his master, who was the Great Chief of all the nations of the earth, and whose will it was that the Comanches should live in peace with his other children, — the Missouris, Osages, Kansas, Otoes, Omahas, and Pawnees,— with whom they had long been at war; that the chiefs of these tribes were now present, ready to renounce their old enmities; that the Comanches should henceforth regard them as friends, share with them the blessing of alliance and trade with the French, and give to these last free passage through their country to trade with the Spaniards of New Mexico. Bourgmont then gave the French flag to the Great Chief, to be kept forever as a pledge of that day's compact. The chief took the flag, and promised in behalf of his people to keep peace inviolate with the Indian children of the King. Then, with unspeakable delight, he and his tribesmen took and divided the gifts.

The next two days were spent in feasts and rejoicings. "Is it true that you are men?" asked the Great Chief. "I have heard wonders of the French, but I never could have believed what I

see this day." Then, taking up a handful of earth, "The Spaniards are like this; but you are like the sun." And he offered Bourgmont, in case of need, the aid of his two thousand Comanche warriors. The pleasing manners of his visitors, and their unparalleled generosity, had completely won his heart.

As the object of the expedition was accomplished, or seemed to be so, the party set out on their return. A ride of ten days brought them again to the Missouri; they descended in canoes to Fort Orléans, and sang Te Deum in honor of the peace.[1]

No farther discovery in this direction was made for the next fifteen years. Though the French had explored the Missouri as far as the site of Fort Clark and the Mandan villages, they were possessed by the idea — due, perhaps, to Indian reports concerning the great tributary river, the Yellowstone — that in its upper course the main stream bent so far southward as to form a waterway to New Mexico, with which it was the constant desire of the authorities of Louisiana to open trade. A way thither was at last made known by two brothers named Mallet, who with six companions went up the Platte to its South Fork, which they called River of the Padoucas,— a name given it on some maps down to the middle of this century. They followed the South Fork for some distance, and then, turning southward and

[1] *Relation du Voyage du Sieur de Bourgmont, Juin–Nov.*, 1724, in Margry, VI. 398. Le Page du Pratz, III. 141.

southwestward, crossed the plains of Colorado. Here the dried dung of the buffalo was their only fuel; and it has continued to feed the camp-fire of the traveller in this treeless region within the memory of many now living. They crossed the upper Arkansas, and apparently the Cimarron, passed Taos, and on the 22d of July reached Santa Fé, where they spent the winter. On the 1st of May, 1740, they began their return journey, three of them crossing the plains to the Pawnee villages, and the rest descending the Arkansas to the Mississippi.[1]

The bold exploit of the brothers Mallet attracted great attention at New Orleans, and Bienville resolved to renew it, find if possible a nearer and better way to Santa Fé, determine the nature and extent of these mysterious western regions, and satisfy a lingering doubt whether they were not contiguous to China and Tartary.[2] A naval officer, Fabry de la Bruyère, was sent on this errand, with the brothers Mallet and a few soldiers and Canadians. He ascended the Canadian

[1] *Journal du Voyage des Frères Mallet, présenté à MM. de Bienville et Salmon.* This narrative is meagre and confused, but serves to establish the main points. *Copie du Certificat donné à Santa Fé aux sept* [huit] *Français par le Général Hurtado*, 24 *Juillet*, 1739. *Père Rébald au Père de Beaubois, sans date. Bienville et Salmon au Ministre*, 30 *Avril*, 1741, in Margry, VI. 455–468.

[2] *Instructions données par Jean-Baptiste de Bienville à Fabry de la Bruyère*, 1 *Juin*, 1741. Bienville was behind his time in geographical knowledge. As early as 1724 Bénard de la Harpe knew that in ascending the Missouri or the Arkansas one was moving towards the "Western Sea," — that is, the Pacific, — and might, perhaps, find some river flowing into it. See *Routes qu'on peut tenir pour se rendre à la Mer de l'Ouest*, in *Journal historique*, 387.

Fork of the Arkansas, named by him the St. André, became entangled in the shallows and quicksands of that difficult river, fell into disputes with his men, and after protracted efforts, returned unsuccessful.[1]

While French enterprise was unveiling the remote Southwest, two indomitable Canadians were pushing still more noteworthy explorations into more northern regions of the continent.

[1] *Extrait des Lettres du Sieur Fabry.*

CHAPTER XVI.

1716–1761.

SEARCH FOR THE PACIFIC.

The Western Sea. — Schemes for reaching it. — Journey of Charlevoix. — The Sioux Mission. — Varennes de la Vérendrye. — His Enterprise. — His Disasters. — Visits the Mandans. — His Sons. — Their Search for the Western Sea. — Their Adventures. — The Snake Indians. — A great War-Party. — The Rocky Mountains. — A Panic. — Return of the Brothers. — Their Wrongs and their Fate.

In the disastrous last years of Louis XIV. the court gave little thought to the New World; but under the regency of the Duke of Orléans interest in American affairs revived. Plans for reaching the Mer de l'Ouest, or Pacific Ocean, were laid before the Regent in 1716. It was urged that the best hope was in sending an expedition across the continent, seeing that every attempt to find a westward passage by Hudson Bay had failed. As starting-points and bases of supply for the expedition, it was proposed to establish three posts, one on the north shore of Lake Superior, at the mouth of the river Kaministiguia, another at Lac des Cristineaux, now called Lake of the Woods, and the third at Lake Winnipeg, — the last being what in American phrase is called the "jumping-off place," or the point where the

expedition was to leave behind the last trace of civilization. These posts were to cost the Crown nothing; since by a device common in such cases, those who built and maintained them were to be paid by a monopoly of the fur-trade in the adjacent countries. It was admitted, however, that the subsequent exploration must be at the charge of the government, and would require fifty good men, at 300 francs a year each, besides equipment and supplies. All things considered, it was reckoned that an overland way to the Pacific might be found for about 50,000 francs, or 10,000 dollars.[1]

The Regent approved the scheme so far as to order the preliminary step to be taken by establishing the three posts, and in this same year, Lieutenant La Noue, of the colony troops, began the work by building a stockade at the mouth of the Kaministiguia. Little more was done in furtherance of the exploration till three years later, when the celebrated Jesuit, Charlevoix, was ordered by the Duke of Orléans to repair to America and gain all possible information concerning the Western Sea and the way to it.[2]

In the next year he went to the Upper Lakes, and questioned missionaries, officers, *voyageurs*, and Indians. The results were not satisfactory. The missionaries and the officers had nothing to tell; the voyagers and Indians knew no more than they, but invented confused and contradic-

[1] *Mémoire fait et arresté par le Conseil de Marine*, 3 *Fév.* 1717; *Mémoire du Roy*, 26 *Juin*, 1717.

[2] *Charlevoix au Comte de Morville*, 1 *Avril*, 1723.

tory falsehoods to hide their ignorance. Charlevoix made note of everything, and reported to the Comte de Toulouse that the Pacific probably formed the western boundary of the country of the Sioux, and that some Indians told him that they had been to its shores and found white men there different from the French.

Believing that these stories were not without foundation, Charlevoix reported two plans as likely to lead to the coveted discovery. One was to ascend the Missouri, "the source of which is certainly not far from the sea, as all the Indians I have met have unanimously assured me;" and the other was to establish a mission among the Sioux, from whom after thoroughly learning their language, the missionaries could, as he thinks, gain all the desired information.[1]

The Regent approved the plan of the mission; but the hostile disposition of the Sioux and the Outagamies prevented its execution for several years. In 1727 the scheme was revived, and the colonial minister at Versailles ordered the Governor of Canada to send two missionaries to the Sioux. But the mission required money, and the King would not give it. Hence the usual expedient was adopted. A company was formed, and invested with a monopoly of the Sioux fur-trade,

[1] The valuable journal of Charlevoix's western travels, written in the form of letters, was published in connection with his *Histoire de la Nouvelle France*. After his visit to the Lakes, he went to New Orleans, intending to return in the spring and continue his inquiries for the Western Sea; but being unable to do this, he went back to France at the end of 1722. The official report of his mission is contained in a letter to the Comte de Toulouse, 20 Jan. 1723.

on condition of building a fort, mission-house, and chapel, and keeping an armed force to guard them. It was specially provided that none but pious and virtuous persons were to be allowed to join the Company, "in order," says the document, "to attract the benediction of God upon them and their business."[1] The prospects of the Company were thought good, and the Governor himself was one of the shareholders. While the mission was given the most conspicuous place in the enterprise, its objects were rather secular than spiritual, — to attach the Sioux to the French interest by the double ties of religion and trade, and utilize their supposed knowledge to reach the Pacific.[2]

Father Guignas was made the head of the mission, and Boucher de la Perrière the military chief. The party left Montreal in June, and journeying to the Mississippi by way of Michillimackinac, Green Bay, Fox River, and the Wisconsin, went up the great river to Lake Pepin, where the adventurous Nicolas Perrot had built two trading-posts more than forty years before. Even if his time-worn tenements were still standing, La Perrière had no thought of occupying them. On the north, or rather west, side of the lake his men found a point of land that seemed fit for their purpose, disembarked, cut down trees, and made a square stockade enclosing the necessary buildings. It was near the end of October before they were all well

[1] *Traité de la Compagnie des Sioux*, 6 *Juin*, 1727.

[2] On this scheme, *Vaudreuil et Bégon au Ministre*, 4 *Oct.* 1723; *Longueuil et Bégon au Ministre*, 31 *Oct.* 1725; *Beauharnois et Dupuy au Ministre*, 25 *Sept.* 1727.

housed. A large band of Sioux presently appeared, and set up their teepees hard by. When the birthday of the Governor came, the party celebrated it with a display of fireworks and vociferous shouts of *Vive le Roi. Vive Charles de Beauharnois*, while the Indians yelped in fright and amazement at the pyrotechnics, or stood pressing their hands upon their mouths in silent amazement. The French called their fort Fort Beauharnois, and invited the aid of Saint Michael the Archangel by naming the mission in his honor. All went well till April, when the water rose with the spring floods and filled fort, chapel, and houses to the depth of nearly three feet, ejecting the whole party, and forcing them to encamp on higher ground till the deluge subsided.[1]

Worse enemies than the floods soon found them out. These were the irrepressible Outagamies, who rose against the intruding French and incited the Sioux to join them. There was no profit for the Company, and no safety for its agents. The stockholders became discouraged, and would not support the enterprise. The fort was abandoned, till in 1731 a new arrangement was made, followed by another attempt.[2] For a time a prosperous trade was carried on; but, as commonly happened in such cases, the adventurers seem to have thought more of utilizing their monopoly than of fulfilling the terms on which they had received it. The wild Sioux of the plains, instead

[1] *Guignas à Beauharnois*, 28 *Mai*, 1728.

[2] *Beauharnois et Hocquart au Ministre*, 25 *Oct.* 1729; *Idem*, 12 *Oct.* 1731.

of being converted and turned into Frenchmen, proved such dangerous neighbors that in 1737 Legardeur de Saint-Pierre, who then commanded the post, found himself forced to abandon it.[1] The enterprise had failed in both its aims. The Western Sea was still a mystery, and the Sioux were not friends, but enemies. Legardeur de Saint-Pierre recommended that they should be destroyed, — benevolent advice easy to give, and impossible to execute.[2]

René Gaultier de Varennes, lieutenant in the regiment of Carignan, married at Three Rivers, in 1667, the daughter of Pierre Boucher, governor of that place; the age of the bride, Demoiselle Marie Boucher, being twelve years, six months, and eighteen days. Varennes succeeded his father-in-law as governor of Three Rivers, with a salary of twelve hundred francs, to which he added the profits of a farm of forty acres; and on these modest resources, reinforced by an illicit trade in furs, he made shift to sustain the dignity of his office. His wife became the mother of numerous offspring, among whom was Pierre, born in 1685, — an active and hardy youth, who, like the rest of the poor but vigorous Canadian *noblesse*, seemed born for the forest and the fur-trade. When, however, the War of the Spanish Succession broke out, the young man crossed the sea, obtained the commission of lieutenant, and

[1] *Relation du Sieur de Saint-Pierre*, 14 *Oct.* 1737.

[2] "Cet officier [Saint-Pierre] a ajouté qu'il seroit avantageux de detruire cette nation." *Mémoire de Beauharnois*, 1738.

was nearly killed at the battle of Malplaquet, where he was shot through the body, received six sabre-cuts, and was left for dead on the field. He recovered, and returned to Canada, when, finding his services slighted, he again took to the woods. He had assumed the designation of La Vérendrye, and thenceforth his full name was Pierre Gaultier de Varennes de la Vérendrye.[1]

In 1728, he was in command of a small post on Lake Nipegon, north of Lake Superior. Here an Indian chief from the River Kaministiguia told him of a certain great lake which discharged itself by a river flowing westward. The Indian further declared that he had descended this river till he reached water that ebbed and flowed, and terrified by the strange phenomenon, had turned back, though not till he had heard of a great salt lake, bordered with many villages. Other Indians confirmed and improved the story. "These people," said La Vérendrye to the Jesuit Degonnor, "are great liars, but now and then they tell the truth."[2] It seemed to him likely that their stories of a western river flowing to a western sea were not totally groundless, and that the true way to the Pacific was not, as had been supposed, through the country of the Sioux, but farther northward, through that of the Cristineaux and Assiniboins, or, in other words, through the region now called

[1] M. Benjamin Sulte has traced out the family history of the Varennes in the parish registers of Three Rivers and other trustworthy sources. See *Revue Canadienne*, X. 781, 849, 935.

[2] *Relation du Père Degonnor, Jésuite, Missionnaire des Sioux, adressée à M. le Marquis de Beauharnois.*

Manitoba. In this view he was sustained by his friend Degonnor, who had just returned from the ill-starred Sioux mission.

La Vérendrye, fired with the zeal of discovery, offered to search for the Western Sea if the King would give him one hundred men and supply canoes, arms, and provisions.[1] But, as was usual in such cases, the King would give nothing; and though the Governor, Beauharnois, did all in his power to promote the enterprise, the burden and the risk were left to the adventurer himself. La Vérendrye was authorized to find a way to the Pacific at his own expense, in consideration of a monopoly of the fur-trade in the regions north and west of Lake Superior. This vast and remote country was held by tribes who were doubtful friends of the French, and perpetual enemies of each other. The risks of the trade were as great as its possible profits, and to reap these, vast outlays must first be made: forts must be built, manned, provisioned, and stocked with goods brought through two thousand miles of difficult and perilous wilderness. There were other dangers, more insidious, and perhaps greater. The exclusive privileges granted to La Vérendrye would inevitably rouse the intensest jealousy of the Canadian merchants, and they would spare no effort to ruin him. Intrigue and calumny would be busy in his absence. If, as was likely, his patron, Beauharnois, should be recalled, the new governor might be turned against him, his privi-

[1] *Relation de Degonnor: Beauharnois au Ministre*, 1 *Oct.* 1731.

leges might be suddenly revoked, the forts he had built passed over to his rivals, and all his outlays turned to their profit, as had happened to La Salle on the recall of his patron, Frontenac. On the other hand, the country was full of the choicest furs, which the Indians had hitherto carried to the English at Hudson Bay, but which the proposed trading-posts would secure to the French. La Vérendrye's enemies pretended that he thought of nothing but beaver-skins, and slighted the discovery which he had bound himself to undertake; but his conduct proves that he was true to his engagements, and that ambition to gain honorable distinction in the service of the King had a large place among the motives that impelled him.

As his own resources were of the smallest, he took a number of associates on conditions most unfavorable to himself. Among them they raised money enough to begin the enterprise, and on the 8th of June, 1731, La Vérendrye and three of his sons, together with his nephew, La Jemeraye, the Jesuit Messager, and a party of Canadians, set out from Montreal. It was late in August before they reached the great portage of Lake Superior, which led across the height of land separating the waters of that lake from those flowing to Lake Winnipeg. The way was long and difficult. The men, who had perhaps been tampered with, mutinied, and refused to go farther.[1] Some of them, with much ado, consented at last

[1] *Mémoire du Sieur de la Vérendrye du Sujet des Etablissements pour parvenir à la Découverte de la Mer de l'Ouest*, in Margry, VI. 585.

to proceed, and, under the lead of La Jemeraye, made their way by an intricate and broken chain of lakes and streams to Rainy Lake, where they built a fort and called it Fort St. Pierre. La Vérendrye was forced to winter with the rest of the party at the river Kaministiguia, not far from the great portage. Here months were lost, during which a crew of useless mutineers had to be fed and paid; and it was not till the next June that he could get them again into motion towards Lake Winnipeg.

This ominous beginning was followed by a train of disasters. His associates abandoned him: the merchants on whom he depended for supplies would not send them, and he found himself, in his own words "destitute of everything." His nephew, La Jemeraye, died. The Jesuit Aumeau, bent on returning to Michillimackinac, set out with La Vérendrye's eldest son and a party of twenty Canadians. A few days later, they were all found on an island in the Lake of the Woods, murdered and mangled by the Sioux.[1] The Assiniboins and Cristineaux, mortal foes of that fierce people, offered to join the French and avenge the butchery; but a war with the Sioux would have ruined La Vérendrye's plans of discovery, and exposed to torture and death the French traders in their country. Therefore he restrained himself and declined the proffered aid,

[1] *Beauharnois au Ministre*, 14 *Oct.* 1736; *Relation du Massacre au Lac des Bois, en Juin*, 1736; *Journal de la Vérendrye, joint à la lettre de M. de Beauharnois du — Oct.* 1737.

at the risk of incurring the contempt of those who offered it.

Beauharnois twice appealed to the court to give La Vérendrye some little aid, urging that he was at the end of his resources, and that a grant of 30,000 francs, or 6,000 dollars, would enable him to find a way to the Pacific. All help was refused, but La Vérendrye was told that he might let out his forts to other traders, and so raise means to pursue the discovery.

In 1740 he went for the third time to Montreal, where, instead of aid, he found a lawsuit. "In spite," he says, "of the derangement of my affairs, the envy and jealousy of various persons impelled them to write letters to the court insinuating that I thought of nothing but making my fortune. If more than forty thousand livres of debt which I have on my shoulders are an advantage, then I can flatter myself that I am very rich. In all my misfortunes, I have the consolation of seeing that M. de Beauharnois enters into my views, recognizes the uprightness of my intentions, and does me justice in spite of opposition." [1]

Meanwhile, under all his difficulties, he had explored a vast region hitherto unknown, diverted a great and lucrative fur-trade from the English at Hudson Bay, and secured possession of it by six fortified posts, — Fort St. Pierre, on Rainy Lake; Fort St. Charles, on the Lake of the Woods; Fort Maurepas, at the mouth of the river Winnipeg;

[1] *Mémoire du Sieur de la Vérendrye au sujet des Etablissements pour parvenir à la Découverte de la Mer de l'Ouest.*

Fort Bourbon, on the eastern side of Lake Winnipeg; Fort La Reine, on the Assiniboin; Fort Dauphin, on Lake Manitoba. Besides these he built another post, called Fort Rouge, on the site of the city of Winnipeg; and, some time after, another, at the mouth of the River Poskoiac, or Saskatchawan, neither of which, however, was long occupied. These various forts were only stockade works flanked with block-houses; but the difficulty of building and maintaining them in this remote wilderness was incalculable.[1]

He had inquired on all sides for the Pacific. The Assiniboins could tell him nothing. Nor could any information be expected from them, since their relatives and mortal enemies, the Sioux, barred their way to the West. The Cristineaux were equally ignorant; but they supplied the place of knowledge by invention, and drew maps, some of which seem to have been made with no other intention than that of amusing themselves by imposing on the inquirer. They also declared that some of their number had gone down a river called White River, or River of the West, where they found a plant that shed drops like blood, and saw serpents of prodigious size. They said further that on the lower part of this

[1] *Mémoire en abrégé de la Carte qui représente les Etablissements faits par le Sieur de la Vérendrye et ses Enfants* (Margry, VI. 616); *Carte des Nouvelles Découvertes dans l'Ouest du Canada dressée sur les Mémoires de Mr de la Vérandrie et donnée au Dépôt de la Marine par M. de la Galissonnière*, 1750; Bellin, *Remarques sur la Carte de l'Amérique*, 1755; Bougainville, *Mémoire sur l'Etat de la Nouvelle France*, 1757.

Most of La Vérendrye's forts were standing during the Seven Years' War, and were known collectively as *Postes de la Mer de l'Ouest*.

river were walled towns, where dwelt white men who had knives, hatchets, and cloth, but no firearms.[1]

Both Assiniboins and Cristineaux declared that there was a distant tribe on the Missouri, called Mantannes (Mandans), who knew the way to the Western Sea, and would guide him to it. Lured by this assurance, and feeling that he had sufficiently secured his position to enable him to begin his Western exploration, La Vérendrye left Fort La Reine in October, 1738, with twenty men, and pushed up the River Assiniboin till its rapids and shallows threatened his bark canoes with destruction. Then, with a band of Assiniboin Indians who had joined him, he struck across the prairie for the Mandans, his Indian companions hunting buffalo on the way. They approached the first Mandan village on the afternoon of the 3d of December, displaying a French flag and firing three volleys as a salute. The whole population poured out to see the marvellous visitors, who were conducted through the staring crowd to the lodge of the principal chief, — a capacious structure so thronged with the naked and greasy savages that the Frenchmen were half smothered. What was worse, they lost the bag that held all their presents for the Mandans, which was snatched away in the confusion, and hidden in one of the *caches*, called cellars by La Vérendrye, of which the place was full. The chief seemed much dis-

[1] *Journal de la Vérendrye joint à la Lettre de M. de Beauharnois du — Oct.* 1737.

composed at this mishap, and explained it by saying that there were many rascals in the village. The loss was serious, since without the presents nothing could be done. Nor was this all; for in the morning La Vérendrye missed his interpreter, and was told that he had fallen in love with an Assiniboin girl and gone off in pursuit of her. The French were now without any means of communicating with the Mandans, from whom, however, before the disappearance of the interpreter, they had already received a variety of questionable information, chiefly touching white men cased in iron who were said to live on the river below at the distance of a whole summer's journey. As they were impervious to arrows, — so the story ran, — it was necessary to shoot their horses, after which, being too heavy to run, they were easily caught. This was probably suggested by the armor of the Spaniards, who had more than once made incursions as far as the lower Missouri; but the narrators drew on their imagination for various additional particulars.

The Mandans seem to have much declined in numbers during the century that followed this visit of La Vérendrye. He says that they had six villages on or near the Missouri, of which the one seen by him was the smallest, though he thinks that it contained a hundred and thirty houses.[1] As each of these large structures held a number

[1] *Journal de la Vérendrye*, 1738, 1739. This journal, which is ill-written and sometimes obscure, is printed in Brymner, *Report on Canadian Archives*, 1889.

of families, the population must have been considerable. Yet when Prince Maximilian visited the Mandans in 1833, he found only two villages, containing jointly two hundred and forty warriors and a total population of about a thousand souls. Without having seen the statements of La Vérendrye, he speaks of the population as greatly reduced by wars and the small-pox, — a disease which a few years later nearly exterminated the tribe.[1]

La Vérendrye represents the six villages as surrounded with ditches and stockades, flanked by a sort of bastion, — defences which, he says, had nothing savage in their construction. In later times the fortifications were of a much ruder kind, though Maximilian represents them as having pointed salients to serve as bastions. La Vérendrye mentions some peculiar customs of the Mandans which answer exactly to those described by more recent observers.

He had intended to winter with the tribe; but the loss of the presents and the interpreter made it useless to stay, and leaving two men in the village to learn the language, he began his return

[1] Le Prince Maximilien de Wied-Neuwied, *Voyage dans l'Intérieur de l'Amérique du Nord*, II. 371, 372 (Paris, 1843). When Captains Lewis and Clark visited the Mandans in 1804, they found them in two villages, with about three hundred and fifty warriors. They report that, about forty years before, they lived in nine villages, the ruins of which the explorers saw about eighty miles below the two villages then occupied by the tribe. The Mandans had moved up the river in consequence of the persecutions of the Sioux and the small-pox, which had made great havoc among them. *Expedition of Lewis and Clark*, I. 129 (ed. Philadelphia, 1814). These nine villages seem to have been above Cannon-ball River, a tributary of the Missouri.

to Fort La Reine. "I was very ill," he writes, "but hoped to get better on the way. The reverse was the case, for it was the depth of winter. It would be impossible to suffer more than I did. It seemed that nothing but death could release us from such miseries." He reached Fort La Reine on the 11th of February, 1739.

His iron constitution seems to have been severely shaken; but he had sons worthy of their father. The two men left among the Mandans appeared at Fort La Reine in September. They reported that they had been well treated, and that their hosts had parted from them with regret. They also declared that at the end of spring several Indian tribes, all well supplied with horses, had come, as was their yearly custom, to the Mandan villages to barter embroidered buffalo hides and other skins for corn and beans; that they had encamped, to the number of two hundred lodges, on the farther side of the Missouri, and that among them was a band said to have come from a distant country towards the sunset, where there were white men who lived in houses built of bricks and stones.

The two Frenchmen crossed over to the camp of these Western strangers, among whom they found a chief who spoke, or professed to speak, the language of the mysterious white men, which to the two Frenchmen was unintelligible. Fortunately, he also spoke the language of the Mandans, of which the Frenchmen had learned a little during their stay, and hence were able to gather that the

white men in question had beards, and that they prayed to the Master of Life in great houses, built for the purpose, holding books, the leaves of which were like husks of Indian corn, singing together and repeating *Jésus, Marie*. The chief gave many other particulars, which seemed to show that he had been in contact with Spaniards, — probably those of California; for he described their houses as standing near the great lake, of which the water rises and falls and is not fit to drink. He invited the two Frenchmen to go with him to this strange country, saying that it could be reached before winter, though a wide circuit must be made, to avoid a fierce and dangerous tribe called Snake Indians (*Gens du Serpent*).[1]

On hearing this story, La Vérendrye sent his eldest son, Pierre, to pursue the discovery with two men, ordering him to hire guides among the Mandans and make his way to the Western Sea. But no guides were to be found, and in the next summer the young man returned from his bootless errand.[2]

Undaunted by this failure, Pierre set out again in the next spring, 1742, with his younger brother, the Chevalier de la Vérendrye. Accompanied only by two Canadians, they left Fort La Reine on the 29th of April, and following, no doubt, the route of the Assinniboin and Mouse River, reached the chief village of the Mandans in about three weeks.

[1] *Journal du Sieur de la Vérendrye*, 1740, in Archives de la Marine.
[2] *Mémoire du Sieur de la Vérendrye, joint à sa lettre du* 31 *Oct.* 1744.

Here they found themselves the welcome guests of this singularly interesting tribe, ruined by the small-pox nearly half a century ago, but preserved to memory by the skilful pencil of the artist Charles Bodmer, and the brush of the painter George Catlin, both of whom saw them at a time when they were little changed in habits and manners since the visit of the brothers La Vérendrye.[1]

Thus, though the report of the two brothers is too concise and brief, we know what they saw when they entered the central area, or public square, of the village. Around stood the Mandan lodges, looking like round flattened hillocks of earth, forty or fifty feet wide. On examination they proved to be framed of strong posts and poles, covered with a thick matting of intertwined willow-branches, over which was laid a bed of well-compacted clay or earth two or three feet thick. This heavy roof was supported by strong interior posts.[2] The open place which the dwellings enclosed served for games, dances, and the ghastly religious or magical ceremonies practised

[1] Prince Maximilian spent the winter of 1832–33 near the Mandan villages. His artist, with the instinct of genius, seized the characteristics of the wild life before him, and rendered them with admirable vigor and truth. Catlin spent a considerable time among the Mandans soon after the visit of Prince Maximilian, and had unusual opportunities of studying them. He was an indifferent painter, a shallow observer, and a garrulous and windy writer; yet his enthusiastic industry is beyond praise, and his pictures are invaluable as faithful reflections of aspects of Indian life which are gone forever.

Beauharnois calls the Mandans *Blancs Barbus*, and says that they have been hitherto unknown. *Beauharnois au Ministre*, 14 *Août*, 1739. The name Mantannes, or Mandans, is that given them by the Assinniboins.

[2] The Minnetarees and other tribes of the Missouri built their lodges in a similar way.

by the tribe. Among the other structures was the sacred "medicine lodge," distinguished by three or four tall poles planted before it, each surmounted by an effigy looking much like a scarecrow, and meant as an offering to the spirits.

If the two travellers had been less sparing of words, they would doubtless have told us that as they entered the village square the flattened earthen domes that surrounded it were thronged with squaws and children, — for this was always the case on occasions of public interest, — and that they were forced to undergo a merciless series of feasts in the lodges of the chiefs. Here, seated by the sunken hearth in the middle, under the large hole in the roof that served both for window and chimney, they could study at their ease the domestic economy of their entertainers. Each lodge held a *gens*, or family connection, whose beds of raw buffalo hide, stretched on poles, were ranged around the circumference of the building, while by each stood a post on which hung shields, lances, bows, quivers, medicine-bags, and masks formed of the skin of a buffalo's head, with the horns attached, to be used in the magic buffalo dance.

Every day had its sports to relieve the monotony of savage existence, the game of the stick and the rolling ring, the archery practice of boys, horse-racing on the neighboring prairie, and incessant games of chance; while every evening, in contrast to these gayeties, the long, dismal wail of women rose from the adjacent cemetery, where

PARTS OF

MONTANA AND NORTH DAKOTA,

showing approximately

the ROUTE of

CHEVALIER DE LA VERENDRYE

in 1742, 1743

the dead of the village, sewn fast in buffalo hides, lay on scaffolds above the reach of wolves.

The Mandans did not know the way to the Pacific, but they told the brothers that they expected a speedy visit from a tribe or band called Horse Indians, who could guide them thither. It is impossible to identify this people with any certainty.[1] The two travellers waited for them in vain till after midsummer, and then, as the season was too far advanced for longer delay, they hired two Mandans to conduct them to their customary haunts.

They set out on horseback, their scanty baggage and their stock of presents being no doubt carried by pack-animals. Their general course was west-southwest, with the Black Hills at a distance on their left, and the upper Missouri on their right. The country was a rolling prairie, well covered for the most part with grass, and watered by small alkaline streams creeping towards the Missouri with an opaque, whitish current. Except along the watercourses, there was little or no wood. "I noticed," says the Chevalier de la Vérendrye, "earths of different colors, blue, green, red, or black, white as chalk, or yellowish like ochre." This was probably in the "bad lands" of the Little Missouri, where these colored earths form a conspicuous feature in the bare and bar-

[1] The Cheyennes have a tradition that they were the first tribe of this region to have horses. This may perhaps justify a conjecture that the northern division of this brave and warlike people were the Horse Indians of La Vérendrye; though an Indian tradition, unless backed by well-established facts, can never be accepted as substantial evidence.

ren bluffs, carved into fantastic shapes by the storms.[1]

For twenty days the travellers saw no human being, so scanty was the population of these plains. Game, however, was abundant. Deer sprang from the tall, reedy grass of the river bottoms; buffalo tramped by in ponderous columns, or dotted the swells of the distant prairie with their grazing thousands; antelope approached, with the curiosity of their species, to gaze at the passing horsemen, then fled like the wind; and as they neared the broken uplands towards the Yellowstone, they saw troops of elk and flocks of mountain-sheep. Sometimes, for miles together, the dry plain was studded thick with the earthen mounds that marked the burrows of the curious marmots, called prairie-dogs, from their squeaking bark. Wolves, white and gray, howled about the camp at night, and their cousin, the coyote, seated in the dusk of evening upright on the grass, with nose turned to the sky, saluted them with a complication of yelpings, as if a score of petulant voices were pouring together from the throat of one small beast.

On the 11th of August, after a march of about three weeks, the brothers reached a hill, or group of hills, apparently west of the Little Missouri, and perhaps a part of the Powder River Range. It was here that they hoped to find the Horse Indians, but nobody was to be seen. Arming themselves

[1] A similar phenomenon occurs farther west on the face of the perpendicular bluffs that, in one place, border the valley of the river Rosebud.

with patience, they built a hut, made fires to attract by the smoke any Indians roaming near, and went every day to the tops of the hills to reconnoitre. At length, on the 14th of September, they descried a spire of smoke on the distant prairie.

One of their Mandan guides had left them and gone back to his village. The other, with one of the Frenchmen, went towards the smoke, and found a camp of Indians, whom the journal calls Les Beaux Hommes, and who were probably Crows, or Apsaroka, a tribe remarkable for stature and symmetry, who long claimed that region as their own. They treated the visitors well, and sent for the other Frenchmen to come to their lodges, where they were received with great rejoicing. The remaining Mandan, however, became frightened, — for the Beaux Hommes were enemies of his tribe, — and he soon followed his companion on his solitary march homeward.

The brothers remained twenty-one days in the camp of the Beaux Hommes, much perplexed for want of an interpreter. The tribes of the plains have in common a system of signs by which they communicate with each other, and it is likely that the brothers had learned it from the Sioux or Assiniboins, with whom they had been in familiar intercourse. By this or some other means they made their hosts understand that they wished to find the Horse Indians; and the Beaux Hommes, being soothed by presents, offered some of their young men as guides. They set out on

the 9th of October, following a south-southwest course.[1]

In two days they met a band of Indians, called by them the Little Foxes, and on the 15th and 17th two villages of another unrecognizable horde, named Pioya. From La Vérendrye's time to our own, this name "villages" has always been given to the encampments of the wandering people of the plains. All these nomadic communities joined them, and they moved together southward, till they reached at last the lodges of the long-sought Horse Indians. They found them in the extremity of distress and terror. Their camp resounded with howls and wailings; and not without cause, for the Snakes, or Shoshones, — a formidable people living farther westward, — had lately destroyed most of their tribe. The Snakes were the terror of that country. The brothers were told that the year before they had destroyed seventeen villages, killing the warriors and old women, and carrying off the young women and children as slaves.

None of the Horse Indians had ever seen the Pacific; but they knew a people called Gens de l'Arc, or Bow Indians, who, as they said, had traded not far from it. To the Bow Indians, therefore, the brothers resolved to go, and by dint of gifts and promises they persuaded their hosts to

[1] *Journal du Voyage fait par le Chevalier de la Vérendrye en* 1742. The copy before me is from the original in the Dépôt des Cartes de la Marine. A duplicate, in the Archives des Affaires Etrangères, is printed by Margry. It gives the above date as November 9th instead of October 9th. The context shows the latter to be correct.

show them the way. After marching southwestward for several days, they saw the distant prairie covered with the pointed buffalo-skin lodges of a great Indian camp. It was that of the Bow Indians, who may have been one of the bands of the western Sioux, — the predominant race in this region. Few or none of them could ever have seen a white man, and we may imagine their amazement at the arrival of the strangers, who, followed by staring crowds, were conducted to the lodge of the chief. "Thus far," says La Vérendrye, "we had been well received in all the villages we had passed; but this was nothing compared with the courteous manners of the great chief of the Bow Indians, who, unlike the others, was not self-interested in the least, and who took excellent care of everything belonging to us."

The first inquiry of the travellers was for the Pacific; but neither the chief nor his tribesmen knew anything of it, except what they had heard from Snake prisoners taken in war. The Frenchmen were surprised at the extent of the camp, which consisted of many separate bands. The chief explained that they had been summoned from far and near for a grand war-party against that common foe of all, — the Snakes.[1] In fact, the camp resounded with war-songs and war-dances. "Come with us," said their host; "we are going towards

[1] The enmity between the Sioux and the Snakes lasted to our own time. When the writer lived among the western Sioux, one of their chiefs organized a war-party against the Snakes, and numerous bands came to join the expedition from a distance in some cases of three hundred miles. Quarrels broke out among them, and the scheme was ruined.

the mountains, where you can see the great water that you are looking for."

At length the camp broke up. The squaws took down the lodges, and the march began over prairies dreary and brown with the withering touch of autumn. The spectacle was such as men still young have seen in these Western lands, but which no man will see again. The vast plain swarmed with the moving multitude. The tribes of the Missouri and the Yellowstone had by this time abundance of horses, the best of which were used for war and hunting, and the others as beasts of burden. These last were equipped in a peculiar manner. Several of the long poles used to frame the teepees, or lodges, were secured by one end to each side of a rude saddle, while the other end trailed on the ground. Crossbars lashed to the poles just behind the horse kept them three or four feet apart, and formed a firm support, on which was laid, compactly folded, the buffalo-skin covering of the lodge. On this, again, sat a mother with her young family, sometimes stowed for safety in a large open willow basket, with the occasional addition of some domestic pet, — such as a tame raven, a puppy, or even a small bear cub. Other horses were laden in the same manner with wooden bowls, stone hammers, and other utensils, along with stores of dried buffalo-meat packed in cases of rawhide whitened and painted. Many of the innumerable dogs — whose manners and appearance strongly suggested their relatives the wolves, to whom, however, they

bore a mortal grudge — were equipped in a similar way, with shorter poles and lighter loads. Bands of naked boys, noisy and restless, roamed the prairie, practising their bows and arrows on any small animal they might find. Gay young squaws — adorned on each cheek with a spot of ochre or red clay, and arrayed in tunics of fringed buckskin embroidered with porcupine quills — were mounted on ponies, astride like men; while lean and tattered hags — the drudges of the tribe, unkempt and hideous — scolded the lagging horses, or screeched at the disorderly dogs, with voices not unlike the yell of the great horned owl. Most of the warriors were on horseback, armed with round, white shields of bull-hide, feathered lances, war-clubs, bows, and quivers filled with stone-headed arrows; while a few of the elders, wrapped in robes of buffalo-hide, stalked along in groups with a stately air, chatting, laughing, and exchanging unseemly jokes.[1]

"We continued our march," says La Vérendrye, "sometimes south-southwest, and now and then northwest; our numbers constantly increasing by villages of different tribes which joined us." The variations of their course were probably due to the difficulties of the country, which grew more rugged as they advanced, with broken hills, tracts of dingy green sage-bushes, and bright, swift

[1] The above descriptive particulars are drawn from repeated observation of similar scenes at a time when the primitive condition of these tribes was essentially unchanged, though with the difference that the concourse of savages counted by hundreds, and not by thousands.

streams, edged with cottonwood and willow, hurrying northward to join the Yellowstone. At length, on the 1st of January, 1743, they saw what was probably the Bighorn Range of the Rocky Mountains, a hundred and twenty miles east of the Yellowstone Park.

A council of all the allied bands was now called, and the Frenchmen were asked to take part in it. The questions discussed were how to dispose of the women and children, and how to attack the enemy. Having settled their plans, the chiefs begged their white friends not to abandon them; and the younger of the two, the Chevalier, consented to join the warriors, and aid them with advice, though not with arms.

The tribes of the Western plains rarely go on war-parties in winter, and this great expedition must have been the result of unusual exasperation. The object was to surprise the Snakes in the security of their winter camp, and strike a deadly blow, which would have been impossible in summer.

On the 8th of January the whole body stopped to encamp, choosing, no doubt, after the invariable winter custom of Western Indians, a place sheltered from wind, and supplied with water and fuel. Here the squaws and children were to remain, while most of the warriors advanced against the enemy. By pegging the lower edge of the lodge-skin to the ground, and piling a ridge of stones and earth upon it to keep out the air, fastening with wooden skewers the flap of hide

that covered the entrance, and keeping a constant fire, they could pass a winter endurable to Indians, though smoke, filth, vermin, bad air, the crowd, and the total absence of privacy, would make it a purgatory to any civilized white man.

The Chevalier left his brother to watch over the baggage of the party, which was stored in the lodge of the great chief, while he himself, with his two Canadians, joined the advancing warriors. They were on horseback, marching with a certain order, and sending watchmen to reconnoitre the country from the tops of the hills.[1] Their movements were so slow that it was twelve days before they reached the foot of the mountains, which, says La Vérendrye, "are for the most part well wooded, and seem very high."[2] He longed to climb their great snow-encumbered peaks, fancying that he might then see the Pacific, and never dreaming that more than eight hundred miles of mountains and forests still lay between him and his goal.

Through the whole of the present century the villages of the Snakes were at a considerable distance west of the Bighorn Range, and some of them were even on the upper waters of the Pacific slope. It is likely that they were so in 1743, in which case the war-party would not only have reached the Bighorn Mountains, but have pushed

[1] At least this was done by a band of Sioux with whom the writer once traversed a part of the country ranged by these same Snakes, who had lately destroyed an entire Sioux village.

[2] The Bighorn Range, below the snow line, is in the main well timbered with pine, fir, oak, and juniper.

farther on to within sight of the great Wind River Range. Be this as it may, their scouts reached the chief winter camp of the Snakes, and found it abandoned, with lodges still standing, and many household possessions left behind. The enemy had discovered their approach, and fled. Instead of encouraging the allies, this news filled them with terror, for they feared that the Snake warriors might make a circuit to the rear, and fall upon the camp where they had left their women and children. The great chief spent all his eloquence in vain, nobody would listen to him; and with characteristic fickleness they gave over the enterprise, and retreated in a panic. "Our advance was made in good order: but not so our retreat," says the Chevalier's journal. "Everybody fled his own way. Our horses, though good, were very tired, and got little to eat." The Chevalier was one day riding with his friend, the great chief, when, looking behind him, he missed his two French attendants. Hastening back in alarm, he found them far in the rear, quietly feeding their horses under the shelter of a clump of trees. He had scarcely joined them when he saw a party of fifteen hostile Indians stealthily creeping forward, covered by their bull-hide shields. He and his men let them approach, and then gave them a few shots; on which they immediately ran off, firearms being to them an astounding novelty.

The three Frenchmen now tried to rejoin the great chief and his band, but the task was not easy. The prairie, bare of snow and hard as flint,

showed no trace of foot or hoof; and it was by rare good fortune that they succeeded, on the second day, not in overtaking the chief, but in reaching the camp where the women and children had been left. They found them all in safety; the Snakes had not attacked them, and the panic of the warriors was needless. It was the 9th of February. They were scarcely housed when a blizzard set in, and on the night of the 10th the plains were buried in snow. The great chief had not appeared. With such of his warriors as he could persuade to follow him, he had made a wide circuit to find the trail of the lost Frenchmen, but, to his great distress, had completely failed. It was not till five days after the arrival of the Chevalier and his men that the chief reached the camp, "more dead than alive," in the words of the journal. All his hardships were forgotten when he found his white friends safe, for he had given them up for lost. "His sorrow turned to joy, and he could not give us attention and caresses enough."

The camp broke up, and the allied bands dispersed. The great chief and his followers moved slowly through the snowdrifts towards the east-southeast, accompanied by the Frenchmen. Thus they kept on till the 1st of March, when the two brothers, learning that they were approaching the winter village of a people called Gens de la Petite Cerise, or Choke-Cherry Indians, sent one of their men, with a guide, to visit them. The man returned in ten days, bringing a message from the

Choke-Cherry Indians, inviting the Frenchmen to their lodges.

The great chief of the Bow Indians, who seems to have regarded his young friends with mingled affection, respect, and wonder, was grieved at the thought of losing them, but took comfort when they promised to visit him again, provided that he would make his abode near a certain river which they pointed out. To this he readily agreed, and then, with mutual regret, they parted.[1] The Frenchmen repaired to the village of the Choke-Cherry Indians, who, like the Bow Indians, were probably a band of Sioux.[2] Hard by their lodges, which stood near the Missouri, the brothers buried a plate of lead graven with the royal arms, and raised a pile of stones in honor of the Governor of Canada. They remained at this place till April; then, mounting their horses again, followed the Missouri upward to the village of the Mandans, which they reached on the 18th of May. After spending a week here, they joined a party of

[1] The only two tribes of this region who were a match for the Snakes were the Sioux and the Blackfeet. It is clear that the Bow Indians could not have been Blackfeet, as in that case, after the war-party broke up, they would have moved northward towards their own country, instead of east-southeast into the country of their enemies. Hence I incline to think the Bow Indians a band of Sioux, or Dakota, — a people then, as since, predominant in that country.

The banks of the Missouri, in the part which La Verendrye would have reached in following an east-southeast course, were occupied by numerous bands or sub-tribes of Sioux, such as the Minneconjou, Yankton, Oncpapa, Brulé, and others, friends and relatives of the Bow Indians, supposing these to have been Sioux.

[2] The Sioux, Cheyennes, and other prairie tribes use the small astringent wild cherry for food. The squaws pound it, stones and all, and then dry it for winter use.

Assiniboins, journeyed with them towards Fort La Reine, and reached it on the 2d of July, to the great relief of their father, who was waiting in suspense, having heard nothing of them for more than a year.

Sixty-two years later, when the vast western regions then called Louisiana had just been ceded to the United States, Captains Lewis and Clark left the Mandan villages with thirty-two men, traced the Missouri to the mountains, penetrated the wastes beyond, and made their way to the Pacific. The first stages of that remarkable exploration were anticipated by the brothers La Vérendrye. They did not find the Pacific, but they discovered the Rocky Mountains, or at least the part of them to which the name properly belongs; for the southern continuation of the great range had long been known to the Spaniards. Their bold adventure was achieved, not at the charge of a government, but at their own cost and that of their father, — not with a band of well-equipped men, but with only two followers.

The fur-trading privilege which was to have been their compensation had proved their ruin. They were still pursued without ceasing by the jealousy of rival traders and the ire of disappointed partners. "Here in Canada more than anywhere else," the Chevalier wrote, some years after his return, "envy is the passion *à la mode*, and there is no escaping it."[1] It was the story of La Salle repeated. Beauharnois, however, still

[1] *Le Chevalier de la Vérendrye au Ministre*, 30 *Sept.* 1750.

stood by them, encouraged and defended them, and wrote in their favor to the colonial minister.[1] It was doubtless through his efforts that the elder La Vérendrye was at last promoted to a captaincy in the colony troops. Beauharnois was succeeded in the government by the sagacious and able Galissonière, and he too befriended the explorers. "It seems to me," he wrote to the minister, "that what you have been told touching the Sieur de la Vérendrye, to the effect that he has been more busy with his own interests than in making discoveries, is totally false, and, moreover, that any officers employed in such work will always be compelled to give some of their attention to trade, so long as the King allows them no other means of subsistence. These discoveries are very costly, and more fatiguing and dangerous than open war."[2] Two years later, the elder La Vérendrye received the cross of the Order of St. Louis, — an honor much prized in Canada, but which he did not long enjoy; for he died at Montreal in the following December, when on the point of again setting out for the West.

His intrepid sons survived, and they were not idle. One of them, the Chevalier, had before discovered the river Saskatchawan, and ascended it as far as the forks.[3] His intention was to follow it to the mountains, build a fort there, and thence push westward in another search for the Pacific;

[1] *La Vérendrye père au Ministre*, 1 *Nov.* 1746, in Margry VI. 611.

[2] *La Galissonière au Ministre*, 23 *Oct.* 1747.

[3] *Mémoire en abrégé des Établissements et Découvertes faits par le Sieur de la Vérendrye et ses Enfants.*

but a disastrous event ruined all his hopes. La Galissonière returned to France, and the Marquis de la Jonquière succeeded him, with the notorious François Bigot as intendant. Both were greedy of money,— the one to hoard, and the other to dissipate it. Clearly there was money to be got from the fur-trade of Manitoba, for La Vérendrye had made every preparation and incurred every expense. It seemed that nothing remained but to reap where he had sown. His commission to find the Pacific, with the privileges connected with it, was refused to his sons, and conferred on a stranger. La Jonquière wrote to the minister: "I have charged M. de Saint-Pierre with this business. He knows these countries better than any officer in all the colony."[1] On the contrary, he had never seen them. It is difficult not to believe that La Jonquière, Bigot, and Saint-Pierre were partners in a speculation of which all three were to share the profits.

The elder La Vérendrye, not long before his death, had sent a large quantity of goods to his trading-forts. The brothers begged leave to return thither and save their property from destruction. They declared themselves happy to serve under the orders of Saint-Pierre, and asked for the use of only a single fort of all those which their father had built at his own cost. The answer was a flat refusal. In short, they were shamefully robbed. The Chevalier writes: "M. le Marquis de la Jonquière, being pushed hard, and as I

[1] *La Jonquière au Ministre*, 27 *Fév.* 1750.

thought even touched, by my representations, told me at last that M. de Saint-Pierre wanted nothing to do with me or my brothers." "I am a ruined man," he continues. "I am more than two thousand livres in debt, and am still only a second ensign. My elder brother's grade is no better than mine. My younger brother is only a cadet. This is the fruit of all that my father, my brothers, and I have done. My other brother, whom the Sioux murdered some years ago, was not the most unfortunate among us. We must lose all that has cost us so much, unless M. de Saint-Pierre should take juster views, and prevail on the Marquis de la Jonquière to share them. To be thus shut out from the West is to be most cruelly robbed of a sort of inheritance which we had all the pains of acquiring, and of which others will get all the profit." [1]

His elder brother writes in a similar strain: "We spent our youth and our property in building up establishments so advantageous to Canada; and after all, we were doomed to see a stranger gather the fruit we had taken such pains to plant." And he complains that their goods left in the trading-posts were wasted, their provisions consumed, and the men in their pay used to do the work of others.[2]

They got no redress. Saint-Pierre, backed by the Governor and the Intendant, remained master of the position. The brothers sold a small piece

[1] *Le Chevalier de la Vérendrye au Ministre*, 30 *Sept.* 1750.

[2] *Mémoire des Services de Pierre Gautier de la Vérendrye l'aisné, présenté à Mgr. Rouillé, ministre et secrétaire d'Etat.*

of land, their last remaining property, to appease their most pressing creditors.[1]

Saint-Pierre set out for Manitoba on the 5th of June, 1750. Though he had lived more or less in the woods for thirty-six years, and though La Jonquière had told the minister that he knew the countries to which he was bound better than anybody else, it is clear from his own journal that he was now visiting them for the first time. They did not please him. "I was told," he says, "that the way would grow harder and more dangerous as we advanced, and I found, in fact, that one must risk life and property every moment." Finding himself and his men likely to starve, he sent some of them, under an ensign named Niverville, to the Saskatchawan. They could not reach it, and nearly perished on the way. "I myself was no more fortunate," says Saint-Pierre. "Food was so scarce that I sent some of my people into the woods among the Indians, — which did not save me from a fast so rigorous that it deranged my health and put it out of my power to do anything towards accomplishing my mission. Even if I had had strength enough, the war that broke out among the Indians would have made it impossible to proceed."

Niverville, after a winter of misery, tried to fulfil an order which he had received from his commander. When the Indians guided the two brothers La Vérendrye to the Rocky Mountains,

[1] Legardeur de Saint-Pierre, in spite of his treatment of the La Vérendrye brothers, had merit as an officer. It was he who received Washington at Fort Le Bœuf in 1754. He was killed in 1755, at the battle of Lake George. See *Montcalm and Wolfe*, I. 303.

the course they took tended so far southward that the Chevalier greatly feared it might lead to Spanish settlements; and he gave it as his opinion that the next attempt to find the Pacific should be made farther towards the north. Saint-Pierre had agreed with him, and had directed Niverville to build a fort on the Saskatchawan, three hundred leagues above its mouth. Therefore, at the end of May, 1751, Niverville sent ten men in two canoes on this errand, and they ascended the Saskatchawan to what Saint-Pierre calls the "Rock Mountain." Here they built a small stockade fort and called it Fort La Jonquière. Niverville was to have followed them; but he fell ill, and lay helpless at the mouth of the river in such a condition that he could not even write to his commander.

Saint-Pierre set out in person from Fort La Reine for Fort La Jonquière, over ice and snow, for it was late in November. Two Frenchmen from Niverville met him on the way, and reported that the Assiniboins had slaughtered an entire band of friendly Indians on whom Saint-Pierre had relied to guide him. On hearing this he gave up the enterprise, and returned to Fort La Reine. Here the Indians told him idle stories about white men and a fort in some remote place towards the west; but, he observes, "nobody could reach it without encountering an infinity of tribes more savage than it is possible to imagine."

He spent most of the winter at Fort La Reine. Here, towards the end of February, 1752, he had with him only five men, having sent out the rest

in search of food. Suddenly, as he sat in his chamber, he saw the fort full of armed Assiniboins, extremely noisy and insolent. He tried in vain to quiet them, and they presently broke into the guard-house and seized the arms. A massacre would have followed, had not Saint-Pierre, who was far from wanting courage, resorted to an expedient which has more than once proved effective on such occasions. He knocked out the heads of two barrels of gunpowder, snatched a firebrand, and told the yelping crowd that he would blow up them and himself together. At this they all rushed in fright out of the gate, while Saint-Pierre ran after them, and bolted it fast. There was great anxiety for the hunters, but they all came back in the evening, without having met the enemy. The men, however, were so terrified by the adventure that Saint-Pierre was compelled to abandon the fort, after recommending it to the care of another band of Assiniboins, who had professed great friendship. Four days after he was gone they burned it to the ground.

He soon came to the conclusion that farther discovery was impossible, because the English of Hudson Bay had stirred up the Western tribes to oppose it. Therefore he set out for the settlements, and, reaching Quebec in the autumn of 1753, placed the journal of his futile enterprise in the hands of Duquesne, the new governor.[1]

Canada was approaching her last agony. In the death-struggle of the Seven Years' War there

[1] *Journal sommaire du Voyage de Jacques Legardeur de Saint-Pierre, chargé de la Découverte de la Mer de l'Ouest* (British Museum).

was no time for schemes of Western discovery. The brothers La Vérendrye sank into poverty and neglect. A little before the war broke out, we find the eldest at the obscure Acadian post of Beauséjour, where he wrote to the colonial minister a statement of his services, which appears to have received no attention. After the fall of Canada, the Chevalier de la Vérendrye, he whose eyes first beheld the snowy peaks of the Rocky Mountains, perished in the wreck of the ship "Auguste," on the coast of Cape Breton, in November, 1761.[1]

[1] The above narrative rests mainly on contemporary documents, official in character, of which the originals are preserved in the archives of the French Government. These papers have recently been printed by M. Pierre Margry, late custodian of the Archives of the Marine and Colonies at Paris, in the sixth volume of his *Découvertes et Établissements des Français dans l'Amérique Septentrionale*,—a documentary collection of great value, published at the expense of the American Government. It was M. Margry who first drew attention to the achievements of the family of La Vérendrye, by an article in the *Moniteur* in 1852. I owe to his kindness the opportunity of using the above-mentioned documents in advance of publication. I obtained copies from duplicate originals of some of the principal among them from the Dépôt des Cartes de la Marine, in 1872. These answer closely, with rare and trivial variations, to the same documents as printed from other sources by M. Margry. Some additional papers preserved in the Archives of the Marine and Colonies have also been used.

My friends, Hon. William C. Endicott, then Secretary of War, and Captain John G. Bourke, Third Cavalry, U. S. A., kindly placed in my hands a valuable collection of Government maps and surveys of the country between the Missouri and the Rocky Mountains visited by the brothers La Vérendrye; and I have received from Captain Bourke, and also from Mr. E. A. Snow, formerly of the Third Cavalry, much information concerning the same region, repeatedly traversed by them in peace and war.

CHAPTER XVII.

1700–1750.

THE CHAIN OF POSTS.

Opposing Claims. — Attitude of the Rival Nations. — America a French Continent — England a Usurper. — French Demands. — Magnanimous Proposals. — Warlike Preparation. — Niagara. — Oswego. — Crown Point. — The Passes of the West secured.

We have seen that the contest between France and England in America divided itself, after the Peace of Utrecht, into three parts, — the Acadian contest; the contest for northern New England; and last, though greatest, the contest for the West. Nothing is more striking than the difference, or rather contrast, in the conduct and methods of the rival claimants to this wild but magnificent domain. Each was strong in its own qualities, and utterly wanting in the qualities that marked its opponent.

On maps of British America in the earlier part of the eighteenth century, one sees the eastern shore, from Maine to Georgia, garnished with ten or twelve colored patches, very different in shape and size, and defined, more or less distinctly, by dividing-lines which, in some cases, are prolonged westward till they touch the Mississippi, or even cross it and stretch indefinitely towards the

Pacific. These patches are the British provinces, and the westward prolongation of their boundary lines represents their several claims to vast interior tracts, founded on ancient grants, but not made good by occupation, or vindicated by any exertion of power.

These English communities took little thought of the region beyond the Alleghanies. Each lived a life of its own, shut within its own limits, not dreaming of a future collective greatness to which the possession of the West would be a necessary condition. No conscious community of aims and interests held them together, nor was there any authority capable of uniting their forces and turning them to a common object. Some of the servants of the Crown had urged the necessity of joining them all under a strong central government, as the only means of making them loyal subjects and arresting the encroachments of France; but the scheme was plainly impracticable. Each province remained in jealous isolation, busied with its own work, growing in strength, in the capacity of self-rule and the spirit of independence, and stubbornly resisting all exercise of authority from without. If the English-speaking populations flowed westward, it was in obedience to natural laws, for the King did not aid the movement, the royal governors had no authority to do so, and the colonial assemblies were too much engrossed with immediate local interests. The power of these colonies was that of a rising flood slowly invading and conquering, by the uncon-

scious force of its own growing volume, unless means be found to hold it back by dams and embankments within appointed limits.

In the French colonies all was different. Here the representatives of the Crown were men bred in an atmosphere of broad ambition and masterful and far-reaching enterprise. Achievement was demanded of them. They recognized the greatness of the prize, studied the strong and weak points of their rivals, and with a cautious forecast and a daring energy set themselves to the task of defeating them.

If the English colonies were comparatively strong in numbers, their numbers could not be brought into action; while if the French forces were small, they were vigorously commanded, and always ready at a word. It was union confronting division, energy confronting apathy, military centralization opposed to industrial democracy; and, for a time, the advantage was all on one side.

The demands of the French were sufficiently comprehensive. They repented of their enforced concessions at the Treaty of Utrecht, and in spite of that compact, maintained that, with a few local and trivial exceptions, the whole North American continent, except Mexico, was theirs of right; while their opponents seemed neither to understand the situation, nor see the greatness of the stakes at issue.

In 1720 Father Bobé, priest of the Congregation of Missions, drew up a paper in which he sets

forth the claims of France with much distinctness, beginning with the declaration that "England has usurped from France nearly everything that she possesses in America," and adding that the plenipotentiaries at Utrecht did not know what they were about when they made such concessions to the enemy; that, among other blunders, they gave Port Royal to England when it belonged to France, who should "insist vigorously" on its being given back to her.

He maintains that the voyages of Verrazzano and Ribaut made France owner of the whole continent, from Florida northward; that England was an interloper in planting colonies along the Atlantic coast, and will admit as much if she is honest, since all that country is certainly a part of New France. In this modest assumption of the point at issue, he ignores John Cabot and his son Sebastian, who discovered North America more than twenty-five years before the voyage of Verrazzano, and more than sixty years before that of Ribaut.

When the English, proceeds Father Bobé, have restored Port Royal to us, which they are bound to do, though we ceded it by the treaty, a French governor should be at once set over it, with a commission to command as far as Cape Cod, which would include Boston. We should also fortify ourselves, "in a way to stop the English, who have long tried to seize on French America, of which they know the importance, and of which," he observes with much candor, "they would make

a better use than the French do.[1] . . . The Atlantic coast, as far as Florida, was usurped from the French, to whom it belonged then, and to whom it belongs now." England, as he thinks, is bound in honor to give back these countries to their true owner; and it is also the part of wisdom to do so, since by grasping at too much, one often loses all. But France, out of her love of peace, will cede to England the countries along the Atlantic, from the Kennebec in New France to the Jordan[2] in Carolina, on condition that England will restore to her all that she gave up by the Treaty of Utrecht. When this is done, France, always generous, will consent to accept as boundary a line drawn from the mouth of the Kennebec, passing thence midway between Schenectady and Lake Champlain and along the ridge of the Alleghanies to the river Jordan, the country between this line and the sea to belong to England, and the rest of the continent to France.

If England does not accept this generous offer, she is to be told that the King will give to the Compagnie des Indes (Law's Mississippi Company) full authority to occupy "all the countries which the English have usurped from France;" and, pursues Father Bobé, "it is certain that the fear of having to do with so powerful a company will

[1] "De manière qu'on puisse arrêter les Anglois, qui depuis longtems tachent de s'emparer de l'Amérique françoise, dont ils conoissent l'importance et dont ils feroient un meillieur usage que celuy qui les françois en font."

[2] On the river Jordan, so named by Vasquez de Ayllon, see *Pioneers of France in the New World*, pp. 11, 39 (revised edition) *note*. It was probably the Broad River of South Carolina.

bring the English to our terms." The company that was thus to strike the British heart with terror was the same which all the tonics and stimulants of the government could not save from predestined ruin. But, concludes this ingenious writer, whether England accepts our offers or not, France ought not only to take a high tone (*parler avec hauteur*), but also to fortify diligently, and make good her right by force of arms.[1]

Three years later we have another document, this time of an official character, and still more radical in its demands. It admits that Port Royal and a part of the Nova Scotian peninsula, under the name of Acadia, were ceded to England by the treaty, and consents that she shall keep them, but requires her to restore the part of New France that she has wrongfully seized, — namely, the whole Atlantic coast from the Kennebec to Florida; since France never gave England this country, which is hers by the discovery of Verrazzano in 1524. Here, again, the voyages of the Cabots, in 1497 and 1498, are completely ignored.

"It will be seen," pursues this curious document, "that our kings have always preserved sovereignty over the countries between the 30th and the 50th degrees of north latitude. A time will come when they will be in a position to assert their rights, and then it will be seen that the dominions of a king of France cannot be usurped

[1] *Second Mémoire concernant les Limites des Colonies présenté en* 1720 *par Bobé, prêtre de la Congrégation de la Mission* (Archives Nationales).

with impunity. What we demand now is that the English make immediate restitution." No doubt, the paper goes on to say, they will pretend to have prescriptive rights, because they have settled the country and built towns and cities in it; but this plea is of no avail, because all that country is a part of New France, and because England rightfully owns nothing in America except what we, the French, gave her by the Treaty of Utrecht, which is merely Port Royal and Acadia. She is bound in honor to give back all the vast countries she has usurped; but, continues the paper, "the King loves the English nation too much, and wishes too much to do her kindness, and is too generous to exact such a restitution. Therefore, provided that England will give us back Port Royal, Acadia, and everything else that France gave her by the Treaty of Utrecht, the King will forego his rights, and grant to England the whole Atlantic coast from the 32d degree of latitude to the Kennebec, to the extent inland of twenty French leagues [about fifty miles], on condition that she will solemnly bind herself never to overstep these limits or encroach in the least on French ground."

Thus, through the beneficence of France, England, provided that she renounced all pretension to the rest of the continent, would become the rightful owner of an attenuated strip of land reaching southward from the Kennebec along the Atlantic seaboard. The document containing this magnanimous proposal was preserved in the Châ-

teau St. Louis at Quebec till the middle of the eighteenth century, when, the boundary dispute having reached a crisis, and commissioners of the two powers having been appointed to settle it, a certified copy of the paper was sent to France for their instruction.[1]

Father Bobé had advised that France should not trust solely to the justice of her claims, but should back right with might, and build forts on the Niagara, the Ohio, the Tennessee, and the Alabama, as well as at other commanding points, to shut out the English from the West. Of these positions, Niagara was the most important, for the possession of it would close the access to the Upper Lakes, and stop the Western tribes on their way to trade at Albany. The Five Nations and the Governor of New York were jealous of the French designs, which, however, were likely enough to succeed, through the prevailing apathy and divisions in the British colonies. "If those not immediately concerned," writes a member of the New York council, "only stand gazing on while the wolff is murthering other parts of the flock, it will come to every one's turn at last." The warning was well founded, but it was not heeded. Again: "It is the policy of the French to attack one colony at a time, and the others are so besotted as to sit still."[2]

For gaining the consent of the Five Nations to

[1] *Demandes de la France*, 1723 (Archives des Affaires Etrangères).

[2] *Colonel Heathcote to Governor Hunter*, 8 *July*, 1715. *Ibid. to Townshend*, 12 *July*, 1715.

the building of a French fort at Niagara, Vaudreuil trusted chiefly to his agent among the Senecas, the bold, skilful, and indefatigable Joncaire, who was naturalized among that tribe, the strongest of the confederacy. Governor Hunter of New York sent Peter Schuyler and Philip Livingston to counteract his influence. The Five Nations, who, conscious of declining power, seemed ready at this time to be all things to all men, declared that they would prevent the French from building at Niagara, which, as they said, would "shut them up as in a prison."[1] Not long before, however, they had sent a deputation to Montreal to say that the English made objection to Joncaire's presence among them, but that they were masters of their land, and hoped that the French agent would come as often as he pleased; and they begged that the new King of France would take them under his protection.[2] Accordingly, Vaudreuil sent them a present, with a message to the effect that they might plunder such English traders as should come among them.[3]

Yet so jealous were the Iroquois of a French fort at Niagara that they sent three Seneca chiefs to see what was going on there. The chiefs found a few Frenchmen in a small blockhouse, or loop-holed storehouse, which they had just built near Lewiston Heights. The three Senecas requested them to demolish it and go away, which the

[1] *Journal of Schuyler and Livingston*, 1720.
[2] *Vaudreuil au Conseil de Marine*, 24 *Oct.* 1717.
[3] *Vaudreuil et Bégon au Conseil de Marine*, 26 *Oct.* 1719.

Frenchmen refused to do; on which the Senecas asked the English envoys, Schuyler and Livingston, to induce the Governor of New York to destroy the obnoxious building. In short, the Five Nations wavered incessantly between their two European neighbors, and changed their minds every day. The skill and perseverance of the French emissaries so far prevailed at last that the Senecas consented to the building of a fort at the mouth of the Niagara, where Denonville had built one in 1687; and thus that important pass was made tolerably secure.

Meanwhile the English of New York, or rather Burnet, their governor, were not idle. Burnet was on ill terms with his Assembly, which grudged him all help in serving the province whose interests it was supposed to represent. Burnet's plan was to build a fortified trading-house at Oswego, on Lake Ontario, in the belief that the Western Indians, who greatly preferred English goods and English prices, would pass Niagara and bring their furs to the new post. He got leave from the Five Nations to execute his plan, bought canoes, hired men, and built a loopholed house of stone on the site of the present city of Oswego. As the Assembly would give no money, Burnet furnished it himself; and though the object was one of the greatest importance to the province, he was never fully repaid.[1] A small garrison for the new post was drawn from the four indepen-

[1] "I am ashamed to confess that he built the fort at his private expense, and that a balance of above £56 remains due to his estate to this very day." Smith, *History of New York*, 267 (ed. 1814).

dent companies maintained in the province at the charge of the Crown.

The establishment of Oswego greatly alarmed and incensed the French, and a council of war at Quebec resolved to send two thousand men against it; but Vaudreuil's successor, the Marquis de Beauharnois, learning that the court was not prepared to provoke a war, contented himself with sending a summons to the commanding officer to abandon and demolish the place within a fortnight.[1] To this no attention was given; and as Burnet had foreseen, Oswego became the great centre of Indian trade, while Niagara, in spite of its more favorable position, was comparatively slighted by the Western tribes. The chief danger rose from the obstinate prejudice of the Assembly, which, in its disputes with the Royal Governor, would give him neither men nor money to defend the new post.

The Canadian authorities, who saw in Oswego an intrusion on their domain and a constant injury and menace, could not attack it without bringing on a war, and therefore tried to persuade the Five Nations to destroy it,—an attempt which completely failed.[2] They then established a trading-post at Toronto, in the vain hope of stopping the Northern tribes on their way to the more

[1] *Mémoire de Dupuy*, 1728. Dupuy was intendant of Canada. The King approved the conduct of Beauharnois in not using force. *Dépêche du Roy*, 14 *Mai*, 1728.

[2] When urged by the younger Longueuil to drive off the English from Oswego, the Indians replied, "Drive them off thyself." "*Chassez-les toi-même.*" *Longueuil fils au Ministre*, 19 *Oct.* 1728.

profitable English market, and they built two armed vessels at Fort Frontenac to control the navigation of Lake Ontario.

Meanwhile, in another quarter the French made an advance far more threatening to the English colonies than Oswego was to their own. They had already built a stone fort at Chambly, which covered Montreal from any English attack by way of Lake Champlain. As that lake was the great highway between the rival colonies, the importance of gaining full mastery of it was evident. It was rumored in Canada that the English meant to seize and fortify the place called Scalp Point (*Pointe à la Chevelure*) by the French, and Crown Point by the English, where the lake suddenly contracts to the proportions of a river, so that a few cannon would stop the passage.

As early as 1726 the French made an attempt to establish themselves on the east side of the lake opposite Crown Point, but were deterred by the opposition of Massachusetts. This eastern shore was, however, claimed not only by Massachusetts, but by her neighbor, New Hampshire, with whom she presently fell into a dispute about the ownership, and, as a writer of the time observes, "while they were quarrelling for the bone, the French ran away with it."[1]

At length, in 1731, the French took post on the western side of the lake, and began to intrench themselves at Crown Point, which was within the bounds claimed by New York; but that

[1] Mitchell, *Contest in America*, 22.

province, being then engrossed, not only by her chronic dispute with her Governor, but by a quarrel with her next neighbor, New Jersey, slighted the danger from the common enemy, and left the French to work their will. It was Saint-Luc de la Corne, Lieutenant du Roy at Montreal, who pointed out the necessity of fortifying this place,[1] in order to anticipate the English, who, as he imagined, were about to do so, — a danger which was probably not imminent, since the English colonies, as a whole, could not and would not unite for such a purpose, while the individual provinces were too much absorbed in their own internal affairs and their own jealousies and disputes to make the attempt. La Corne's suggestion found favor at court, and the Governor of Canada was ordered to occupy Crown Point. The Sieur de la Fresnière was sent thither with troops and workmen, and a fort was built, and named Fort Frédéric. It contained a massive stone tower, mounted with cannon to command the lake, which is here but a musket-shot wide. Thus was established an advanced post of France, — a constant menace to New York and New England, both of which denounced it as an outrageous encroachment on British territory, but could not unite to rid themselves of it.[2]

While making this bold push against their neighbors of the South, the French did not forget

[1] *La Corne au Ministre*, 15 *Oct.* 1730.

[2] On the establishment of Crown Point, *Beauharnois et Hocquart au Roy*, 10 *Oct.* 1731; *Beauharnois et Hocquart au Ministre*, 14 *Nov.* 1731.

the West; and towards the middle of the century they had occupied points controlling all the chief waterways between Canada and Louisiana. Niagara held the passage from Lake Ontario to Lake Erie. Detroit closed the entrance to Lake Huron, and Michillimackinac guarded the point where Lake Huron is joined by Lakes Michigan and Superior; while the fort called La Baye, at the head of Green Bay, stopped the way to the Mississippi by Marquette's old route of Fox River and the Wisconsin. Another route to the Mississippi was controlled by a post on the Maumee to watch the carrying-place between that river and the Wabash, and by another on the Wabash where Vincennes now stands. La Salle's route, by way of the Kankakee and the Illinois, was barred by a fort on the St. Joseph; and even if, in spite of these obstructions, an enemy should reach the Mississippi by any of its northern affluents, the cannon of Fort Chartres would prevent him from descending it.

These various Western forts, except Fort Chartres and Fort Niagara, which were afterwards rebuilt, the one in stone and the other in earth, were stockades of no strength against cannon. Slight as they were, their establishment was costly; and as the King, to whom Canada was a yearly loss, grudged every franc spent upon it, means were contrived to make them self-supporting. Each of them was a station of the fur-trade, and the position of most of them had been determined more or less with a view to that traffic.

Hence they had no slight commercial value. In some of them the Crown itself carried on trade through agents who usually secured a lion's share of the profits. Others were farmed out to merchants at a fixed sum. In others, again, the commanding-officer was permitted to trade on condition of maintaining the post, paying the soldiers, and supporting a missionary; while in one case, at least, he was subjected to similar obligations, though not permitted to trade himself, but only to sell trading licenses to merchants. These methods of keeping up forts and garrisons were of course open to prodigious abuses, and roused endless jealousies and rivalries.

France had now occupied the valley of the Mississippi, and joined with loose and uncertain links her two colonies of Canada and Louisiana. But the strength of her hold on these regions of unkempt savagery bore no proportion to the vastness of her claims or the growing power of the rivals who were soon to contest them.[1]

[1] On the claim of France that all North America, except the Spanish colonies of Mexico and Florida, belonged to her, *see* Appendix A.

CHAPTER XVIII.

1744, 1745.

A MAD SCHEME.

War of the Austrian Succession. — The French seize Canseau and attack Annapolis. — Plan of Reprisal. — William Vaughan. — Governor Shirley. — He advises an Attack on Louisbourg. — The Assembly refuses, but at last consents. — Preparation. — William Pepperrell. — George Whitefield. — Parson Moody. — The Soldiers. — The Provincial Navy. — Commodore Warren. — Shirley as an Amateur Soldier. — The Fleet sails.

The Peace of Utrecht left unsettled the perilous questions of boundary between the rival powers in North America, and they grew more perilous every day. Yet the quarrel was not yet quite ripe; and though the French Governor, Vaudreuil, and perhaps also his successor, Beauharnois, seemed willing to precipitate it, the courts of London and Versailles still hesitated to appeal to the sword. Now, as before, it was a European, and not an American, quarrel that was to set the world on fire. The War of the Austrian Succession broke out in 1744. When Frederic of Prussia seized Silesia and began that bloody conflict, it meant that packs of howling savages would again spread fire and carnage along the New England border.

News of the declaration of war reached Louisbourg some weeks before it reached Boston, and

the French military Governor. Duquesnel, thought he saw an opportunity to strike an unexpected blow for the profit of France and his own great honor.

One of the French inhabitants of Louisbourg has left us a short sketch of Duquesnel, whom he calls "capricious, of an uncertain temper, inclined to drink, and when in his cups neither reasonable nor civil."[1] He adds that the Governor had offended nearly every officer in the garrison, and denounces him as the "chief cause of our disasters." When Duquesnel heard of the declaration of war, his first thought was to strike some blow before the English were warned. The fishing-station of Canseau was a tempting prize, being a near and an inconvenient neighbor, at the southern end of the Strait of Canseau, which separates the Acadian peninsula from the island of Cape Breton, or Isle Royale, of which Louisbourg was the place of strength. Nothing was easier than to seize Canseau, which had no defence but a wooden redoubt built by the fishermen, and occupied by about eighty Englishmen thinking no danger. Early in May, Duquesnel sent Captain Duvivier against it, with six hundred, or, as the English say, nine hundred soldiers and sailors, escorted by two small armed vessels. The English surrendered, on condition of being sent to Boston, and the miserable hamlet, with its wooden citadel, was burned to the ground.

[1] *Lettre d'un Habitant de Louisbourg contenant une Relation exacte et circonstanciée de la Prise de l'Isle Royale par les Anglois.*

Thus far successful, the Governor addressed himself to the capture of Annapolis, — which meant the capture of all Acadia. Duvivier was again appointed to the command. His heart was in the work, for he was a descendant of La Tour, feudal claimant of Acadia in the preceding century. Four officers and ninety regular troops were given him,[1] and from three to four hundred Micmac and Malecite Indians joined him on the way. The Micmacs, under command, it is said, of their missionary, Le Loutre, had already tried to surprise the English fort, but had only succeeded in killing two unarmed stragglers in the adjacent garden.[2]

Annapolis, from the neglect and indifference of the British ministry, was still in such a state of dilapidation that its sandy ramparts were crumbling into the ditches, and the cows of the garrison walked over them at their pleasure. It was held by about a hundred effective men under Major Mascarene, a French Protestant whose family had been driven into exile by the persecutions that followed the revocation of the Edict of Nantes. Shirley, governor of Massachusetts, sent him a small reinforcement of militia; but as most of these came without arms, and as Mascarene had few or none to give them, they proved of doubtful value.

Duvivier and his followers, white and red, appeared before the fort in August, made their camp behind the ridge of a hill that overlooked

[1] *Lettre d'un Habitant de Louisbourg.*

[2] *Mascarene to the Besiegers*, 3 *July*, 1744. Duquesnel had written to all the missionaries "d'engager les sauvages à faire quelque coup important sur le fort" (Annapolis). *Duquesnel à Beauharnois*, 1 *Juin*, 1744.

it, and marched towards the rampart; but being met by a discharge of cannon-shot, they gave up all thoughts of an immediate assault, began a fusillade under cover of darkness, and kept the garrison on the alert all night.

Duvivier had looked for help from the Acadians of the neighboring village, who were French in blood, faith, and inclination. They would not join him openly, fearing the consequences if his attack should fail; but they did what they could without committing themselves, and made a hundred and fifty scaling-ladders for the besiegers. Duvivier now returned to his first plan of an assault, which, if made with vigor, could hardly have failed. Before attempting it, he sent Mascarene a flag of truce to tell him that he hourly expected two powerful armed ships from Louisbourg, besides a reinforcement of two hundred and fifty regulars, with cannon, mortars, and other enginery of war. At the same time he proposed favorable terms of capitulation, not to take effect till the French war-ships should have appeared. Mascarene refused all terms, saying that when he saw the French ships, he would consider what to do, and meanwhile would defend himself as he could.

The expected ships were the "Ardent" and the "Caribou," then at Louisbourg. A French writer says that when Duquesnel directed their captains to sail for Annapolis and aid in its capture, they refused, saying that they had no orders from the court.[1] Duvivier protracted the parley with Mas-

[1] *Lettre d'un Habitant de Louisbourg.*

carene, and waited in vain for the promised succor. At length the truce was broken off, and the garrison, who had profited by it to get rest and sleep, greeted the renewal of hostilities with three cheers.

Now followed three weeks of desultory attacks; but there was no assault, though Duvivier had boasted that he had the means of making a successful one. He waited for the ships which did not come, and kept the Acadians at work in making ladders and fire-arrows. At length, instead of aid from Louisbourg, two small vessels appeared from Boston, bringing Mascarene a reinforcement of fifty Indian rangers. This discouraged the besiegers, and towards the end of September they suddenly decamped and vanished. "The expedition was a failure," writes the *Habitant de Louisbourg*, "though one might have bet everything on its success, so small was the force that the enemy had to resist us."

This writer thinks that the seizure of Canseau and the attack of Annapolis were sources of dire calamity to the French. "Perhaps," he says, "the English would have let us alone if we had not first insulted them. It was the interest of the people of New England to live at peace with us, and they would no doubt have done so, if we had not taken it into our heads to waken them from their security. They expected that both parties would merely stand on the defensive, without taking part in this cruel war that has set Europe in a blaze."

Whatever might otherwise have been the dis-

position of the "Bastonnais," or New England people, the attacks on Canseau and Annapolis alarmed and exasperated them, and engendered in some heated brains a project of wild audacity. This was no less than the capture of Louisbourg, reputed the strongest fortress, French or British, in North America, with the possible exception of Quebec, which owed its chief strength to nature, and not to art.

Louisbourg was a standing menace to all the Northern British colonies. It was the only French naval station on the continent, and was such a haunt of privateers that it was called the American Dunkirk. It commanded the chief entrance of Canada, and threatened to ruin the fisheries, which were nearly as vital to New England as was the fur-trade to New France. The French government had spent twenty-five years in fortifying it, and the cost of its powerful defences — constructed after the system of Vauban — was reckoned at thirty million livres.

This was the fortress which William Vaughan of Damariscotta advised Governor Shirley to attack with fifteen hundred raw New England militia.[1] Vaughan was born at Portsmouth in 1703, and

[1] Smollett says that the proposal came from Robert Auchmuty, judge of admiralty in Massachusetts. Hutchinson, Douglas, Belknap, and other well-informed writers ascribe the scheme to Vaughan, while Pepperrell says that it originated with Colonel John Bradstreet. In the Public Record Office there is a letter from Bradstreet, written in 1753, but without address, in which he declares that he not only planned the siege, but "was the Principal Person in conducting it," — assertions which may pass for what they are worth, Bradstreet being much given to self-assertion.

graduated at Harvard College nineteen years later. His father, also a graduate of Harvard, was for a time lieutenant-governor of New Hampshire. Soon after leaving college, the younger Vaughan — a youth of restless and impetuous activity — established a fishing-station on the island of Matinicus, off the coast of Maine, and afterwards became the owner of most of the land on both sides of the little river Damariscotta, where he built a garrison-house, or wooden fort, established a considerable settlement, and carried on an extensive trade in fish and timber. He passed for a man of ability and force, but was accused of a headstrong rashness, a self-confidence that hesitated at nothing, and a harebrained contempt of every obstacle in his way. Once, having fitted out a number of small vessels at Portsmouth for his fishing at Matinicus, he named a time for sailing. It was a gusty and boisterous March day, the sea was rough, and old sailors told him that such craft could not carry sail. Vaughan would not listen, but went on board and ordered his men to follow. One vessel was wrecked at the mouth of the river; the rest, after severe buffeting, came safe, with their owner, to Matinicus.

Being interested in the fisheries, Vaughan was doubly hostile to Louisbourg,— their worst enemy. He found a willing listener in the Governor, William Shirley. Shirley was an English barrister who had come to Massachusetts in 1731 to practise his profession and seek his fortune. After filling various offices with credit, he was made governor

of the province in 1741, and had discharged his duties with both tact and talent. He was able, sanguine, and a sincere well-wisher to the province, though gnawed by an insatiable hunger for distinction. He thought himself a born strategist, and was possessed by a propensity for contriving military operations, which finally cost him dear. Vaughan, who knew something of Louisbourg, told him that in winter the snow-drifts were often banked so high against the rampart that it could be mounted readily, if the assailants could but time their arrival at the right moment. This was not easy, as that rocky and tempestuous coast was often made inaccessible by fogs and surf; Shirley therefore preferred a plan of his own contriving. But nothing could be done without first persuading his Assembly to consent.

On the 9th of January the General Court of Massachusetts — a convention of grave city merchants and solemn rustics from the country villages — was astonished by a message from the Governor to the effect that he had a communication to make, so critical that he wished the whole body to swear secrecy. The request was novel, but being then on good terms with Shirley, the Representatives consented, and took the oath. Then, to their amazement, the Governor invited them to undertake forthwith the reduction of Louisbourg. The idea of an attack on that redoubtable fortress was not new. Since the autumn, proposals had been heard to petition the British ministry to make the attempt, under a promise that the

colonies would give their best aid. But that Massachusetts should venture it alone, or with such doubtful help as her neighbors might give, at her own charge and risk, though already insolvent, without the approval or consent of the ministry, and without experienced officers or trained soldiers, was a startling suggestion to the sober-minded legislators of the General Court. They listened, however, with respect to the Governor's reasons, and appointed a committee of the two houses to consider them. The committee deliberated for several days, and then made a report adverse to the plan, as was also the vote of the Court.

Meanwhile, in spite of the oath, the secret had escaped. It is said that a country member, more pious than discreet, prayed so loud and fervently, at his lodgings, for light to guide him on the momentous question, that his words were overheard, and the mystery of the closed doors was revealed. The news flew through the town, and soon spread through all the province.

After his defeat in the Assembly, Shirley returned, vexed and disappointed, to his house in Roxbury. A few days later, James Gibson, a Boston merchant, says that he saw him "walking slowly down King Street, with his head bowed down, as if in a deep study." "He entered my counting-room," pursues the merchant, "and abruptly said, 'Gibson, do you feel like giving up the expedition to Louisbourg?'" Gibson replied that he wished the House would reconsider their

vote. "You are the very man I want!" exclaimed the Governor.[1] They then drew up a petition for reconsideration, which Gibson signed, promising to get also the signatures of merchants, not only of Boston, but of Salem, Marblehead, and other towns along the coast. In this he was completely successful, as all New England merchants looked on Louisbourg as an arch-enemy.

The petition was presented, and the question came again before the Assembly. There had been much intercourse between Boston and Louisbourg, which had largely depended on New England for provisions.[2] The captured militia-men of Canseau, who, after some delay, had been sent to Boston, according to the terms of surrender, had used their opportunities to the utmost, and could give Shirley much information concerning the fortress. It was reported that the garrison was mutinous, and that provisions were fallen short, so that the place could not hold out without supplies from France. These, however, could be cut off only by blockading the harbor with a stronger naval force than all the colonies together could supply. The Assembly had before reached the reasonable conclusion that the capture of Louisbourg was beyond the strength of Massachusetts, and that the only course was to ask the help of the mother-country.[3]

The reports of mutiny, it was urged, could not be depended on; raw militia in the open field were

[1] Gibson, *Journal of the Siege of Louisbourg.*
[2] *Lettre d'un Habitant de Louisbourg.*
[3] *Report of Council,* 12 *Jan.* 1745.

no match for disciplined troops behind ramparts: the expense would be enormous, and the credit of the province, already sunk low, would collapse under it; we should fail, and instead of sympathy, get nothing but ridicule. Such were the arguments of the opposition, to which there was little to answer, except that if Massachusetts waited for help from England, Louisbourg would be reinforced and the golden opportunity lost. The impetuous and irrepressible Vaughan put forth all his energy; the plan was carried by a single vote. And even this result was said to be due to the accident of a member in opposition falling and breaking a leg as he was hastening to the House.

The die was cast, and now doubt and hesitation vanished. All alike set themselves to push on the work. Shirley wrote to all the colonies, as far south as Pennsylvania, to ask for co-operation. All excused themselves except Connecticut, New Hampshire, and Rhode Island, and the whole burden fell on the four New England colonies. These, and Massachusetts above all, blazed with pious zeal; for as the enterprise was directed against Roman Catholics, it was supposed in a peculiar manner to commend itself to Heaven. There were prayers without ceasing in churches and families, and all was ardor, energy, and confidence; while the other colonies looked on with distrust, dashed with derision. When Benjamin Franklin, in Philadelphia, heard what was afoot, he wrote to his brother in Boston, "Fortified towns are hard nuts to crack, and your teeth are not accustomed to it;

but some seem to think that forts are as easy taken as snuff."[1] It has been said of Franklin that while he represented some of the New England qualities, he had no part in that enthusiasm of which our own time saw a crowning example when the cannon opened at Fort Sumter, and which pushes to its end without reckoning chances, counting costs, or heeding the scoffs of ill-wishers.

The prevailing hope and faith were, it is true, born largely of ignorance, aided by the contagious zeal of those who first broached the project; for as usual in such cases, a few individuals supplied the initiate force of the enterprise. Vaughan the indefatigable rode express to Portsmouth with a letter from Shirley to Benning Wentworth, governor of New Hampshire. That pompous and self-important personage admired the Massachusetts Governor, who far surpassed him in talents and acquirements, and who at the same time knew how to soothe his vanity. Wentworth was ready to do his part, but his province had no money, and the King had ordered him to permit the issue of no more paper currency. The same prohibition had been laid upon Shirley; but he, with sagacious forecast, had persuaded his masters to relent so far as to permit the issue of £50,000 in what were called bills of credit to meet any pressing exigency of war. He told this to Wentworth, and succeeded in convincing him that his province might stretch her credit like Massachusetts, in case of similar military need. New Hampshire was thus enabled

[1] Sparks, *Works of Franklin*, VII. 16.

to raise a regiment of five hundred men out of her scanty population, with the condition that a hundred and fifty of them should be paid and fed by Massachusetts.[1]

Shirley was less fortunate in Rhode Island. The Governor of that little colony called Massachusetts "our avowed enemy, always trying to defame us."[2] There was a grudge between the neighbors, due partly to notorious ill-treatment by the Massachusetts Puritans of Roger Williams, founder of Rhode Island, and partly to one of those boundary disputes which often produced ill-blood among the colonies. The Representatives of Rhode Island, forgetting past differences, voted to raise a hundred and fifty men for the expedition, till, learning that the project was neither ordered nor approved by the Home Government, they prudently reconsidered their action. They voted, however, that the colony sloop "Tartar," carrying fourteen cannon and twelve swivels, should be equipped and manned for the service, and that the Governor should be instructed to find and commission a captain and a lieutenant to command her.[3]

Connecticut promised five hundred and sixteen men and officers, on condition that Roger Wolcott, their commander, should have the second rank in the expedition. Shirley accordingly commissioned him as major-general. As Massachusetts was to

[1] Correspondence of Shirley and Wentworth, in *Belknap Papers. Provincial Papers of New Hampshire*, V.

[2] *Governor Wanton to the Agent of Rhode Island*, 20 *Dec.* 1745, in *Colony Records of Rhode Island*, V.

[3] *Colony Records of Rhode Island*, V. (*Feb.* 1745).

supply above three thousand men, or more than three quarters of the whole force, she had a natural right to name a commander-in-chief.

It was not easy to choose one. The colony had been at peace for twenty years, and except some grizzled Indian fighters of the last war, and some survivors of the Carthagena expedition, nobody had seen service. Few knew well what a fortress was, and nobody knew how to attack one. Courage, energy, good sense, and popularity were the best qualities to be hoped for in the leader. Popularity was indispensable, for the soldiers were all to be volunteers, and they would not enlist under a commander whom they did not like. Shirley's choice was William Pepperrell, a merchant of Kittery. Knowing that Benning Wentworth thought himself the man for the place, he made an effort to placate him, and wrote that he would gladly have given him the chief command, but for his gouty legs. Wentworth took fire at the suggestion, forgot his gout, and declared himself ready to serve his country and assume the burden of command. The position was awkward, and Shirley was forced to reply, "On communicating your offer to two or three gentlemen in whose judgment I most confide, I found them clearly of opinion that any alteration of the present command would be attended with great risk, both with respect to our Assembly and the soldiers being entirely disgusted."[1]

The painter Smibert has left us a portrait of

[1] *Shirley to Wentworth*, 16 *Feb.* 1745.

Pepperrell, — a good bourgeois face, not without dignity, though with no suggestion of the soldier. His spacious house at Kittery Point still stands, sound and firm, though curtailed in some of its proportions. Not far distant is another noted relic of colonial times, the not less spacious mansion built by the disappointed Wentworth at Little Harbor. I write these lines at a window of this curious old house, and before me spreads the scene familiar to Pepperrell from childhood. Here the river Piscataqua widens to join the sea, holding in its gaping mouth the large island of Newcastle, with attendant groups of islets and island rocks, battered with the rack of ages, studded with dwarf savins, or half clad with patches of whortleberry bushes, sumac, and the shining wax-myrtle, green in summer, red with the touch of October. The flood tide pours strong and full around them, only to ebb away and lay bare a desolation of rocks and stones buried in a shock of brown drenched seaweed, broad tracts of glistening mud, sand-banks black with mussel-beds, and half-submerged meadows of eel-grass, with myriads of minute shell-fish clinging to its long lank tresses. Beyond all these lies the main, or northern channel, more than deep enough, even when the tide is out, to float a line-of-battle-ship. On its farther bank stands the old house of the Pepperrells, wearing even now an air of dingy respectability. Looking through its small, quaint window-panes, one could see across the water the rude dwellings of fishermen along the shore of Newcastle, and the neglected earthwork

called Fort William and Mary, that feebly guarded the river's mouth. In front, the Piscataqua, curving southward, widened to meet the Atlantic between rocky headlands and foaming reefs, and in dim distance the Isles of Shoals seemed floating on the pale gray sea.

Behind the Pepperrell house was a garden, probably more useful than ornamental, and at the foot of it were the owner's wharves, with storehouses for salt-fish, naval stores, and imported goods for the country trade.

Pepperrell was the son of a Welshman[1] who migrated in early life to the Isles of Shoals, and thence to Kittery, where by trade, ship-building, and the fisheries, he made a fortune, most of which he left to his son William. The young Pepperrell learned what little was taught at the village school, supplemented by a private tutor, whose instructions, however, did not perfect him in English grammar. In the eyes of his self-made father, education was valuable only so far as it could make a successful trader; and on this point he had reason to be satisfied, as his son passed for many years as the chief merchant in New England. He dealt in ships, timber, naval stores, fish, and miscellaneous goods brought from England; and he also greatly prospered by successful land purchases, becoming owner of the greater part of the growing towns of Saco and Scarborough. When

[1] "A native of Ravistock Parish, in Wales." Parsons, *Life of Pepperrell*. Mrs. Adelaide Cilley Waldron, a descendant of Pepperrell, assures me, however, that his father, the emigrant, came, not from Wales, but from Devonshire.

scarcely twenty-one, he was made justice of the peace, on which he ordered from London what his biographer calls a law library, consisting of a law dictionary, Danvers' "Abridgment of the Common Law," the "Complete Solicitor," and several other books. In law as in war, his best qualities were good sense and good will. About the time when he was made a justice, he was commissioned captain of militia, then major, then lieutenant-colonel, and at last colonel, commanding all the militia of Maine. The town of Kittery chose him to represent her in the General Court, Maine being then a part of Massachusetts. Finally, he was made a member of the Governor's Council, — a post which he held for thirty-two years, during eighteen of which he was president of the board.

These civil dignities served him as educators better than tutor or village school; for they brought him into close contact with the chief men of the province; and in the Massachusetts of that time, so different from our own, the best education and breeding were found in the official class. At once a provincial magnate and the great man of a small rustic village, his manners are said to have answered to both positions,— certainly they were such as to make him popular. But whatever he became as a man, he learned nothing to fit him to command an army and lay siege to Louisbourg. Perhaps he felt this, and thought, with the Governor of Rhode Island, that "the attempt to reduce that prodigiously strong town was too much for New England, which had

not one officer of experience, nor even an engineer." [1] Moreover, he was unwilling to leave his wife, children, and business. He was of a religious turn of mind, and partial to the clergy, who, on their part, held him in high favor. One of them, the famous preacher, George Whitefield, was a guest at his house when he heard that Shirley had appointed him to command the expedition against Louisbourg. Whitefield had been the leading spirit in the recent religious fermentation called the Great Awakening, which, though it produced bitter quarrels among the ministers, besides other undesirable results, was imagined by many to make for righteousness. So thought the Reverend Thomas Prince, who mourned over the subsiding delirium of his flock as a sign of backsliding. "The heavenly shower was over," he sadly exclaims; "from fighting the devil they must turn to fighting the French." Pepperrell, always inclined to the clergy, and now in great perplexity and doubt, asked his guest Whitefield whether or not he had better accept the command. Whitefield gave him cold comfort, told him that the enterprise was not very promising, and that if he undertook it, he must do so "with a single eye," prepared for obloquy if he failed, and envy if he succeeded.[2]

Henry Sherburn, commissary of the New Hampshire regiment, begged Whitefield to furnish a

[1] *Governor Wanton to the Agent of Rhode Island in London*, 20 *Dec.* 1745.

[2] Parsons, *Life of Pepperrell*, 51.

motto for the flag. The preacher, who, zealot as he was, seemed unwilling to mix himself with so madcap a business, hesitated at first, but at length consented, and suggested the words, *Nil desperandum Christo duce*, which, being adopted, gave the enterprise the air of a crusade. It had, in fact, something of the character of one. The cause was imagined to be the cause of Heaven, crowned with celestial benediction. It had the fervent support of the ministers, not only by prayers and sermons, but, in one case, by counsels wholly temporal. A certain pastor, much esteemed for benevolence, proposed to Pepperrell, who had at last accepted the command, a plan, unknown to Vauban, for confounding the devices of the enemy. He advised that two trustworthy persons should cautiously walk together along the front of the French ramparts under cover of night, one of them carrying a mallet, with which he was to hammer the ground at short intervals. The French sentinels, it seems to have been supposed, on hearing this mysterious thumping, would be so bewildered as to give no alarm. While one of the two partners was thus employed, the other was to lay his ear to the ground, which, as the adviser thought, would return a hollow sound if the artful foe had dug a mine under it; and whenever such secret danger was detected, a mark was to be set on the spot, to warn off the soldiers.[1]

Equally zealous, after another fashion, was the Reverend Samuel Moody, popularly known as

[1] Belknap, *Hist. New Hampshire*, II. 208.

Father Moody, or Parson Moody, minister of York and senior chaplain of the expedition. Though about seventy years old, he was amazingly tough and sturdy. He still lives in the traditions of York as the spiritual despot of the settlement and the uncompromising guardian of its manners and doctrine, predominating over it like a rough little village pope. The comparison would have kindled his burning wrath, for he abhorred the Holy Father as an embodied Antichrist. Many are the stories told of him by the descendants of those who lived under his rod, and sometimes felt its weight; for he was known to have corrected offending parishioners with his cane.[1] When some one of his flock, nettled by his strictures from the pulpit, walked in dudgeon towards the church door, Moody would shout after him, "Come back, you graceless sinner, come back!" or if any ventured to the alehouse of a Saturday night, the strenuous pastor would go in after them, collar them, drag them out, and send them home with rousing admonition.[2] Few dared gainsay him, by reason both of his irritable temper and of the thick-skinned insensibility that encased him like armor of proof. And while his pachydermatous nature made him invulnerable as a rhinoceros, he had at the same time a rough and ready humor that supplied keen weapons for the warfare of words and made him a formidable

[1] Tradition told me at York by Mr. N. Marshall.

[2] Lecture of Ralph Waldo Emerson, quoted by Cabot, *Memoir of Emerson*, I. 10.

antagonist. This commended him to the rude borderers, who also relished the sulphurous theology of their spiritual dictator, just as they liked the raw and fiery liquors that would have scorched more susceptible stomachs. What they did not like was the pitiless length of his prayers, which sometimes kept them afoot above two hours shivering in the polar cold of the unheated meeting-house, and which were followed by sermons of equal endurance; for the old man's lungs were of brass, and his nerves of hammered iron. Some of the sufferers ventured to remonstrate; but this only exasperated him, till one parishioner, more worldly wise than the rest, accompanied his modest petition for mercy with the gift of a barrel of cider, after which the Parson's ministrations were perceptibly less exhausting than before. He had an irrepressible conscience and a highly aggressive sense of duty, which made him an intolerable meddler in the affairs of other people, and which, joined to an underlying kindness of heart, made him so indiscreet in his charities that his wife and children were often driven to vain protest against the excesses of his almsgiving. The old Puritan fanaticism was rampant in him; and when he sailed for Louisbourg, he took with him an axe, intended, as he said, to hew down the altars of Antichrist and demolish his idols.[1]

[1] Moody found sympathizers in his iconoclastic zeal. Deacon John Gray of Biddeford wrote to Pepperrell: "Oh that I could be with you and dear Parson Moody in that church [at Louisbourg] to destroy the images there set up, and hear the true Gospel of our Lord and Saviour there preached!"

Shirley's choice of a commander was perhaps the best that could have been made; for Pepperrell joined to an unusual popularity as little military incompetency as anybody else who could be had. Popularity, we have seen, was indispensable, and even company officers were appointed with an eye to it. Many of these were well-known men in rustic neighborhoods, who had raised companies in the hope of being commissioned to command them. Others were militia officers recruiting under orders of the Governor. Thus, John Storer, major in the Maine militia, raised in a single day, it is said, a company of sixty-one, the eldest being sixty years old, and the youngest sixteen.[1] They formed about a quarter of the fencible population of the town of Wells, one of the most exposed places on the border. Volunteers offered themselves readily everywhere; though the pay was meagre, especially in Maine and Massachusetts, where in the new provincial currency it was twenty-five shillings a month,— then equal to fourteen shillings sterling, or less than sixpence a day,[2] the soldier furnishing his own clothing and bringing his own gun. A full third of the Massachusetts contingent, or more than a thousand men, are reported to have come from the hardy population of Maine, whose entire fighting force, as shown by the muster-rolls, was then but 2,855.[3] Perhaps

[1] Bourne, *Hist. of Wells and Kennebunk*, 371.

[2] Gibson, *Journal; Records of Rhode Island*, V. Governor Wanton, of that province, says, with complacency, that the pay of Rhode Island was twice that of Massachusetts.

[3] Parsons, *Life of Pepperrell*, 54.

there was not one officer among them whose experience of war extended beyond a drill on muster day and the sham fight that closed the performance, when it generally happened that the rustic warriors were treated with rum at the charge of their captain, to put them in good humor, and so induce them to obey the word of command.

As the three provinces contributing soldiers recognized no common authority nearer than the King, Pepperrell received three several commissions as lieutenant-general, — one from the Governor of Massachusetts, and the others from the Governors of Connecticut and New Hampshire; while Wolcott, commander of the Connecticut forces, was commissioned as major-general by both the Governor of his own province and that of Massachusetts. When the levies were complete, it was found that Massachusetts had contributed about 3,300 men, Connecticut 516, and New Hampshire 304 in her own pay, besides 150 paid by her wealthier neighbor.[1] Rhode Island had lost faith and disbanded her 150 men; but afterwards raised them again, though too late to take part in the siege.

Each of the four New England colonies had a little navy of its own, consisting of from one to three or four small armed vessels; and as privateering — which was sometimes a euphemism for piracy where Frenchmen and Spaniards were con-

[1] Of the Massachusetts contingent, three hundred men were raised and maintained at the charge of the merchant James Gibson.

cerned — was a favorite occupation, it was possible to extemporize an additional force in case of need. For a naval commander, Shirley chose Captain Edward Tyng, who had signalized himself in the past summer by capturing a French privateer of greater strength than his own. Shirley authorized him to buy for the province the best ship he could find, equip her for fighting, and take command of her. Tyng soon found a brig to his mind, on the stocks nearly ready for launching. She was rapidly fitted for her new destination, converted into a frigate, mounted with 24 guns, and named the "Massachusetts." The rest of the naval force consisted of the ship "Cæsar," of 20 guns; a vessel called the "Shirley," commanded by Captain Rous, and also carrying 20 guns; another, of the kind called a "snow," carrying 16 guns; one sloop of 12 guns, and two of 8 guns each; the "Boston Packet," of 16 guns; two sloops from Connecticut of 16 guns each; a privateer hired in Rhode Island, of 20 guns; the government sloop "Tartar," of the same colony, carrying 14 carriage guns and 12 swivels; and, finally, the sloop of 14 guns which formed the navy of New Hampshire.[1]

It was said, with apparent reason, that one or two heavy French ships-of-war — and a number of such was expected in the spring — would outmatch the whole colonial squadron, and, after mastering it, would hold all the transports at mercy; so that the troops on shore, having no

[1] The list is given by Williamson, II. 227.

means of return and no hope of succor, would be forced to surrender or starve. The danger was real and serious, and Shirley felt the necessity of help from a few British ships-of-war. Commodore Peter Warren was then with a small squadron at Antigua. Shirley sent an express boat to him with a letter stating the situation and asking his aid. Warren, who had married an American woman and who owned large tracts of land on the Mohawk, was known to be a warm friend to the provinces. It is clear that he would gladly have complied with Shirley's request; but when he laid the question before a council of officers, they were of one mind that without orders from the Admiralty he would not be justified in supporting an attempt made without the approval of the King.[1] He therefore saw no choice but to decline. Shirley, fearing that his refusal would be too discouraging, kept it secret from all but Pepperrell and General Wolcott, or, as others say, Brigadier Waldo. He had written to the Duke of Newcastle in the preceding autumn that Acadia and the fisheries were in great danger, and that ships-of-war were needed for their protection. On this, the Duke had written to Warren, ordering him to sail for Boston and concert measures with Shirley "for the annoyance of the enemy, and his Majesty's service in North America."[2] Newcastle's letter reached Warren only two or three days after he had sent back his refusal of Shirley's request. Thinking himself now

[1] *Memoirs of the Principal Transactions of the Last War*, 44.
[2] *Ibid.*, 46. *Letters of Shirley* (Public Record Office).

sufficiently authorized to give the desired aid, he made all sail for Boston with his three ships, the "Superbe," "Mermaid," and "Launceston." On the way he met a schooner from Boston, and learned from its officers that the expedition had already sailed; on which, detaining the master as a pilot, he changed his course and made directly for Canseau,— the place of rendezvous of the expedition,— and at the same time sent orders by the schooner that any King's ships that might arrive at Boston should immediately join him.

Within seven weeks after Shirley issued his proclamation for volunteers, the preparations were all made, and the unique armament was afloat. Transports, such as they were, could be had in abundance; for the harbors of Salem and Marblehead were full of fishing-vessels thrown out of employment by the war. These were hired and insured by the province for the security of the owners. There was a great dearth of cannon. The few that could be had were too light, the heaviest being of twenty-two-pound calibre. New York lent ten eighteen-pounders to the expedition. But the adventurers looked to the French for their chief supply. A detached work near Louisbourg, called the Grand, or Royal, Battery, was known to be armed with thirty heavy pieces; and these it was proposed to capture and turn against the town, — which, as Hutchinson remarks, was "like selling the skin of the bear before catching him."

It was clear that the expedition must run for

luck against risks of all kinds. Those whose hopes were highest, based them on a belief in the special and direct interposition of Providence; others were sanguine through ignorance and provincial self-conceit. As soon as the troops were embarked, Shirley wrote to the ministers of what was going on, telling them that, accidents apart, four thousand New England men would land on Cape Breton in April, and that, even should they fail to capture Louisbourg, he would answer for it that they would lay the town in ruins, retake Canseau, do other good service to his Majesty, and then come safe home.[1] On receiving this communication, the Government resolved to aid the enterprise if there should yet be time, and accordingly ordered several ships-of-war to sail for Louisbourg.

The sarcastic Dr. Douglas, then living at Boston, writes that the expedition had a lawyer for contriver, a merchant for general, and farmers, fishermen, and mechanics for soldiers. In fact, it had something of the character of broad farce, to which Shirley himself, with all his ability and general good sense, was a chief contributor. He wrote to the Duke of Newcastle that though the officers had no experience and the men no discipline, he would take care to provide against these defects,— meaning that he would give exact directions how to take Louisbourg. Accordingly, he drew up copious

[1] *Shirley to Newcastle*, 24 *March*, 1745. The ministry was not wholly unprepared for this announcement, as Shirley had before reported to it the vote of his Assembly consenting to the expedition. *Shirley to Newcastle*, 1 *Feb.* 1745.

instructions to that effect. These seem to have undergone a process of evolution, for several distinct drafts of them are preserved.[1] The complete and final one is among the Pepperrell Papers, copied entire in the neat, commercial hand of the General himself.[2] It seems to assume that Providence would work a continued miracle, and on every occasion supply the expedition with weather precisely suited to its wants. "It is thought," says this singular document, "that Louisbourg may be surprised if they [the French] have no advice of your coming. To effect it you must time your arrival about nine of the clock in the evening, taking care that the fleet be far enough in the offing to prevent their being seen from the town in the daytime." He then goes on to prescribe how the troops are to land, after dark, at a place called Flat Point Cove, in four divisions, three of which are to march to the back of certain hills a mile and a half west of the town, where two of the three "are to halt and keep a profound silence;" the third continuing its march "under cover of the

[1] The first draft of Shirley's instructions for taking Louisbourg is in the large manuscript volume entitled *Siege of Louisbourg*, in the library of the Massachusetts Historical Society. The document is called *Memº for the attacking of Louisbourg this Spring by Surprise*. After giving minute instructions for every movement, it goes on to say that, as the surprise may possibly fail, it will be necessary to send two small mortars and twelve cannon carrying nine-pound balls, "so as to bombard them and endeavour to make Breaches in their walls and then to Storm them." Shirley was soon to discover the absurdity of trying to breach the walls of Louisbourg with nine-pounders.

[2] It is printed in the first volume of the *Collections of the Massachusetts Historical Society*. Shirley was so well pleased with it that he sent it to the Duke of Newcastle enclosed in his letter of 1 Feb. 1745 (Public Record Office).

said hills," till it comes opposite the Grand Battery, which it will attack at a concerted signal; while one of the two divisions behind the hills assaults the west gate, and the other moves up to support the attack.

While this is going on, the soldiers of the fourth division are to march with all speed along the shore till they come to a certain part of the town wall, which they are to scale; then proceed "as fast as can be" to the citadel and "secure the windows of the Governor's apartments." After this follow page after page of complicated details which must have stricken the General with stupefaction. The rocks, surf, fogs, and gales of that tempestuous coast are all left out of the account; and so, too, is the nature of the country, which consists of deep marshes, rocky hills, and hollows choked with evergreen thickets. Yet a series of complex and mutually dependent operations, involving long marches through this rugged and pathless region, was to be accomplished, in the darkness of one April night, by raw soldiers who knew nothing of the country. This rare specimen of amateur soldiering is redeemed in some measure by a postscript in which the Governor sets free the hands of the General, thus: "Notwithstanding the instructions you have received from me, I must leave you to act, upon unforeseen emergencies, according to your best discretion."

On the 24th of March, the fleet, consisting of about ninety transports, escorted by the provincial cruisers, sailed from Nantasket Roads, followed by

prayers and benedictions, and also by toasts drunk with cheers, in bumpers of rum punch.[1]

[1] The following letter from John Payne of Boston to Colonel Robert Hale, of the Essex regiment, while it gives no sign of the prevailing religious feeling, illustrates the ardor of the New England people towards their rash adventure:—

Boston, Apr. 24, 1745.

Sir,

I hope this will find you at Louisbourg with a Bowl of Punch a Pipe and a P — k of C — ds in your hand and whatever else you desire (I had forgot to mention a Pretty French Madammoselle). We are very Impatiently expecting to hear from you, your Friend Luke has lost several Beaver Hatts already concerning the Expedition, he is so very zealous about it that he has turned Poor Boutier out of his House for saying he believed you would not Take the Place. —— Damn his Blood says Luke, let him be an Englishman or a Frenchman and not pretend to be an Englishman when he is a Frenchman in his Heart. If drinking to your success would Take Cape Briton, you must be in Possession of it now, for it 's a standing Toast. I think the least thing you Military Gent[n] can do is to send us some arrack when you take ye Place to celebrate your Victory and not to force us to do it in Rum Punch or Luke's bad wine or sour cyder.

To Collonell Robert Hale
at (or near) Louisbourg.

I am indebted for a copy of this curious letter to Robert Hale Bancroft, Esq., a descendant of Colonel Hale.

CHAPTER XIX.

1745.

LOUISBOURG BESIEGED.

SETH POMEROY. — THE VOYAGE. — CANSEAU. — UNEXPECTED SUCCORS. — DELAYS. — LOUISBOURG. — THE LANDING. — THE GRAND BATTERY TAKEN. — FRENCH CANNON TURNED ON THE TOWN. — WEAKNESS OF DUCHAMBON. — SUFFERINGS OF THE BESIEGERS. — THEIR HARDIHOOD. — THEIR IRREGULAR PROCEEDINGS. — JOSEPH SHERBURN. — AMATEUR GUNNERY. — CAMP FROLICS. — SECTARIAN ZEAL. — PERPLEXITIES OF PEPPERRELL.

ON board one of the transports was Seth Pomeroy, gunsmith at Northampton, and now major of Willard's Massachusetts regiment. He had a turn for soldiering, and fought, ten years later, in the battle of Lake George. Again, twenty years later still, when Northampton was astir with rumors of war from Boston, he borrowed a neighbor's horse, rode a hundred miles, reached Cambridge on the morning of the battle of Bunker Hill, left his borrowed horse out of the way of harm, walked over Charlestown Neck, then swept by the fire of the ships-of-war, and reached the scene of action as the British were forming for the attack. When Israel Putnam, his comrade in the last war, saw from the rebel breastwork the old man striding, gun in hand, up the hill, he shouted, "By God, Pomeroy, you here!

A cannon-shot would waken you out of your grave!"

But Pomeroy, with other landsmen, crowded in the small and malodorous fishing-vessels that were made to serve as transports, was now in the gripe of the most unheroic of maladies. "A terrible northeast storm" had fallen upon them, and, he says, "we lay rolling in the seas, with our sails furled, among prodigious waves." "Sick, day and night," writes the miserable gunsmith, "so bad that I have not words to set it forth."[1] The gale increased and the fleet was scattered, there being, as a Massachusetts private soldier writes in his diary, "a very fierse Storm of Snow, som Rain and very Dangerous weather to be so nigh ye Shore as we was; but we escaped the Rocks, and that was all."[2]

On Friday, April 5th, Pomeroy's vessel entered the harbor of Canseau, about fifty miles from Louisbourg. Here was the English fishing-hamlet, the seizure of which by the French had first provoked the expedition. The place now quietly changed hands again. Sixty-eight of the transports lay here at anchor, and the rest came dropping in from day to day, sorely buffeted, but all safe. On Sunday there was a great concourse to hear Parson Moody preach an open-air sermon from the text, "Thy people shall be willing in the day of thy power," concerning which occasion the

[1] Diary of Major Seth Pomeroy. I owe the copy before me to the kindness of his descendant, Theodore Pomeroy, Esq.

[2] Diary of a Massachusetts soldier in Captain Richardson's company (Papers of Dr. Belknap).

soldier diarist observes, — "Several sorts of Busnesses was Going on, Som a Exercising, Som a Hearing Preaching." The attention of Parson Moody's listeners was, in fact, distracted by shouts of command and the awkward drill of squads of homespun soldiers on the adjacent pasture.

Captain Ammi Cutter, with two companies, was ordered to remain at Canseau and defend it from farther vicissitudes; to which end a blockhouse was also built, and mounted with eight small cannon. Some of the armed vessels had been sent to cruise off Louisbourg, which they did to good purpose, and presently brought in six French prizes, with supplies for the fortress. On the other hand, they brought the ominous news that Louisbourg and the adjoining bay were so blocked with ice that landing was impossible. This was a serious misfortune, involving long delay, and perhaps ruin to the expedition, as the expected ships-of-war might arrive meanwhile from France. Indeed, they had already begun to appear. On Thursday, the 18th, heavy cannonading was heard far out at sea, and again on Friday "the cannon," says Pomeroy, "fired at a great rate till about 2 of the clock." It was the provincial cruisers attacking a French frigate, the "Renommée," of thirty-six guns. As their united force was too much for her, she kept up a running fight, outsailed them, and escaped after a chase of more than thirty hours, being, as Pomeroy quaintly observes, "a smart ship." She carried despatches

to the Governor of Louisbourg, and being unable to deliver them, sailed back for France to report what she had seen.

On Monday, the 22d, a clear, cold, windy day, a large ship, under British colors, sailed into the harbor, and proved to be the frigate "Eltham," escort to the annual mast fleet from New England. On orders from Commander Warren she had left her charge in waiting, and sailed for Canseau to join the expedition, bringing the unexpected and welcome news that Warren himself would soon follow. On the next day, to the delight of all, he appeared in the ship "Superbe," of sixty guns, accompanied by the "Launceston" and the "Mermaid," of forty guns each. Here was force enough to oppose any ships likely to come to the aid of Louisbourg; and Warren, after communicating with Pepperrell, sailed to blockade the port, along with the provincial cruisers, which, by order of Shirley, were placed under his command.

The transports lay at Canseau nearly three weeks, waiting for the ice to break up. The time was passed in drilling the raw soldiers and forming them into divisions of four and six hundred each, according to the directions of Shirley. At length, on Friday, the 27th, they heard that Gabarus Bay was free from ice, and on the morning of the 29th, with the first fair wind, they sailed out of Canseau harbor, expecting to reach Louisbourg at nine in the evening, as prescribed in the Governor's receipt for taking Louisbourg

"while the enemy were asleep."[1] But a lull in the wind defeated this plan; and after sailing all day, they found themselves becalmed towards night. It was not till the next morning that they could see the town, — no very imposing spectacle, for the buildings, with a few exceptions, were small, and the massive ramparts that belted them round rose to no conspicuous height.

Louisbourg stood on a tongue of land which lay between its harbor and the sea, and the end of which was prolonged eastward by reefs and shoals that partly barred the entrance to the port, leaving a navigable passage not half a mile wide. This passage was commanded by a powerful battery called the "Island Battery," being upon a small rocky island at the west side of the channel, and was also secured by another detached work called the "Grand," or "Royal Battery," which stood on the shore of the harbor, opposite the entrance, and more than a mile from the town. Thus a hostile squadron trying to force its way in would receive a flank fire from the one battery, and a front fire from the other. The strongest line of defence of the fortress was drawn across the base of the tongue of land from the harbor on one side to the sea on the other, — a distance of about twelve hundred yards. The ditch was eighty feet wide and from thirty to thirty-six feet deep; and the rampart, of earth faced with masonry, was about sixty feet thick. The glacis sloped down to a vast marsh, which formed one

[1] The words quoted are used by General Wolcott in his journal.

SIEGE OF LOUISBOURG.
1745.
Scale of Feet
1000 2000 3000 4000 5000 6000
References:
A. Landing of New England Men.
B. Camp of Burr's Regiment
C. " Pepperrell's "
D. " " Willard's " "
E. " " Moulton's " "
F. " " Moore's " "
G. First or Green Hill Battery.
H. Second Battery.
I. Third Battery.
J. Fourth or Advanced Battery.
K. Fifth, or Titcomb's Battery.
L. Lighthouse Battery
M. Island Battery (French)
N. Grand, or Royal Battery (French).
O. Burying Ground.
P. King's Bastion, or Citadel.
Q. Barachois.
R. West Gate.
S. South Gate
T. Maurepas Gate
Fresh Water Cove
GABARUS BAY
Flat Point
White Point
Black Point
LOUISBOURG
HARBOR
Rochefort Point
French Storehouses
NORTHEAST HARBOR

of the best defences of the place. The fortress, without counting its outworks, had embrasures for one hundred and forty-eight cannon; but the number in position was much less, and is variously stated. Pomeroy says that at the end of the siege a little above ninety were found, with "a great number of swivels;" others say seventy-six.[1] In the Grand and Island batteries there were sixty heavy pieces more. Against this formidable armament the assailants had brought thirty-four cannon and mortars, of much inferior weight, to be used in bombarding the fortress, should they chance to fail of carrying it by surprise, "while the enemy were asleep."[2] Apparently they distrusted the efficacy of their siege-train, though it was far stronger than Shirley had at first thought sufficient; for they brought with them good store of balls of forty-two pounds, to be used in French cannon of that calibre which they expected to capture, their own largest pieces being but twenty-two-pounders.

According to the *Habitant de Louisbourg*, the garrison consisted of five hundred and sixty regular troops, of whom several companies were Swiss, besides some thirteen or fourteen hundred militia, inhabitants partly of the town, and partly of neighboring settlements.[3] The regulars were in

[1] Brown, *Cape Breton*, 183. Parsons, *Life of Pepperrell*, 103. An anonymous letter, dated Louisbourg, 4 July, 1745, says that eighty-five cannon and six mortars have been found in the town.

[2] *Memoirs of the Principal Transactions of the Last War*, 40.

[3] "On fit venir cinq ou six cens Miliciens aux Habitans des environs; ce que, avec ceux de la Ville, pouvoit former treize à quatorze cens hommes."— *Lettre d'un Habitant de Louisbourg.* This writer says that

bad condition. About the preceding Christmas they had broken into mutiny, being discontented with their rations and exasperated with getting no extra pay for work on the fortifications. The affair was so serious that though order was restored, some of the officers lost all confidence in the soldiers; and this distrust proved most unfortunate during the siege. The Governor, Chevalier Duchambon, successor of Duquesnel, who had died in the autumn, was not a man to grapple with a crisis, being deficient in decision of character, if not in capacity.

He expected an attack. "We were informed of the preparations from the first," says the *Habitant de Louisburg*. Some Indians, who had been to Boston, carried to Canada the news of what was going on there; but it was not believed, and excited no alarm.[1] It was not so at Louisbourg, where, says the French writer just quoted, "we lost precious moments in useless deliberations and resolutions no sooner made than broken. Nothing to the purpose was done, so that we were as much taken by surprise as if the enemy had pounced upon us unawares."

It was about the 25th of March[2] when the garrison first saw the provincial cruisers hovering off the mouth of the harbor. They continued to do so

three or four hundred more might have been had from Niganiche and its neighborhood, if they had been summoned in time. The number of militia just after the siege is set by English reports at 1,310. Parsons, 103.

[1] *Shirley to Newcastle*, 17 *June*, 1745, citing letters captured on board a ship from Quebec.

[2] 14 March, old style.

at intervals till daybreak of the 30th of April, when the whole fleet of transports appeared standing towards Flat Point, which projects into Gabarus Bay, three miles west of the town.[1] On this, Duchambon sent Morpain, captain of a privateer, or "corsair," to oppose the landing. He had with him eighty men, and was to be joined by forty more, already on the watch near the supposed point of disembarkation.[2] At the same time cannon were fired and alarm bells rung in Louisbourg, to call in the militia of the neighborhood.

Pepperrell managed the critical work of landing with creditable skill. The rocks and the surf were more dangerous than the enemy. Several boats, filled with men, rowed towards Flat Point; but on a signal from the flagship "Shirley," rowed back again, Morpain flattering himself that his appearance had frightened them off. Being joined by several other boats, the united party, a hundred men in all, pulled for another landing-place called Fresh-water Cove, or Anse de la Cormorandière, two miles farther up Gabarus Bay. Morpain and his party ran to meet them; but the boats were first in the race, and as soon as the New England men got ashore, they rushed upon the French, killed six of them, captured as many more, including an officer named Boularderie, and put the rest to flight, with the loss, on their own

[1] Gabarus Bay, sometimes called "Chapeau Rouge" Bay, is a spacious outer harbor, immediately adjoining Louisbourg.

[2] *Bigot au Ministre*, 1 *Août*, 1745.

side, of two men slightly wounded.[1] Further resistance to the landing was impossible, for a swarm of boats pushed against the rough and stony beach, the men dashing through the surf, till before night about two thousand were on shore.[2] The rest, or about two thousand more, landed at their leisure on the next day.

On the 2d of May Vaughan led four hundred men to the hills near the town and saluted it with three cheers, — somewhat to the discomposure of the French, though they describe the unwelcome visitors as a disorderly crowd. Vaughan's next proceeding pleased them still less. He marched behind the hills, in rear of the Grand Battery, to the northeast arm of the harbor, where there were extensive magazines of naval stores. These his men set on fire, and the pitch, tar, and other combustibles made a prodigious smoke. He was returning, in the morning, with a small party of followers behind the hills, when coming opposite the Grand Battery, and observing it from the ridge, he saw neither flag on the flagstaff, nor smoke from the barrack chimneys. One of his party was a Cape Cod Indian. Vaughan bribed him with a flask of brandy which he had in his pocket, — though, as the clerical historian takes pains to assure us, he never used it himself, — and the Indian, pretending to be drunk, or, as some

[1] *Pepperrell to Shirley*, 12 *May* 1745. *Shirley to Newcastle*, 28 *Oct.* 1745. *Journal of the Siege*, attested by Pepperrell and four other chief officers (London, 1746).

[2] Bigot says six thousand, or two thousand more than the whole New England force, which was constantly overestimated by the French.

say, mad, staggered towards the battery to reconnoitre.[1] All was quiet. He clambered in at an embrasure, and found the place empty. The rest of the party followed, and one of them, William Tufts, of Medford, a boy of eighteen, climbed the flagstaff, holding in his teeth his red coat, which he made fast at the top, as a substitute for the British flag, — a proceeding that drew upon him a volley of unsuccessful cannon-shot from the town batteries.[2]

Vaughan then sent this hasty note to Pepperrell: "May it please your Honour to be informed that by the grace of God and the courage of 13 men, I entered the Royal Battery about 9 o'clock, and am waiting for a reinforcement and a flag." Soon after, four boats, filled with men, approached from the town to re-occupy the battery,— no doubt in order to save the munitions and stores, and complete the destruction of the cannon. Vaughan and his thirteen men, standing on the open beach, under the fire of the town and the Island Battery, plied the boats with musketry, and kept them from landing, till Lieutenant-Colonel Bradstreet appeared with a reinforcement, on which the French pulled back to Louisbourg.[3]

The English supposed that the French in the

[1] Belknap, II.

[2] John Langdon Sibley, in *N. E. Hist. and Gen. Register*, XXV. 377. The *Boston Gazette* of 3 June, 1771, has a notice of Tufts's recent death, with an exaggerated account of his exploit, and an appeal for aid to his destitute family.

[3] Vaughan's party seems to have consisted in all of sixteen men, three of whom took no part in this affair.

battery, when the clouds of smoke drifted over them from the burning storehouses, thought that they were to be attacked in force, and abandoned their post in a panic. This was not the case. "A detachment of the enemy," writes the *Habitant de Louisbourg*, "advanced to the neighborhood of the Royal Battery." This was Vaughan's four hundred on their way to burn the storehouses. "At once we were all seized with fright," pursues this candid writer, "and on the instant it was proposed to abandon this magnificent battery, which would have been our best defence, if one had known how to use it. Various councils were held, in a tumultuous way. It would be hard to tell the reasons for such a strange proceeding. Not one shot had yet been fired at the battery, which the enemy could not take, except by making regular approaches, as if against the town itself, and by besieging it, so to speak, in form. Some persons remonstrated, but in vain; and so a battery of thirty cannon, which had cost the King immense sums, was abandoned before it was attacked."

Duchambon says that soon after the English landed, he got a letter from Thierry, the captain in command of the Royal Battery, advising that the cannon should be spiked and the works blown up. It was then, according to the Governor, that the council was called, and a unanimous vote passed to follow Thierry's advice, on the ground that the defences of the battery were in bad condition, and that the four hundred men posted there could

not stand against three or four thousand.[1] The engineer, Verrier, opposed the blowing up of the works, and they were therefore left untouched. Thierry and his garrison came off in boats, after spiking the cannon in a hasty way, without stopping to knock off the trunnions or burn the carriages. They threw their loose gunpowder into the well, but left behind a good number of cannon cartridges, two hundred and eighty large bombshells, and other ordnance stores, invaluable both to the enemy and to themselves. Brigadier Waldo was sent to occupy the battery with his regiment, and Major Seth Pomeroy, the gunsmith, with twenty soldier-mechanics, was set at drilling out the spiked touch-holes of the cannon. These were twenty-eight forty-two-pounders, and two eighteen-pounders.[2] Several were ready for use the next morning, and immediately opened on the town, — which, writes a soldier in his diary, "damaged the houses and made the women cry." "The enemy," says the *Habitant de Louisbourg*, "saluted us with our own cannon, and made a terrific fire, smashing everything within range."

[1] *Duchambon au Ministre*, 2 *Sept.* 1745. This is the Governor's official report. "Four hundred men" is perhaps a copyist's error, the actual number in the battery being not above two hundred.

[2] *Waldo to Shirley*, 12 *May*, 1745. Some of the French writers say twenty-eight thirty-six-pounders, while all the English call them forty-twos,— which they must have been, as the forty-two-pound shot brought from Boston fitted them.

Mr. Theodore Roosevelt draws my attention to the fact that cannon were differently rated in the French and English navies of the seventeenth century, and that a French thirty-six carried a ball as large as an English forty-two, or even a little larger.

The English occupation of the Grand Battery may be called the decisive event of the siege. There seems no doubt that the French could have averted the disaster long enough to make it of little help to the invaders. The water-front of the battery was impregnable. The rear defences consisted of a loopholed wall of masonry, with a ditch ten feet deep and twelve feet wide, and also a covered way and glacis, which General Wolcott describes as unfinished. In this he mistook. They were not unfinished, but had been partly demolished, with a view to reconstruction. The rear wall was flanked by two towers, which, says Duchambon, were demolished; but General Wolcott declares that swivels were still mounted on them,[1] and he adds that "two hundred men might hold the battery against five thousand without cannon." The English landed their cannon near Flat Point; and before they could be turned against the Grand Battery, they must be dragged four miles over hills and rocks, through spongy marshes and jungles of matted evergreens. This would have required a week or more. The alternative was an escalade, in which the undisciplined assailants would no doubt have met a bloody rebuff. Thus this Grand Battery, which, says Wolcott, "is in fact a fort," might at least have been held long enough to save the munitions and stores, and effectually disable the cannon, which supplied the English with the only artillery they had, competent to the work before them. The hasty

[1] *Journal of Major-General Wolcott.*

abandonment of this important post was not Duchambon's only blunder, but it was the worst of them all.

On the night after their landing, the New England men slept in the woods, wet or dry, with or without blankets, as the case might be, and in the morning set themselves to encamping with as much order as they were capable of. A brook ran down from the hills and entered the sea two miles or more from the town. The ground on each side, though rough, was high and dry, and here most of the regiments made their quarters, — Willard's, Moulton's, and Moore's on the east side, and Burr's and Pepperrell's on the west. Those on the east, in some cases, saw fit to extend themselves towards Louisbourg as far as the edge of the intervening marsh; but were soon forced back to a safer position by the cannon-balls of the fortress, which came bowling amongst them. This marsh was that green, flat sponge of mud and moss that stretched from this point to the glacis of Louisbourg.

There was great want of tents, for material to make them was scarce in New England. Old sails were often used instead, being stretched over poles, — perhaps after the fashion of a Sioux teepee. When these could not be had, the men built huts of sods, with roofs of spruce-boughs overlapping like a thatch; for at that early season, bark would not peel from the trees. The landing of guns, munitions, and stores was a formidable task, consuming many days and destroying many

boats, as happened again when Amherst landed his cannon at this same place. Large flat boats, brought from Boston, were used for the purpose, and the loads were carried ashore on the heads of the men, wading through ice-cold surf to the waist, after which, having no change of clothing, they slept on the ground through the chill and foggy nights, reckless of future rheumatisms.[1]

A worse task was before them. The cannon were to be dragged over the marsh to Green Hill, a spur of the line of rough heights that half encircled the town and harbor. Here the first battery was to be planted; and from this point other guns were to be dragged onward to more advanced stations, — a distance in all of more than two miles, thought by the French to be impassable. So, in fact, it seemed; for at the first attempt, the wheels of the cannon sank to the hubs in mud and moss, then the carriage, and finally the piece itself slowly disappeared. Lieutenant-Colonel Meserve, of the New Hampshire regiment, a ship-builder by trade, presently overcame the difficulty. By his direction sledges of timber were made, sixteen feet long and five feet wide; a cannon was placed on each of these, and it was then dragged over the marsh by a team of two hundred men, harnessed with rope-traces and

[1] The author of *The Importance and Advantage of Cape Breton* says: "When the hardships they were exposed to come to be considered, the behaviour of these men will hardly gain credit. They went ashore wet, had no [dry] clothes to cover them, were exposed in this condition to cold, foggy nights, and yet cheerfully underwent these difficulties for the sake of executing a project they had voluntarily undertaken."

breast-straps, and wading to the knees. Horses or oxen would have foundered in the mire. The way had often to be changed, as the mossy surface was soon churned into a hopeless slough along the line of march. The work could be done only at night or in thick fog, the men being completely exposed to the cannon of the town. Thirteen years after, when General Amherst besieged Louisbourg again, he dragged his cannon to the same hill over the same marsh; but having at his command, instead of four thousand militiamen, eleven thousand British regulars, with all appliances and means to boot, he made a road, with prodigious labor, through the mire, and protected it from the French shot by an epaulement, or lateral earthwork.[1]

Pepperrell writes in ardent words of the cheerfulness of his men "under almost incredible hardships." Shoes and clothing failed, till many were in tatters and many barefooted;[2] yet they toiled on with unconquerable spirit, and within four days had planted a battery of six guns on Green Hill, which was about a mile from the King's Bastion of Louisbourg. In another week they had dragged four twenty-two-pound cannon and ten coehorns — gravely called "cowhorns" by the bucolic Pomeroy — six or seven hundred yards farther, and planted them within easy range of the citadel. Two of the cannon burst, and were replaced by four more and a large mortar,

[1] See *Montcalm and Wolfe*, chap. xix.
[2] *Pepperrell to Newcastle*, 28 *June*, 1745.

which burst in its turn, and Shirley was begged to send another. Meanwhile a battery, chiefly of coehorns, had been planted on a hillock four hundred and forty yards from the West Gate, where it greatly annoyed the French; and on the next night an advanced battery was placed just opposite the same gate, and scarcely two hundred and fifty yards from it. This West Gate, the principal gate of Louisbourg, opened upon the tract of high, firm ground that lay on the left of the besiegers, between the marsh and the harbor, an arm of which here extended westward beyond the town, into what was called the Barachois, a salt pond formed by a projecting spit of sand. On the side of the Barachois farthest from the town was a hillock on which stood the house of an *habitant* named Martissan. Here, on the 20th of May, a fifth battery was planted, consisting of two of the French forty-two-pounders taken in the Grand Battery, to which three others were afterwards added. Each of these heavy pieces was dragged to its destination by a team of three hundred men over rough and rocky ground swept by the French artillery. This fifth battery, called the Northwest, or Titcomb's, proved most destructive to the fortress.[1]

All these operations were accomplished with the utmost ardor and energy, but with a scorn of rule and precedent that astonished and bewil-

[1] *Journal of the Siege*, appended to Shirley's report to Newcastle; *Duchambon au Ministre*, 2 *Sept.* 1745; *Lettre d'un Habitant;* Pomeroy, etc.

dered the French. The raw New England men went their own way, laughed at trenches and zigzags, and persisted in trusting their lives to the night and the fog. Several writers say that the English engineer Bastide tried to teach them discretion; but this could hardly be, for Bastide, whose station was Annapolis, did not reach Louisbourg till the 5th of June, when the batteries were finished and the siege was nearly ended. A recent French writer makes the curious assertion that it was one of the ministers, or army chaplains, who took upon him the vain task of instruction in the art of war on this occasion.[1]

This ignorant and self-satisfied recklessness might have cost the besiegers dear if the French, instead of being perplexed and startled at the novelty of their proceedings, had taken advantage of it; but Duchambon and some of his officers, remembering the mutiny of the past winter, feared to make sorties, lest the soldiers might desert or take part with the enemy. The danger of this appears to have been small. Warren speaks with wonder in his letters of the rarity of desertions, of which there appear to have been but three during the siege, — one being that of a half-idiot, from whom no information could be got. A bolder commander would not have stood idle while his own cannon were planted by the enemy to batter down his walls; and whatever the risks of a sortie,

[1] Ferland, *Cours d'Histoire du Canada*, II. 477. "L'ennemi ne nous attaquoit point dans les formes, et ne pratiquoit point aucun retranchement pour se couvrir." *Habitant de Louisbourg.*

the risks of not making one were greater. "Both troops and militia eagerly demanded it, and I believe it would have succeeded," writes the Intendant, Bigot.[1] The attempt was actually made more than once in a half-hearted way, — notably on the 8th of May, when the French attacked the most advanced battery, and were repulsed, with little loss on either side.

The *Habitant de Louisbourg* says: "The enemy did not attack us with any regularity, and made no intrenchments to cover themselves." This last is not exact. Not being wholly demented, they made intrenchments, such as they were, — at least at the advanced battery;[2] as they would otherwise have been swept out of existence, being under the concentred fire of several French batteries, two of which were within the range of a musket shot.

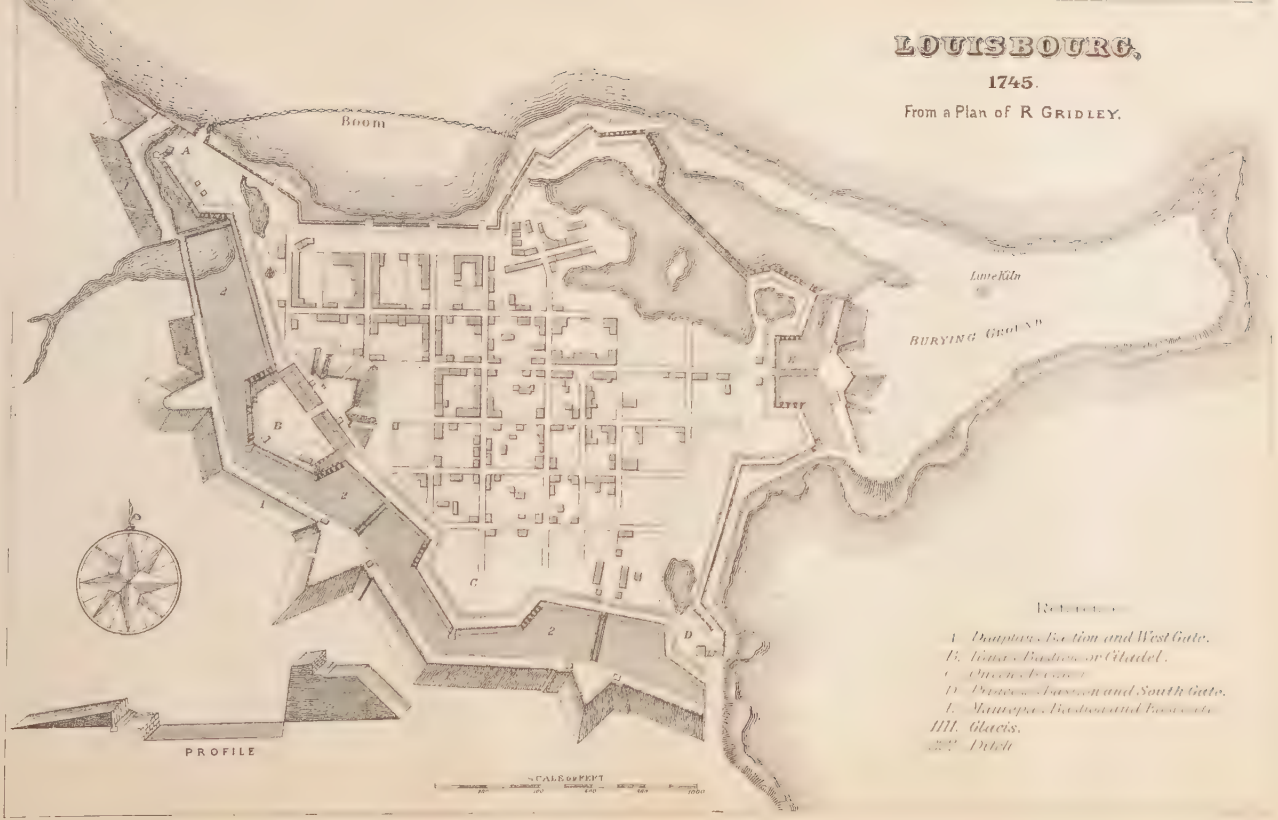
The scarcity of good gunners was one of the chief difficulties of the besiegers. As privateering, and piracy also, against Frenchmen and Spaniards was a favorite pursuit in New England, there were men in Pepperrell's army who knew how to handle cannon; but their number was insufficient, and the General sent a note to Warren, begging that he would lend him a few experienced gunners to teach their trade to the raw hands at the batteries. Three or four were sent, and they found apt pupils.

Pepperrell placed the advanced battery in charge of Captain Joseph[3] Sherburn, telling him to enlist

[1] *Bigot au Ministre*, 1 *Août*, 1745.

[2] *Diary of Joseph Sherburn, Captain at the Advanced Battery.*

[3] He signs his name Jos. Sherburn; but in a list of the officers of the New Hampshire Regiment it appears in full as Joseph.


LOUISBOURG.
1745.
From a Plan of R GRIDLEY.
Boom
Lime Kiln
BURYING GROUND
PROFILE
SCALE OF FEET
A
B
C
D
E
F
G
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65
66
67
68
69
70
71
72
73
74
75
76
77
78
79
80
81
82
83
84
85
86
87
88
89
90
91
92
93
94
95
96
97
98
99
100
101
102
103
104
105
106
107
108
109
110
111
112
113
114
115
116
117
118
119
120
121
122
123
124
125
126
127
128
129
130
131
132
133
134
135
136
137
138
139
140
141
142
143
144
145
146
147
148
149
150
151
152
153
154
155
156
157
158
159
160
161
162
163
164
165
166
167
168
169
170
171
172
173
174
175
176
177
178
179
180
181
182
183
184
185
186
187
188
189
190
191
192
193
194
195
196
197
198
199
200
201
202
203
204
205
206
207
208
209
210
211
212
213
214
215
216
217
218
219
220
221
222
223
224
225
226
227
228
229
230
231
232
233
234
235
236
237
238
239
240
241
242
243
244
245
246
247
248
249
250
251
252
253
254
255
256
257
258
259
260
261
262
263
264
265
266
267
268
269
270
271
272
273
274
275
276
277
278
279
280
281
282
283
284
285
286
287
288
289
290
291
292
293
294
295
296
297
298
299
300
301
302
303
304
305
306
307
308
309
310
311
312
313
314
315
316
317
318
319
320
321
322
323
324
325
326
327
328
329
330
331
332
333
334
335
336
337
338
339
340
341
342
343
344
345
346
347
348
349
350
351
352
353
354
355
356
357
358
359
360
361
362
363
364
365
366
367
368
369
370
371
372
373
374
375
376
377
378
379
380
381
382
383
384
385
386
387
388
389
390
391
392
393
394
395
396
397
398
399
400
401
402
403
404
405
406
407
408
409
410
411
412
413
414
415
416
417
418
419
420
421
422
423
424
425
426
427
428
429
430
431
432
433
434
435
436
437
438
439
440
441
442
443
444
445
446
447
448
449
450
451
452
453
454
455
456
457
458
459
460
461
462
463
464
465
466
467
468
469
470
471
472
473
474
475
476
477
478
479
480
481
482
483
484
485
486
487
488
489
490
491
492
493
494
495
496
497
498
499
500
501
502
503
504
505
506
507
508
509
510
511
512
513
514
515
516
517
518
519
520
521
522
523
524
525
526
527
528
529
530
531
532
533
534
535
536
537
538
539
540
541
542
543
544
545
546
547
548
549
550
551
552
553
554
555
556
557
558
559
560
561
562
563
564
565
566
567
568
569
570
571
572
573
574
575
576
577
578
579
580
581
582
583
584
585
586
587
588
589
590
591
592
593
594
595
596
597
598
599
600
601
602
603
604
605
606
607
608
609
610
611
612
613
614
615
616
617
618
619
620
621
622
623
624
625
626
627
628
629
630
631
632
633
634
635
636
637
638
639
640
641
642
643
644
645
646
647
648
649
650
651
652
653
654
655
656
657
658
659
660
661
662
663
664
665
666
667
668
669
670
671
672
673
674
675
676
677
678
679
680
681
682
683
684
685
686
687
688
689
690
691
692
693
694
695
696
697
698
699
700
701
702
703
704
705
706
707
708
709
710
711
712
713
714
715
716
717
718
719
720
721
722
723
724
725
726
727
728
729
730
731
732
733
734
735
736
737
738
739
740
741
742
743
744
745
746
747
748
749
750
751
752
753
754
755
756
757
758
759
760
761
762
763
764
765
766
767
768
769
770
771
772
773
774
775
776
777
778
779
780
781
782
783
784
785
786
787
788
789
790
791
792
793
794
795
796
797
798
799
800
801
802
803
804
805
806
807
808
809
810
811
812
813
814
815
816
817
818
819
820
821
822
823
824
825
826
827
828
829
830
831
832
833
834
835
836
837
838
839
840
841
842
843
844
845
846
847
848
849
850
851
852
853
854
855
856
857
858
859
860
861
862
863
864
865
866
867
868
869
870
871
872
873
874
875
876
877
878
879
880
881
882
883
884
885
886
887
888
889
890
891
892
893
894
895
896
897
898
899
900
901
902
903
904
905
906
907
908
909
910
911
912
913
914
915
916
917
918
919
920
921
922
923
924
925
926
927
928
929
930
931
932
933
934
935
936
937
938
939
940
941
942
943
944
945
946
947
948
949
950
951
952
953
954
955
956
957
958
959
960
961
962
963
964
965
966
967
968
969
970
971
972
973
974
975
976
977
978
979
980
981
982
983
984
985
986
987
988
989
990
991
992
993
994
995
996
997
998
999
1000

as many gunners as he could. On the next day Sherburn reported that he had found six, one of whom seems to have been sent by Warren. With these and a number of raw men he repaired to his perilous station, where "I found," he says, "a very poor intrenchment. Our best shelter from the French fire, which was very hot, was hogsheads filled with earth." He and his men made the West Gate their chief mark; but before they could get a fair sight of it, they were forced to shoot down the fish-flakes, or stages for drying cod, that obstructed the view. Some of their party were soon killed, — Captain Pierce by a cannon-ball, Thomas Ash by a "bumb," and others by musketry. In the night they improved their defences, and mounted on them three more guns, one of eighteen-pound calibre, and the others of forty-two, — French pieces dragged from the Grand Battery, a mile and three-quarters round the Barachois.

The cannon could be loaded only under a constant fire of musketry, which the enemy briskly returned. The French practice was excellent. A soldier who in bravado mounted the rampart and stood there for a moment, was shot dead with five bullets. The men on both sides called to each other in scraps of bad French or broken English; while the French drank ironical healths to the New England men, and gave them bantering invitations to breakfast.

Sherburn continues his diary. "Sunday morning. Began our fire with as much fury as possible,

and the French returned it as warmly from the Citidale [citadel], West Gate, and North East Battery with Cannon, Mortars, and continual showers of musket balls; but by 11 o'clock we had beat them all from their guns." He goes on to say that at noon his men were forced to stop firing from want of powder, that he went with his gunners to get some, and that while they were gone, somebody, said to be Mr. Vaughan, brought a supply, on which the men loaded the forty-two-pounders in a bungling way, and fired them. One was dismounted, and the other burst; a barrel and a half-barrel of powder blew up, killed two men, and injured two more. Again: "Wednesday. Hot fire on both sides, till the French were beat from all their guns. May 29th went to 2 Gun [Titcomb's] Battery to give the gunners some directions; then returned to my own station, where I spent the rest of the day with pleasure, seeing our Shott Tumble down their walls and Flagg Staff."

The following is the Intendant Bigot's account of the effect of the New England fire: "The enemy established their batteries to such effect that they soon destroyed the greater part of the town, broke the right flank of the King's Bastion, ruined the Dauphin Battery with its spur, and made a breach at the Porte Dauphine [West Gate], the neighboring wall, and the sort of redan adjacent."[1] Duchambon says in addition that the cannon of the right flank of the King's Bastion could not be served, by reason of the continual fire of the enemy, which

[1] *Bigot au Ministre*, 1 *Août*, 1745.

broke the embrasures to pieces; that when he had them repaired, they were broken to pieces (*démantibulés*) again, — and nobody could keep his ground behind the wall of the quay, which was shot through and through and completely riddled.[1] The town was ploughed with cannon-balls, the streets were raked from end to end, nearly all the houses damaged, and the people driven for refuge into the stifling casemates. The results were creditable to novices in gunnery.

The repeated accidents from the bursting of cannon were no doubt largely due to unskilful loading and the practice of double-shotting, to which the over-zealous artillerists are said to have often resorted.[2]

It is said, in proof of the orderly conduct of the men, that not one of them was punished during all the siege; but this shows the mild and conciliating character of the General quite as much as any peculiar merit of the soldiers. The state of things in and about the camp was compared by the caustic Dr. Douglas to "a Cambridge Commencement," which academic festival was then attended by much rough frolic and boisterous horseplay among the disorderly crowds, white and black.

[1] *Duchambon au Ministre*, 2 *Sept.* 1745.

[2] "Another forty-two-pound gun burst at the Grand Battery. All the guns are in danger of going the same way, by double-shotting them, unless under better regulation than at present." *Waldo to Pepperrell*, 20 *May*, 1745.

Waldo had written four days before: "Captain Hale, of my regiment, is dangerously hurt by the bursting of another gun. He was our mainstay for gunnery since Captain Rhodes's misfortune" (also caused by the bursting of a cannon). *Waldo to Pepperrell*, 16 *May*, 1745.

bond and free, who swarmed among the booths on Cambridge Common. The careful and scrupulous Belknap, who knew many who took part in the siege, says: "Those who were on the spot have frequently, in my hearing, laughed at the recital of their own irregularities, and expressed their admiration when they reflected on the almost miraculous preservation of the army from destruction." While the cannon bellowed in the front, frolic and confusion reigned at the camp, where the men raced, wrestled, pitched quoits, fired at marks, — though there was no ammunition to spare, — and ran after the French cannon-balls, which were carried to the batteries, to be returned to those who sent them. Nor were calmer recreations wanting. "Some of our men went a fishing, about 2 miles off," writes Lieutenant Benjamin Cleaves in his diary: "caught 6 Troutts." And, on the same day, "Our men went to catch Lobsters: caught 30." In view of this truant disposition, it is not surprising that the besiegers now and then lost their scalps at the hands of prowling Indians who infested the neighborhood. Yet through all these gambols ran an undertow of enthusiasm, born in brains still fevered from the "Great Awakening." The New England soldier, a growth of sectarian hotbeds, fancied that he was doing the work of God. The army was Israel, and the French were Canaanitish idolaters. Red-hot Calvinism, acting through generations, had modified the transplanted Englishman; and the descendant of the Puritans was never so well

pleased as when teaching their duty to other people, whether by pen, voice, or bombshells. The ragged artillerymen, battering the walls of papistical Louisbourg, flattered themselves with the notion that they were champions of gospel truth.

Barefoot and tattered, they toiled on with indomitable pluck and cheerfulness, doing the work which oxen could not do, with no comfort but their daily dram of New England rum, as they plodded through the marsh and over rocks, dragging the ponderous guns through fog and darkness. Their spirit could not save them from the effects of excessive fatigue and exposure. They were ravaged with diarrhœa and fever, till fifteen hundred men were at one time on the sick-list, and at another, Pepperrell reported that of the four thousand only about twenty-one hundred were fit for duty.[1] Nearly all at last recovered, for the weather was unusually good; yet the number fit for service was absurdly small. Pepperrell begged for reinforcements, but got none till the siege was ended.

It was not his nature to rule with a stiff hand, — and this, perhaps, was fortunate. Order and discipline, the sinews of an army, were out of the question; and it remained to do as well as might be without them, keep men and officers in good-humor, and avoid all that could dash their ardor. For this, at least, the merchant-general was well fitted. His popularity had helped to raise the army, and perhaps it helped now to make it efficient. His position was no bed of

[1] *Pepperrell to Warren*, 28 *May*, 1745.

roses. Worries, small and great, pursued him without end. He made friends of his officers, kept a bountiful table at his tent, and labored to soothe their disputes and jealousies, and satisfy their complaints. So generous were his contributions to the common cause that according to a British officer who speaks highly of his services, he gave to it, in one form or another, £10,000 out of his own pocket.[1]

His letter-books reveal a swarm of petty annoyances, which may have tried his strength and patience as much as more serious cares. The soldiers complained that they were left without clothing, shoes, or rum; and when he implored the Committee of War to send them, Osborne, the chairman, replied with explanations why it could not be done. Letters came from wives and fathers entreating that husbands and sons who had gone to the war should be sent back. At the end of the siege a captain "humble begs leave for to go home," because he lives in a very dangerous country, and his wife and children are "in a declining way" without him. Then two entire companies raised on the frontier offered the same petition on similar grounds. Sometimes Pepperrell was beset with prayers for favors and promotion; sometimes with complaints from one corps or another that an undue share of work had been imposed on it. One Morris, of Cambridge, writes a moving petition that his slave "Cuffee," who

[1] *Letter from an Officer of Marines*, appended to *A particular Account of the Taking of Cape Breton* (London, 1745).

had joined the army, should be restored to him, his lawful master. One John Alford sends the General a number of copies of the Reverend Mr. Prentice's late sermon, for distribution, assuring him that "it will please your whole army of volunteers, as he has shown them the way to gain by their gallantry the hearts and affections of the Ladys." The end of the siege brought countless letters of congratulation, which, whether lay or clerical, never failed to remind him, in set phrases, that he was but an instrument in the hands of Providence.

One of his most persistent correspondents was his son-in-law, Nathaniel Sparhawk, a thrifty merchant, with a constant eye to business, who generally began his long-winded epistles with a bulletin concerning the health of "Mother Pepperrell," and rarely ended them without charging his father-in-law with some commission, such as buying for him the cargo of a French prize, if he could get it cheap. Or thus: "If you would procure for me a hogshead of the best Clarett, and a hogshead of the best white wine, at a reasonable rate, it would be very grateful to me." After pestering him with a few other commissions, he tells him that "Andrew and Bettsy [children of Pepperrell] send their proper compliments," and signs himself, with the starched flourish of provincial breeding, "With all possible Respect, Honoured Sir, Your Obedient Son and Servant." [1] Pepper-

[1] *Sparhawk to Pepperrell, — June,* 1745. This is but one of many letters from Sparhawk.

rell was much annoyed by the conduct of the masters of the transports, of whom he wrote: "The unaccountable irregular behaviour of these fellows is the greatest fatigue I meet with;" but it may be doubted whether his son-in-law did not prove an equally efficient persecutor.

CHAPTER XX.

1745.

LOUISBOURG TAKEN.

A Rash Resolution. — The Island Battery. — The Volunteers. — The Attack. — The Repulse. — Capture of the "Vigilant." — A Sortie. — Skirmishes. — Despondency of the French. — English Camp threatened. — Pepperrell and Warren. — Warren's Plan. — Preparation for a General Attack. — Flag of Truce. — Capitulation. — State of the Fortress. — Parson Moody. — Soldiers dissatisfied. — Disorders. — Army and Navy. — Rejoicings. — England repays Provincial Outlays.

Frequent councils of war were held in solemn form at headquarters. On the 7th of May a summons to surrender was sent to Duchambon, who replied that he would answer with his cannon. Two days after, we find in the record of the council the following startling entry: "Advised unanimously that the Town of Louisbourg be attacked by storm this Night." Vaughan was a member of the board, and perhaps his impetuous rashness had turned the heads of his colleagues. To storm the fortress at that time would have been a desperate attempt for the best-trained and best-led troops. There was as yet no breach in the walls, nor the beginning of one; and the French were so confident in the strength of their fortifications that they boasted that women alone could defend

them. Nine in ten of the men had no bayonets,[1] many had no shoes, and it is said that the scaling-ladders they had brought from Boston were ten feet too short.[2] Perhaps it was unfortunate for the French that the army was more prudent than its leaders; and another council being called on the same day, it was "Advised. That, inasmuch as there appears a great Dissatisfaction in many of the officers and Soldiers at the designed attack of the Town by Storm this Night, the said Attack be deferred for the present."[3]

Another plan was adopted, hardly less critical, though it found favor with the army. This was the assault of the Island Battery, which closed the entrance of the harbor to the British squadron, and kept it open to ships from France. Nobody knew precisely how to find the two landing-places of this formidable work, which were narrow gaps between rocks lashed with almost constant surf; but Vaughan would see no difficulties, and wrote to Pepperrell that if he would give him the command and leave him to manage the attack in his own way, he would engage to send the French flag to headquarters within forty-eight hours.[4] On the next day he seems to have thought the command assured to him, and writes from the Grand Battery that the carpenters are at work mending whale-boats and making paddles, asking at the same time for plenty of pistols and one hundred

[1] *Shirley to Newcastle*, 7 *June*, 1745.
[2] Douglas, *Summary*, I. 347.
[3] *Record of the Council of War*, 9 *May*, 1745.
[4] *Vaughan to Pepperell*, 11 *May*, 1745.

hand-grenades, with men who know how to use them.[1] The weather proved bad, and the attempt was deferred. This happened several times, till Warren grew impatient, and offered to support the attack with two hundred sailors.

At length, on the 23d, the volunteers for the perilous enterprise mustered at the Grand Battery, whence the boats were to set out. Brigadier Waldo, who still commanded there, saw them with concern and anxiety, as they came dropping in in small squads, without officers, noisy, disorderly, and, in some cases, more or less drunk. "I doubt," he told the General, "whether straggling fellows, three, four, or seven out of a company, ought to go on such a service."[2] A bright moon and northern lights again put off the attack. The volunteers remained at the Grand Battery, waiting for better luck. "They seem to be impatient for action," writes Waldo. "If there were a more regular appearance, it would give me greater sattysfaction."[3] On the 26th their wish for action was fully gratified. The night was still and dark, and the boats put out from the battery towards twelve o'clock, with about three hundred men on board.[4] These were to be joined by a hundred or a hundred and fifty more from Gorham's regiment, then stationed at Lighthouse Point. The commander was not Vaughan,

[1] *Vaughan to Pepperell*, 12 *May*, 1745.

[2] *Waldo to Pepperell*, 23 *May*, 1745.

[3] *Ibid.*, 26 *May*, 1745.

[4] "There is scarce three hundred men on this atact [attack], so there will be a sufficient number of Whail boats." *Ibid.*, 26 *May*, 10½ *p.m.*

but one Brooks, — the choice of the men themselves, as were also his subordinates.[1] They moved slowly, the boats being propelled, not by oars, but by paddles, which, if skilfully used, would make no noise. The wind presently rose; and when they found a landing-place, the surf was lashing the rocks with even more than usual fury. There was room for but three boats at once between the breakers on each hand. They pushed in, and the men scrambled ashore with what speed they might.

The Island Battery was a strong work, walled in on all sides, garrisoned by a hundred and eighty men, and armed with thirty cannon, seven swivels, and two mortars.[2] It was now a little after midnight. Captain d'Aillebout, the commandant, was on the watch, pacing the battery platform; but he seems to have seen nothing unusual till about a hundred and fifty men had got on shore, when they had the folly to announce their presence by three cheers. Then, in the words of General Wolcott, the battery "blazed with cannon, swivels, and small-arms." The crowd of boats, dimly visible through the darkness, as they lay just off the landing, wait-

[1] The list of a company of forty-two "subscribers to go voluntarily upon an attack against the Island Battery" is preserved. It includes a negro called "Ruben." The captain, chosen by the men, was Daniel Bacon. The fact that neither this name nor that of Brooks, the chief commander, is to be found in the list of commissioned officers of Pepperrell's little army (see Parsons, *Life of Pepperell, Appendix*) suggests the conclusion that the "subscribers" were permitted to choose officers from their own ranks. This list, however is not quite complete.

[2] *Journal of the Siege*, appended to Shirley's report.

ing their turn to go in, were at once the target for volleys of grape-shot, langrage-shot, and musket-balls, of which the men on shore had also their share. These succeeded, however, in planting twelve scaling-ladders against the wall.[1] It is said that some of them climbed into the place, and the improbable story is told that Brooks, their commander, was hauling down the French flag when a Swiss grenadier cut him down with a cutlass.[2] Many of the boats were shattered or sunk, while those in the rear, seeing the state of things, appear to have sheered off. The affair was soon reduced to an exchange of shots between the garrison and the men who had landed, and who, standing on the open ground without the walls, were not wholly invisible, while the French, behind their ramparts, were completely hidden. "The fire of the English," says Bigot, "was extremely obstinate, but without effect, as they could not see to take aim." They kept it up till daybreak, or about two hours and a half; and then, seeing themselves at the mercy of the French, surrendered to the number of one hundred and nineteen, including the wounded, three or more of whom died almost immediately. By the most trustworthy accounts the English loss in killed, drowned, and captured was one hundred

[1] *Duchambon au Ministre*, 2 *Sept.* 1745. *Bigot au Ministre*, 1 *Août.* 1745.

[2] The exploit of the boy William Tufts in climbing the French flagstaff and hanging his red coat at the top as a substitute for the British flag, has also been said to have taken place on this occasion. It was, as before mentioned, at the Grand Battery.

and eighty-nine; or, in the words of Pepperrell, "nearly half our party."[1] Disorder, precipitation, and weak leadership ruined what hopes the attempt ever had.

As this was the only French success during the siege, Duchambon makes the most of it. He reports that the battery was attacked by a thousand men, supported by eight hundred more, who were afraid to show themselves; and, farther, that there were thirty-five boats, all of which were destroyed or sunk,[2] — though he afterwards says that two of them got away with thirty men, being all that were left of the thousand. Bigot, more moderate, puts the number of assailants at five hundred, of whom he says that all perished, except the one hundred and nineteen who were captured.[3]

At daybreak Louisbourg rang with shouts of triumph. It was plain that a disorderly militia could not capture the Island Battery. Yet captured or silenced it must be; and orders were given to plant a battery against it at Lighthouse Point, on the eastern side of the harbor's mouth, at the distance of a short half mile. The neighboring shore was rocky and almost inaccessible. Cannon and mortars were carried in boats to the nearest landing-place, hauled up a steep cliff,

[1] Douglas makes it a little less. "We lost in this mad frolic sixty men killed and drowned, and one hundred and sixteen prisoners." *Summary*, i. 353.

[2] "Toutes les barques furent brisées ou coulées à fond; le feu fut continuel depuis environ minuit jusqu'à trois heures du matin." *Duchambon au Ministre*, 2 *Sept.* 1745.

[3] *Bigot au Ministre*, 1 *Août*, 1745.

and dragged a mile and a quarter to the chosen spot, where they were planted under the orders of Colonel Gridley, who thirty years after directed the earthworks on Bunker Hill. The new battery soon opened fire with deadly effect.

The French, much encouraged by their late success, were plunged again into despondency by a disaster which had happened a week before the affair of the Island Battery, but did not come to their knowledge till some time after. On the 19th of May a fierce cannonade was heard from the harbor, and a large French ship-of-war was seen hotly engaged with several vessels of the squadron. She was the "Vigilant," carrying 64 guns and 560 men, and commanded by the Marquis de la Maisonfort. She had come from France with munitions and stores, when on approaching Louisbourg she met one of the English cruisers, — some say the "Mermaid," of 40 guns, and others the "Shirley," of 20. Being no match for her, the British or provincial frigate kept up a running fight and led her towards the English fleet. The "Vigilant" soon found herself beset by several other vessels, and after a gallant resistance and the loss of eighty men, struck her colors. Nothing could be more timely for the New England army, whose ammunition and provisions had sunk perilously low. The French prize now supplied their needs, and drew from the *Habitant de Louisbourg* the mournful comment, "We were victims devoted to appease the wrath of Heaven, which turned our own arms into weapons for our enemies."

Nor was this the last time when the defenders of Louisbourg supplied the instruments of their own destruction; for ten cannon were presently unearthed at low tide from the flats near the careening wharf in the northeast arm of the harbor, where they had been hidden by the French some time before. Most of them proved sound; and being mounted at Lighthouse Point, they were turned against their late owners at the Island Battery.

When Gorham's regiment first took post at Lighthouse Point, Duchambon thought the movement so threatening that he forgot his former doubts, and ordered a sortie against it, under the Sieur de Beaubassin. Beaubassin landed, with a hundred men, at a place called Lorembec, and advanced to surprise the English detachment; but was discovered by an outpost of forty men, who attacked and routed his party.[1] Being then joined by eighty Indians, Beaubassin had several other skirmishes with English scouting-parties, till, pushed by superior numbers, and their leader severely wounded, his men regained Louisbourg by sea, escaping with difficulty from the guard-boats of the squadron. The Sieur de la Vallière, with a considerable party of men, tried to burn Pepperrell's storehouses, near Flat Point Cove; but ten or twelve of his followers were captured, and nearly all the rest wounded. Various other petty encounters took place between English scouting-

[1] *Journal of the Siege*, appended to Shirley's report. Pomeroy, *Journal*.

parties and roving bands of French and Indians, always ending, according to Pepperrell, in the discomfiture of the latter. To this, however, there was at least one exception. Twenty English were waylaid and surrounded near Petit Lorembec by forty or fifty Indians, accompanied by two or three Frenchmen. Most of the English were shot down, several escaped, and the rest surrendered on promise of life; upon which the Indians, in cold blood, shot or speared some of them, and atrociously tortured others.

This suggested to Warren a device which had two objects, — to prevent such outrages in future, and to make known to the French that the ship "Vigilant," the mainstay of their hopes, was in English hands. The treatment of the captives was told to the Marquis de la Maisonfort, late captain of the "Vigilant," now a prisoner on board the ship he had commanded, and he was requested to lay the facts before Duchambon. This he did with great readiness, in a letter containing these words: "It is well that you should be informed that the captains and officers of this squadron treat us, not as their prisoners, but as their good friends, and take particular pains that my officers and crew should want for nothing; therefore it seems to me just to treat them in like manner, and to punish those who do otherwise and offer any insult to the prisoners who may fall into your hands."

Captain M'Donald, of the marines, carried this letter to Duchambon under a flag-of-truce. Though familiar with the French language, he spoke to the

Governor through an interpreter, so that the French officers present, who hitherto had only known that a large ship had been taken, expressed to each other without reserve their discouragement and dismay when they learned that the prize was no other than the "Vigilant." Duchambon replied to La Maisonfort's letter that the Indians alone were answerable for the cruelties in question, and that he would forbid such conduct for the future.[1]

The besiegers were now threatened by a new danger. We have seen that in the last summer the Sieur Duvivier had attacked Annapolis. Undaunted by ill-luck, he had gone to France to beg for help to attack it again; two thousand men were promised him, and in anticipation of their arrival the Governor of Canada sent a body of French and Indians, under the noted partisan Marin, to meet and co-operate with them. Marin was ordered to wait at Les Mines till he heard of the arrival of the troops from France; but he grew impatient, and resolved to attack Annapolis without them. Accordingly, he laid siege to it with the six or seven hundred whites and Indians of his party, aided by the so-called Acadian neutrals. Mascarene, the governor, kept them at bay till the 24th of May, when, to his surprise, they all disappeared. Duchambon had sent them an order to make all haste to the aid of Louisbourg. As the report of this reached the besiegers, multiplying Marin's force four-fold, they expected to be

[1] *De la Maisonfort à Duchambon*, 18 *Juin* (new style), 1745. *Duchambon à de la Maisonfort*, 19 *Juin* (new style), 1745.

attacked by numbers more than equal to those of their own effective men. This wrought a wholesome reform. Order was established in the camp, which was now fenced with palisades and watched by sentinels and scouting-parties.

Another tribulation fell upon the General. Shirley had enjoined it upon him to keep in perfect harmony with the naval commander, and the injunction was in accord with Pepperrell's conciliating temper. Warren was no less earnest than he for the success of the enterprise, lent him ammunition in time of need, and offered every aid in his power, while Pepperrell in letters to Shirley and Newcastle praised his colleague without stint. But in habits and character the two men differed widely. Warren was in the prime of life, and the ardor of youth still burned in him. He was impatient at the slow movement of the siege. Prisoners told him of a squadron expected from Brest, of which the "Vigilant" was the forerunner; and he feared that even if it could not defeat him, it might elude the blockade, and with the help of the continual fogs, get into Louisbourg in spite of him, thus making its capture impossible. Therefore he called a council of his captains on board his flagship, the "Superbe," and proposed a plan for taking the place without further delay. On the same day he laid it before Pepperrell. It was to the effect that all the king's ships and provincial cruisers should enter the harbor, after taking on board sixteen hundred of Pepperrell's men, and attack the town from the water side, while what

was left of the army should assault it by land.[1] To accept the proposal would have been to pass over the command to Warren, only about twenty-one hundred of the New England men being fit for service at the time, while of these the General informs Warren that "six hundred are gone in quest of two bodies of French and Indians, who, we are informed, are gathering, one to the eastward, and the other to the westward."[2]

To this Warren replies, with some appearance of pique, "I am very sorry that no one plan of mine, though approved by all my captains, has been so fortunate as to meet your approbation or have any weight with you." And to show his title to consideration, he gives an extract from a letter written to him by Shirley, in which that inveterate flatterer hints his regret that, by reason of other employments, Warren could not take command of the whole expedition, — "which I doubt not," says the Governor, "would be a most happy event for his Majesty's service."[3]

Pepperrell kept his temper under this thrust, and wrote to the commodore with invincible courtesy: "Am extremely sorry the fogs prevent me from the pleasure of waiting on you on board your ship," adding that six hundred men should be furnished from the army and the transports to man the "Vigilant," which was now the most powerful ship in the squadron. In short, he

[1] *Report of a Consultation of Officers on board his Majesty's ship "Superbe,"* enclosed in a letter of *Warren to Pepperrell*, 24 *May*, 1745.

[2] *Pepperrell to Warren*, 28 *May*, 1745.

[3] *Warren to Pepperrell*, 29 *May*, 1745.

showed every disposition to meet Warren half way. But the Commodore was beginning to feel some doubts as to the expediency of the bold action he had proposed, and informed Pepperrell that his pilots thought it impossible to go into the harbor until the Island Battery was silenced. In fact, there was danger that if the ships got in while that battery was still alive and active, they would never get out again, but be kept there as in a trap, under the fire from the town ramparts.

Gridley's artillery at Lighthouse Point had been doing its best, dropping bombshells with such precision into the Island Battery that the French soldiers were sometimes seen running into the sea to escape the explosions. Many of the Island guns were dismounted, and the place was fast becoming untenable. At the same time the English batteries on the land side were pushing their work of destruction with relentless industry, and walls and bastions crumbled under their fire. The French labored with energy under cover of night to repair the mischief; closed the shattered West Gate with a wall of stone and earth twenty feet thick, made an epaulement to protect what was left of the formidable Circular Battery, — all but three of whose sixteen guns had been dismounted, — stopped the throat of the Dauphin's Bastion with a barricade of stone, and built a cavalier, or raised battery, on the King's Bastion, — where, however, the English fire soon ruined it. Against that near and peculiarly dangerous neighbor, the advanced battery, or, as they called it, the *Batterie*

de Francœur, they planted three heavy cannon to take it in flank. "These," says Duchambon, "produced a marvellous effect, dismounted one of the cannon of the Bastonnais, and damaged all their embrasures, — which," concludes the Governor, "did not prevent them from keeping up a constant fire; and they repaired by night the mischief we did them by day."[1]

Pepperrell and Warren at length came to an understanding as to a joint attack by land and water. The Island Battery was by this time crippled, and the town batteries that commanded the interior of the harbor were nearly destroyed. It was agreed that Warren, whose squadron was now increased by recent arrivals to eleven ships, besides the provincial cruisers, should enter the harbor with the first fair wind, cannonade the town and attack it in boats, while Pepperrell stormed it from the land side. Warren was to hoist a Dutch flag under his pennant, at his main-top-gallant mast-head, as a signal that he was about to sail in; and Pepperrell was to answer by three columns of smoke, marching at the same time towards the walls with drums beating and colors flying.[2]

The French saw with dismay a large quantity of fascines carried to the foot of the glacis, ready to fill the ditch, and their scouts came in with reports that more than a thousand scaling-ladders

[1] *Duchambon au Ministre*, 2 *Sept.* 1745.

[2] *Warren to Pepperrell*, 11 *June*, 1745. *Pepperrell to Warren*, 13 *June*, 1745.

were lying behind the ridge of the nearest hill. Toil, loss of sleep, and the stifling air of the casemates, in which they were forced to take refuge, had sapped the strength of the besieged. The town was a ruin; only one house was untouched by shot or shell. "We could have borne all this," writes the Intendant, Bigot; "but the scarcity of powder, the loss of the 'Vigilant,' the presence of the squadron, and the absence of any news from Marin, who had been ordered to join us with his Canadians and Indians, spread terror among troops and inhabitants. The townspeople said that they did not want to be put to the sword, and were not strong enough to resist a general assault."[1] On the 15th of June they brought a petition to Duchambon, begging him to capitulate.[2]

On that day Captain Sherburn, at the advanced battery, wrote in his diary: "By 12 o'clock we had got all our platforms laid, embrazures mended, guns in order, shot in place, cartridges ready, dined, gunners quartered, matches lighted to return their last favours, when we heard their drums beat a parley; and soon appeared a flag of truce, which I received midway between our battery and their walls, conducted the officer to Green Hill, and delivered him to Colonel Richman [Richmond]."

La Perelle, the French officer, delivered a note from Duchambon, directed to both Pepperrell and

[1] *Bigot au Ministre*, 1 *Août*, 1745.
[2] *Duchambon au Ministre*, 2 *Sept.* 1745.

Warren, and asking for a suspension of arms to enable him to draw up proposals for capitulation.[1] Warren chanced to be on shore when the note came; and the two commanders answered jointly that it had come in good time, as they had just resolved on a general attack, and that they would give the Governor till eight o'clock of the next morning to make his proposals.[2]

They came in due time, but were of such a nature that Pepperrell refused to listen to them, and sent back Bonaventure, the officer who brought them, with counter-proposals. These were the terms which Duchambon had rejected on the 7th of May, with added conditions; as, among others, that no officer, soldier, or inhabitant of Louisbourg should bear arms against the King of England or any of his allies for the space of a year. Duchambon stipulated, as the condition of his acceptance, that his troops should march out of the fortress with their arms and colors.[3] To this both the English commanders consented, Warren observing to Pepperrell "the uncertainty of our affairs, that depend so much on wind and weather, makes it necessary not to stickle at trifles."[4] The articles were signed on both sides, and on the 17th the ships sailed peacefully into the harbor, while Pepperrell with a part of his ragged army entered the south gate of the town.

[1] *Duchambon à Pepperrell et Warren*, 26 *Juin* (new style), 1745.

[2] *Warren and Pepperrell to Duchambon*, 15 *June*, 1745.

[3] *Duchambon à Warren et Pepperrell*, 27 *Juin* (new style), 1745.

[4] *Pepperrell to Warren*, 16 *June*, 1745. *Warren to Pepperrell*, 16 *June*, 1745.

"Never was a place more mal'd [mauled] with cannon and shells," he writes to Shirley; "neither have I red in History of any troops behaving with greater courage. We gave them about nine thousand cannon-balls and six hundred bombs."[1] Thus this unique military performance ended in complete and astonishing success.

According to English accounts, the French had lost about three hundred men during the siege; but their real loss seems to have been not much above a third of that number. On the side of the besiegers, the deaths from all causes were only a hundred and thirty, about thirty of which were from disease. The French used their muskets to good purpose; but their mortar practice was bad, and close as was the advanced battery to their walls, they often failed to hit it, while the ground on both sides of it looked like a ploughed field, from the bursting of their shells. Their surrender was largely determined by want of ammunition, as, according to one account, the French had but thirty-seven barrels of gunpowder left,[2]— in which particular the besiegers fared little better.[3]

The New England men had been full of confidence in the result of the proposed assault, and a French writer says that the timely capitulation saved Louisbourg from a terrible catastrophe;[4] yet,

[1] *Pepperrell to Shirley*, 18 *June* (old style,) 1745. *Ibid.*, 4 *July*, 1745.

[2] *Habitant de Louisbourg.*

[3] Pepperrell more than once complains of a total want of both powder and balls. Warren writes to him on May 29th: "It is very lucky that we could spare you some powder; I am told you had not a grain left."

[4] "C'est par une protection visible de la Providence que nous avons

ill-armed and disorderly as the besiegers were, it may be doubted whether the quiet ending of the siege was not as fortunate for them as for their foes. The discouragement of the French was increased by greatly exaggerated ideas of the force of the "Bastonnais." The *Habitant de Louisbourg* places the land-force alone at eight or nine thousand men, and Duchambon reports to the minister D'Argenson that he was attacked in all by thirteen thousand. His mortifying position was a sharp temptation to exaggerate; but his conduct can only be explained by a belief that the force of his enemy was far greater than it was in fact.

Warren thought that the proposed assault would succeed, and wrote to Pepperrell that he hoped they would "soon keep a good house together, and give the Ladys of Louisbourg a Gallant Ball."[1] During his visit to the camp on the day when the flag of truce came out, he made a speech to the New England soldiers, exhorting them to behave like true Englishmen; at which they cheered lustily. Making a visit to the Grand Battery on the same day, he won high favor with the regiment stationed there by the gift of a hogshead of rum to drink his health.

Whether Warren's "gallant ball" ever took place in Louisbourg does not clearly appear. Pepperrell, on his part, celebrated the victory by a dinner to the commodore and his officers. As the

prévenu une journée qui nous auroit été si funeste." *Lettre d'un Habitant de Louisbourg.*

[1] *Warren to Pepperrell,* 10 *June,* 1745.

redoubtable Parson Moody was the general's chaplain and the oldest man in the army, he expected to ask a blessing at the board, and was, in fact, invited to do so, — to the great concern of those who knew his habitual prolixity, and dreaded its effect on the guests. At the same time, not one of them dared rasp his irritable temper by any suggestion of brevity; and hence they came in terror to the feast, expecting an invocation of a good half-hour, ended by open revolt of the hungry Britons; when, to their surprise and relief, Moody said: "Good Lord, we have so much to thank thee for, that time will be too short, and we must leave it for eternity. Bless our food and fellowship upon this joyful occasion, for the sake of Christ our Lord. Amen." And with that he sat down.[1]

It is said that he had been seen in the French church hewing at the altar and images with the axe that he had brought for that purpose; and perhaps this iconoclastic performance had eased the high pressure of his zeal.[2]

Amazing as their triumph was, Pepperrell's soldiers were not satisfied with the capitulation, and one of them utters his disapproval in his diary thus: "Sabbath Day, ye 16th June. They came to Termes for us to enter ye Sitty to morrow, and Poore Termes they Bee too."

The occasion of discontent was the security of

[1] *Collections of Mass. Hist. Society*, I. 49.

[2] A descendant of Moody, at the village of York, told me that he was found in the church busy in the work of demolition.

property assured to the inhabitants, "by which means," says that dull chronicler, Niles, "the poor soldiers lost all their hopes and just demerit [desert] of plunder promised them." In the meagreness of their pay they thought themselves entitled to the plunder of Louisbourg, which they imagined to be a seat of wealth and luxury. Nathaniel Sparhawk, Pepperrell's thrifty son-in-law, shared this illusion, and begged the General to get for him (at a low price) a handsome service of silver plate. When the volunteers exchanged their wet and dreary camp for what they expected to be the comfortable quarters of the town, they were disgusted to see the houses still occupied by the owners, and to find themselves forced to stand guard at the doors, to protect them.[1] "A great Noys and hubbub a mongst ye Solders a bout ye Plunder; Som Cursing, som a Swarein," writes one of the disgusted victors.

They were not, and perhaps could not be, long kept in order; and when, in accordance with the capitulation, the inhabitants had been sent on board vessels for transportation to France, discipline gave way, and General Wolcott records that, while Moody was preaching on a Sunday in the garrison-chapel, there was "excessive stealing in every part of the town." Little, however, was left to steal.

But if the army found but meagre gleanings,

[1] "Thursday, ye 21st. Ye French keep possession yet, and we are forsed to stand at their Dores to gard them." *Diary of a Soldier, anonymous.*

the navy reaped a rich harvest. French ships, instead of being barred out of the harbor, were now lured to enter it. The French flag was kept flying over the town, and in this way prizes were entrapped to the estimated value of a million sterling, half of which went to the Crown, and the rest to the British officers and crews, the army getting no share whatever.

Now rose the vexed question of the relative part borne by the colonies and the Crown, the army and the navy, in the capture of Louisbourg; and here it may be well to observe the impressions of a French witness of the siege. "It was an enterprise less of the English nation and its King than of the inhabitants of New England alone. This singular people have their own laws and administration, and their governor plays the sovereign. Admiral [Commodore] Warren had no authority over the troops sent by the Governor of Boston, and he was only a spectator. . . . Nobody would have said that their sea and land forces were of the same nation and under the same prince. No nation but the English is capable of such eccentricities (*bizarreries*), — which, nevertheless, are a part of the precious liberty of which they show themselves so jealous."[1]

The French writer is correct when he says that the land and sea forces were under separate commands, and it is equally true that but for the conciliating temper of Pepperrell, harmony could not have been preserved between the two chiefs; but

[1] *Lettre d'un Habitant de Louisbourg.*

when he calls Warren a mere spectator, he does glaring injustice to that gallant officer, whose activity and that of his captains was incessant, and whose services were invaluable. They maintained, with slight lapses, an almost impossible blockade, without which the siege must have failed. Two or three small vessels got into the harbor; but the capture of the "Vigilant," more than any other event of the siege, discouraged the French and prepared them for surrender.

Several English writers speak of Warren and the navy as the captors of Louisbourg, and all New England writers give the chief honor to Pepperrell and the army. Neither army nor navy would have been successful without the other. Warren and his officers, in a council of war, had determined that so long as the Island Battery and the water batteries of the town remained in an efficient state, the ships could not enter the harbor; and Warren had personally expressed the same opinion.[1] He did not mean to enter till all the batteries which had made the attempt impracticable, including the Circular Battery, which was the most formidable of all, had been silenced or crippled by the army, and by the army alone. The whole work of the siege fell upon the land forces; and though it had been proposed to send a body of marines on shore, this was not done.[2]

[1] *Report of Consultation on board the "Superbe,"* 7 *June*, 1745. "Commodore Warren did say publickly that before the Circular Battery was reduced he would not venture in here with three times ye sea force he had with him, and, through divine assistance, we tore that [battery] and this city almost to pieces." *Pepperrell to Shirley*, 4 *July*, 1745.

[2] Warren had no men to spare. He says: "If it should be thought

Three or four gunners, "to put your men in the way of loading cannon," [1] was Warren's contribution to the operations of the siege; though the fear of attack by the ships, jointly with the land force, no doubt hastened the surrender. Beauharnois, governor of Canada, ascribes the defeat to the extreme activity with which the New England men pushed their attacks.

The *Habitant de Louisbourg* says that each of the two commanders was eager that the keys of the fortress should be delivered to him, and not to his colleague; that before the surrender, Warren sent an officer to persuade the French that it would be for their advantage to make their submission to him rather than to Pepperrell; and that it was in fact so made. Wolcott, on the other hand, with the best means of learning the truth, says in his diary that Pepperrell received the keys at the South Gate. The report that it was the British commodore, and not their own general, to whom Louisbourg surrendered, made a prodigious stir among the inhabitants of New England, who had the touchiness common to small and ambitious peoples; and as they had begun the enterprise and borne most of its burdens and dangers, they

necessary to join your troops with any men from our ships, it should only be done for some sudden attack that may be executed in one day or night." *Warren to Pepperrell*, 11 *May*, 1745. No such occasion arose.

[1] *Ibid.*, 13 *May*, 1745. On the 19th of May, 1746, Warren made a parting speech to the New England men at Louisbourg, in which he tells them that it was they who conquered the country, and expresses the hope that should the French try to recover it, "the same Spirit that induced you to make this Conquest will prompt you to protect it." See the speech in *Beamish-Murdoch*, II. 100–102.

thought themselves entitled to the chief credit of it. Pepperrell was blamed as lukewarm for the honor of his country because he did not demand the keys and reject the capitulation if they were refused. After all this ebullition it appeared that the keys were in his hands, for when, soon after the siege, Shirley came to Louisbourg, Pepperrell formally presented them to him, in presence of the soldiers.

Warren no doubt thought that he had a right to precedence, as being an officer of the King in regular standing, while Pepperrell was but a civilian, clothed with temporary rank by the appointment of a provincial governor. Warren was an impetuous sailor accustomed to command, and Pepperrell was a merchant accustomed to manage and persuade. The difference appears in their correspondence during the siege. Warren is sometimes brusque and almost peremptory; Pepperrell is forbearing and considerate to the last degree. He liked Warren, and, to the last, continued to praise him highly in letters to Shirley and other provincial governors;[1] while Warren, on occasion of Shirley's arrival at Louisbourg, made a speech highly complimentary to both the General and his soldiers.

The news that Louisbourg was taken, reached Boston at one o'clock in the morning of the 3d of July by a vessel sent express. A din of bells

[1] See extracts in Parson, 105, 106. The *Habitant de Louisbourg* extols Warren, but is not partial to Pepperrell, whom he calls, incorrectly, "the son of a Boston shoemaker."

and cannon proclaimed it to the slumbering townsmen, and before the sun rose, the streets were filled with shouting crowds. At night every window shone with lamps, and the town was ablaze with fireworks and bonfires. The next Thursday was appointed a day of general thanksgiving for a victory believed to be the direct work of Providence. New York and Philadelphia also hailed the great news with illuminations, ringing of bells, and firing of cannon.

In England the tidings were received with astonishment and a joy that was dashed with reflections on the strength and mettle of colonists supposed already to aspire to independence. Pepperrell was made a baronet, and Warren an admiral. The merchant soldier was commissioned colonel in the British army; a regiment was given him, to be raised in America and maintained by the King, while a similar recognition was granted to the lawyer Shirley.[1]

A question vital to Massachusetts worried her in the midst of her triumph. She had been bankrupt for many years, and of the large volume of her outstanding obligations, a part was not worth eightpence in the pound. Added to her load of debt, she had spent £183,649 sterling on the Louisbourg expedition. That which Smollett

[1] To Rous, captain of a provincial cruiser, whom Warren had commended for conduct and courage, was given the command of a ship in the royal navy.

"Tell your Council and Assembly, in his Majesty's name," writes Newcastle to Shirley, "that their conduct will always entitle them, in a particular manner, to his royal favor and protection." *Newcastle to Shirley*, 10 *Aug.* 1745.

calls "the most important achievement of the war" would never have taken place but for her, and Old England, and not New, was to reap the profit; for Louisbourg, conquered by arms, was to be restored by diplomacy. If the money she had spent for the mother-country were not repaid, her ruin was certain. William Bollan, English by birth and a son-in-law of Shirley, was sent out to urge the just claim of the province, and after long and vigorous solicitation, he succeeded. The full amount, in sterling value, was paid to Massachusetts, and the expenditures of New Hampshire, Connecticut, and Rhode Island were also reimbursed.[1] The people of Boston saw twenty-seven of those long, unwieldy trucks which many elders of the place still remember as used in their youth, rumbling up King Street to the treasury, loaded with 217 chests of Spanish dollars, and a hundred barrels of copper coin. A pound sterling was worth eleven pounds of the old-tenor currency of Massachusetts, and thirty shillings of the new-tenor. Those beneficent trucks carried enough to buy in at a stroke nine tenths of the old-tenor notes of the province, — nominally worth above two millions. A stringent tax, laid on by the Assembly, paid the remaining tenth, and Massachusetts was restored to financial health.[2]

[1] £183,649 to Massachusetts; £16,355 to New Hampshire; £28,863 to Connecticut; £6,332 to Rhode Island.

[2] Palfrey, *New England*, V. 101–109; Shirley, *Report to the Board of Trade. Bollan to Secretary Willard*, in *Coll. Mass. Hist. Soc.*, I. 53; Hutchinson, *Hist. Mass.*, II. 391–395. *Letters of Bollan* in Massachusetts Archives.

It was through the exertions of the much-abused Thomas Hutchinson,

Speaker of the Assembly and historian of Massachusetts, that the money was used for the laudable purpose of extinguishing the old debt.

Shirley did his utmost to support Bollan in his efforts to obtain compensation, and after highly praising the zeal and loyalty of the people of his province, he writes to Newcastle: "Justice, as well as the affection which I bear to 'em, constrains me to beseech your Grace to recommend their Case to his Majesty's paternal Care & Tenderness in the Strongest manner." *Shirley to Newcastle*, 6 *Nov.* 1745.

The English documents on the siege of Louisbourg are many and voluminous. The Pepperrell Papers and the Belknap Papers, both in the library of the Massachusetts Historical Society, afford a vast number of contemporary letters and documents on the subject. The large volume entitled *Siege of Louisbourg*, in the same repository, contains many more, including a number of autograph diaries of soldiers and others. To these are to be added the journals of General Wolcott, James Gibson, Benjamin Cleaves, Seth Pomeroy, and several others, in print or manuscript, among which is especially to be noted the journal appended to Shirley's Letter to the Duke of Newcastle of Oct 28, 1745, and bearing the names of Pepperrell, Brigadier Waldo, Colonel Moore, and Lieutenant-Colonels Lothrop and Gridley, who attest its accuracy. Many papers have also been drawn from the Public Record Office of London.

Accounts of this affair have hitherto rested, with but slight exceptions, on English sources alone. The archives of France have furnished useful material to the foregoing narrative, notably the long report of the Governor, Duchambon, to the Minister of War, and the letter of the Intendant, Bigot, to the same personage, within about six weeks after the surrender. But the most curious French evidence respecting the siege is the *Lettre d'un Habitant de Louisbourg contenant une Relation exacte & circonstanciée de la Prise de l'Isle-Royale par les Anglois. A Québec, chez Guillaume le Sincère, à l'Image de la Vérité*, 1745. This little work, of eighty-one printed pages, is extremely rare. I could study it only by having a *literatim* transcript made from the copy in the Bibliothèque Nationale, as it was not in the British Museum. It bears the signature B. L. N., and is dated *à . . . ce* 28 *Août*, 1745. The imprint of Québec, etc., is certainly a mask, the book having no doubt been printed in France. It severely criticises Duchambon, and makes him mainly answerable for the disaster.

For French views of the siege of Louisbourg, *see* Appendix B.

CHAPTER XXI.

1745–1747.

DUC D'ANVILLE.

Louisbourg after the Conquest. — Mutiny. — Pestilence. — Stephen Williams. — His Diary. — Scheme of conquering Canada. — Newcastle's Promises. — Alarm in Canada. — Promises broken. — Plan against Crown Point. — Startling News. — D'Anville's Fleet. — Louisbourg to be avenged. — Disasters of D'Anville. — Storm. — Pestilence. — Famine. — Death of D'Anville. — Suicide of the Vice-Admiral. — Ruinous Failure. — Return Voyage. — Defeat of La Jonquière.

The troops and inhabitants of Louisbourg were all embarked for France, and the town was at last in full possession of the victors. The serious-minded among them — and there were few who did not bear the stamp of hereditary Puritanism — now saw a fresh proof that they were the peculiar care of an approving Providence. While they were in camp the weather had been favorable; but they were scarcely housed when a cold, persistent rain poured down in floods that would have drenched their flimsy tents and turned their huts of turf into mud-heaps, robbing the sick of every hope of recovery. Even now they got little comfort from the shattered tenements of Louisbourg. The siege had left the town in so filthy a condition that the wells were infected and the water was poisoned.

The soldiers clamored for discharge, having enlisted to serve only till the end of the expedition; and Shirley insisted that faith must be kept with them, or no more would enlist.[1] Pepperrell, much to the dissatisfaction of Warren, sent home about seven hundred men, some of whom were on the sick list, while the rest had families in distress and danger on the exposed frontier. At the same time he begged hard for reinforcements, expecting a visit from the French and a desperate attempt to recover Louisbourg. He and Warren governed the place jointly, under martial law, and they both passed half their time in holding courts-martial; for disorder reigned among the disgusted militia, and no less among the crowd of hungry speculators, who flocked like vultures to the conquered town to buy the cargoes of captured ships, or seek for other prey. The Massachusetts soldiers, whose pay was the smallest, and who had counted on being at their homes by the end of July, were the most turbulent; but all alike were on the brink of mutiny. Excited by their ringleaders, they one day marched in a body to the parade and threw down their arms; but probably soon picked them up again, as in most cases the guns were hunting-pieces belonging to those who carried them. Pepperrell begged Shirley to come to Louisbourg and bring the mutineers back to duty. Accordingly, on the 16th of August he arrived in a ship-of-war, accompanied by Mrs. Shirley and Mrs. Warren, wife of the Commodore. The sol-

[1] *Shirley to Newcastle*, 27 *Sept.* 1745.

diers duly fell into line to receive him. As it was not his habit to hide his own merits, he tells the Duke of Newcastle that nobody but he could have quieted the malcontents, — which is probably true, as nobody else had power to raise their pay. He made them a speech, promised them forty shillings in Massachusetts new-tenor currency a month, instead of twenty-five, and ended with ordering for each man half a pint of rum to drink the King's health. Though potations so generous might be thought to promise effects not wholly sedative, the mutineers were brought to reason, and some even consented to remain in garrison till the next June.[1]

Small reinforcements came from New England to hold the place till the arrival of troops from Gibraltar, promised by the ministry. The two regiments raised in the colonies, and commanded by Shirley and Pepperrell, were also intended to form a part of the garrison; but difficulty was found in filling the ranks, because, says Shirley, some commissions have been given to Englishmen, and men will not enlist here except under American officers.

Nothing could be more dismal than the condition of Louisbourg, as reflected in the diaries of soldiers and others who spent there the winter that followed its capture. Among these diaries is that of the worthy Benjamin Crafts, private in Hale's Essex regiment, who to the entry of each day adds a pious invocation, sincere in its way,

[1] *Shirley to Newcastle*, 4 *Dec.* 1745.

no doubt, though hackneyed, and sometimes in strange company. Thus, after noting down Shirley's gift of half a pint of rum to every man to drink the King's health, he adds immediately: "The Lord Look upon us and enable us to trust in him & may he prepare us for his holy Day." On "September ye 1, being Sabath," we find the following record: "I am much out of order. This forenoon heard Mr. Stephen Williams preach from ye 18 Luke 9 verse in the afternoon from ye 8 of Eccles: 8 verse: Blessed be the Lord that has given us to enjoy another Sabath and opertunity to hear his Word Dispensed." On the next day, "being Monday," he continues, "Last night I was taken very Bad: the Lord be pleased to strengthen my inner man that I may put my whole Trust in him. May we all be prepared for his holy will. Red part of plunder, 9 small tooth combs." Crafts died in the spring, of the prevailing distemper, after doing good service in the commissary department of his regiment.

Stephen Williams, the preacher whose sermons had comforted Crafts in his trouble, was a son of Rev. John Williams, captured by the Indians at Deerfield in 1704, and was now minister of Long Meadow, Massachusetts. He had joined the anti-papal crusade as one of its chaplains, and passed for a man of ability, — a point on which those who read his diary will probably have doubts. The lot of the army chaplains was of the hardest. A pestilence had fallen upon Louisbourg, and turned the fortress into a hospital. "After we got into

the town," says the sarcastic Dr. Douglas, whose pleasure it is to put everything in its worst light, "a sordid indolence or sloth, for want of discipline, induced putrid fevers and dysenteries, which at length in August became contagious, and the people died like rotten sheep." From fourteen to twenty-seven were buried every day in the cemetery behind the town, outside the Maurepas Gate, by the old lime-kiln, on Rochefort Point; and the forgotten bones of above five hundred New England men lie there to this day under the coarse, neglected grass. The chaplain's diary is little but a dismal record of sickness, death, sermons, funerals, and prayers with the dying ten times a day. "Prayed at Hospital; — Prayed at Citadel; — Preached at Grand Batery; — Visited Capt. [illegible], very sick; — One of Capt. ——'s company dy^d — Am but poorly myself, but able to keep about." Now and then there is a momentary change of note, as when he writes: "July 29th. One of ye Captains of ye men of war caind a soldier who struck ye capt. again. A great tumult. Swords were drawn; no life lost, but great uneasiness is caused." Or when he sets down the "say" of some Briton, apparently a naval officer, "that he had tho't ye New England men were Cowards — but now he tho't yt if they had a pick axe & spade, they w'd dig ye way to Hell & storm it."[1]

Williams was sorely smitten with homesickness,

[1] The autograph diary of Rev. Stephen Williams is in my possession. The handwriting is detestable.

but he sturdily kept his post, in spite of grievous yearnings for family and flock. The pestilence slowly abated, till at length the burying-parties that passed the Maurepas Gate counted only three or four a day. At the end of January five hundred and sixty-one men had died, eleven hundred were on the sick list, and about one thousand fit for duty.[1] The promised regiments from Gibraltar had not come. Could the French have struck then, Louisbourg might have changed hands again. The Gibraltar regiments had arrived so late upon that rude coast that they turned southward to the milder shores of Virginia, spent the winter there, and did not appear at Louisbourg till April. They brought with them a commission for Warren as governor of the fortress. He made a speech of thanks to the New England garrison, now reduced to less than nineteen hundred men, sick and well, and they sailed at last for home, Louisbourg being now thought safe from any attempt of France.

To the zealous and energetic Shirley the capture of the fortress was but a beginning of greater triumphs. Scarcely had the New England militia sailed from Boston on their desperate venture, when he wrote to the Duke of Newcastle that should the expedition succeed, all New England would be on fire to attack Canada, and the other colonies would take part with them, if ordered to do so by the ministry.[2] And, some months later,

[1] On May 10th, 1746, Shirley writes to Newcastle that eight hundred and ninety men had died during the winter. The sufferings of the garrison from cold were extreme.

[2] *Shirley to Newcastle, 4 April, 1745.*

after Louisbourg was taken, he urged the policy of striking while the iron was hot, and invading Canada at once. The colonists, he said, were ready, and it would be easier to raise ten thousand men for such an attack than one thousand to lie idle in garrison at Louisbourg or anywhere else. France and England, he thinks, cannot live on the same continent. If we were rid of the French, he continues, England would soon control America, which would make her first among the nations; and he ventures what now seems the modest prediction that in one or two centuries the British colonies would rival France in population. Even now, he is sure that they would raise twenty thousand men to capture Canada, if the King required it of them, and Warren would be an acceptable commander for the naval part of the expedition; "but," concludes the Governor, "I will take no step without orders from his Majesty."[1]

The Duke of Newcastle was now at the head of the Government. Smollett and Horace Walpole have made his absurdities familiar, in anecdotes which, true or not, do no injustice to his character; yet he had talents that were great in their way, though their way was a mean one. They were talents, not of the statesman, but of the political manager, and their object was to win office and keep it.

Newcastle, whatever his motives, listened to the counsels of Shirley, and directed him to consult with Warren as to the proposed attack on Canada.

[1] *Shirley to Newcastle*, 29 *Oct.* 1745.

At the same time he sent a circular letter to the governors of the provinces from New England to North Carolina, directing them, should the invasion be ordered, to call upon their assemblies for as many men as they would grant.[1] Shirley's views were cordially supported by Warren, and the levies were made accordingly, though not in proportion to the strength of the several colonies; for those south of New York felt little interest in the plan. Shirley was told to "dispose Massachusetts to do its part;" but neither he nor his province needed prompting. Taking his cue from the Roman senator, he exclaimed to his Assembly, "*Delenda est Canada;*" and the Assembly responded by voting to raise thirty-five hundred men, and offering a bounty equivalent to £4 sterling to each volunteer, besides a blanket for every one, and a bed for every two. New Hampshire contributed five hundred men, Rhode Island three hundred, Connecticut one thousand, New York sixteen hundred, New Jersey five hundred, Maryland three hundred, and Virginia one hundred. The Pennsylvania Assembly, controlled by Quaker non-combatants, would give no soldiers; but, by a popular movement, the province furnished four hundred men, without the help of its representatives.[2]

As usual in the English attempts against Canada, the campaign was to be a double one. The

[1] *Newcastle to the Provincial Governors*, 14 *March*, 1746; *Shirley to Newcastle*, 31 *May*, 1746; *Proclamation of Shirley*, 2 *June*, 1746.

[2] Hutchinson, II. 381, *note*. Compare *Memoirs of the Principal Transactions of the Late War*.

main body of troops, composed of British regulars and New England militia, was to sail up the St. Lawrence and attack Quebec, while the levies of New York and the provinces farther south, aided, it was hoped, by the warriors of the Iroquois, were to advance on Montreal by way of Lake Champlain.

Newcastle promised eight battalions of British troops under Lieutenant-General Saint Clair. They were to meet the New England men at Louisbourg, and all were then to sail together for Quebec, under the escort of a squadron commanded by Warren. Shirley also was to go to Louisbourg, and arrange the plan of the campaign with the General and the Admiral. Thus, without loss of time, the captured fortress was to be made a base of operations against its late owners.

Canada was wild with alarm at reports of English preparation. There were about fifty English prisoners in barracks at Quebec, and every device was tried to get information from them; but being chiefly rustics caught on the frontiers by Indian war-parties, they had little news to give, and often refused to give even this. One of them, who had been taken long before and gained over by the French,[1] was used as an agent to extract information from his countrymen, and was called "*notre homme de confiance*." At the same time the prisoners were freely supplied with writing materials, and their letters to their friends being

[1] "Un ancien prisonnier affidé que l'on a mis dans nos interests."

then opened, it appeared that they were all in expectation of speedy deliverance.[1]

In July a report came from Acadia that from forty to fifty thousand men were to attack Canada; and on the 1st of August a prisoner lately taken at Saratoga declared that there were thirty-two warships at Boston ready to sail against Quebec, and that thirteen thousand men were to march at once from Albany against Montreal. "If all these stories are true," writes the Canadian journalist, "all the English on this continent must be in arms."

Preparations for defence were pushed with feverish energy. Fireships were made ready at Quebec, and fire-rafts at Isle-aux-Coudres; provisions were gathered, and ammunition was distributed; reconnoitring parties were sent to watch the Gulf and the River; and bands of Canadians and Indians lately sent to Acadia were ordered to hasten back.

Thanks to the Duke of Newcastle, all these alarms were needless. The Massachusetts levies were ready within six weeks, and Shirley, eager and impatient, waited in vain for the squadron from England and the promised eight battalions of regulars. They did not come; and in August he wrote to Newcastle that it would now be impossible to reach Quebec before October, which would be too late.[2] The eight battalions had been sent to Portsmouth for embarkation, ordered on board the

[1] *Extrait en forme de Journal de ce qui s'est passé dans la Colonie depuis . . . le* 1 *Déc.* 1745, *jusqu'au* 9 *Nov.* 1746, *signé Beauharnois et Hocquart.*

[2] *Shirley to Newcastle,* 22 *Aug.* 1746.

transports, then ordered ashore again, and finally sent on an abortive expedition against the coast of France. There were those who thought that this had been their destination from the first, and that the proposed attack on Canada was only a pretence to deceive the enemy. It was not till the next spring that Newcastle tried to explain the miscarriage to Shirley. He wrote that the troops had been detained by head-winds till General Saint Clair and Admiral Lestock thought it too late; to which he added that the demands of the European war made the Canadian expedition impracticable, and that Shirley was to stand on the defensive and attempt no further conquests. As for the provincial soldiers, who this time were in the pay of the Crown, he says that they were "very expensive," and orders the Governor to get rid of them "as cheap as possible."[1] Thus, not for the first time, the hopes of the colonies were brought to nought by the failure of the British ministers to keep their promises.

When, in the autumn of 1746, Shirley said that for the present Canada was to be let alone, he bethought him of a less decisive conquest, and proposed to employ the provincial troops for an attack on Crown Point, which formed a half-way station between Albany and Montreal, and was the constant rendezvous of war-parties against New York, New Hampshire, and Massachusetts, whose discords and jealousies had prevented them from combining to attack it. The Dutch of

[1] *Newcastle to Shirley*, 30 *May*, 1747.

Albany, too, had strong commercial reasons for not coming to blows with the Canadians. Of late, however, Massachusetts and New York had suffered so much from this inconvenient neighbor that it was possible to unite them against it; and as Clinton, governor of New York, was scarcely less earnest to get possession of Crown Point than was Shirley himself, a plan of operations was soon settled. By the middle of October fifteen hundred Massachusetts troops were on their way to join the New York levies, and then advance upon the obnoxious post.[1]

Even this modest enterprise was destined to fail. Astounding tidings reached New England, and startled her like a thunder-clap from dreams of conquest. It was reported that a great French fleet and army were on their way to retake Louisbourg, reconquer Acadia, burn Boston, and lay waste the other seaboard towns. The Massachusetts troops marching for Crown Point were recalled, and the country militia were mustered in arms. In a few days the narrow, crooked streets of the Puritan capital were crowded with more than eight thousand armed rustics from the farms and villages of Middlesex, Essex, Norfolk, and Worcester, and Connecticut promised six thousand more as soon as the hostile fleet should appear. The defences of Castle William were enlarged and strengthened, and cannon were planted on the islands at the mouth of the harbor; hulks were sunk in the channel, and a boom was laid across it under

[1] *Memoirs of the Principal Transactions of the Last War.*

the guns of the castle.[1] The alarm was compared to that which filled England on the approach of the Spanish Armada.[2]

Canada heard the news of the coming armament with an exultation that was dashed with misgiving as weeks and months passed and the fleet did not appear. At length in September a vessel put in to an Acadian harbor with the report that she had met the ships in mid-ocean, and that they counted a hundred and fifty sail. Some weeks later the Governor and Intendant of Canada wrote that on the 14th of October they received a letter from Chibucto with "the agreeable news" that the Duc d'Anville and his fleet had arrived there about three weeks before. Had they known more, they would have rejoiced less.

That her great American fortress should have been snatched from her by a despised militia was more than France could bear; and in the midst of a burdensome war she made a crowning effort to retrieve her honor and pay the debt with usury. It was computed that nearly half the French navy was gathered at Brest under command of the Duc d'Anville. By one account his force consisted of eleven ships of the line, twenty frigates, and thirty-four transports and fireships, or sixty-five in all. Another list gives a total of sixty-six, of which ten were ships of the line, twenty-two were

[1] *Shirley to Newcastle*, 29 *Sept.* 1746. Shirley says that though the French may bombard the town, he does not think they could make a landing, as he shall have fifteen thousand good men within call to oppose them.

[2] Hutchinson, II. 382.

frigates and fireships, and thirty-four were transports.[1] These last carried the regiment of Ponthieu, with other veteran troops, to the number in all of three thousand one hundred and fifty. The fleet was to be joined at Chibucto, now Halifax, by four heavy ships-of-war lately sent to the West Indies under M. de Conflans.

From Brest D'Anville sailed for some reason to Rochelle, and here the ships were kept so long by head-winds that it was the 20th of June before they could put to sea. From the first the omens were sinister. The Admiral was beset with questions as to the destination of the fleet, which was known to him alone; and when, for the sake of peace, he told it to his officers, their discontent redoubled. The Bay of Biscay was rough and boisterous, and spars, sails, and bowsprits were carried away. After they had been a week at sea, some of the ships, being dull sailers, lagged behind, and the rest were forced to shorten sail and wait for them. In the longitude of the Azores there was a dead calm, and the whole fleet lay idle for days. Then came a squall, with lightning. Several ships were struck. On one of them six men were killed, and on the seventy-gun ship "Mars" a box of musket and cannon cartridges blew up, killed ten men, and wounded twenty-one. A storeship which proved to be sinking was abandoned and burned. Then a pestilence broke out, and in some of the ships there were more sick than in health.

[1] This list is in the journal of a captured French officer called by Shirley M. Rebateau.

On the 14th of September they neared the coast of Nova Scotia, and were in dread of the dangerous shoals of Sable Island, the position of which they did not exactly know. They groped their way in fogs till a fearful storm, with thunder and lightning, fell upon them. The journalist of the voyage, a captain in the regiment of Ponthieu, says, with the exaggeration common in such cases, that the waves ran as high as the masts; and such was their violence that a transport, dashing against the ship "Amazone," immediately went down, with all on board. The crew of the "Prince d'Orange," half blinded by wind and spray, saw the great ship "Caribou," without bowsprit or main-topmast, driving towards them before the gale, and held their breath in expectation of the shock as she swept close alongside and vanished in the storm.[1] The tempest raged all night, and the fleet became so scattered that there was no more danger of collision. In the morning the journalist could see but five sail; but as the day advanced the rest began to reappear, and at three o'clock he counted thirty-one from the deck of the "Prince d'Orange." The gale was subsiding, but its effects were seen in hencoops, casks, and chests floating on the surges and telling the fate of one or more of the fleet. The "Argonaut" was rolling helpless, without masts or rudder; the "Caribou" had thrown overboard all the starboard guns

[1] *Journal historique du Voyage de la Flotte commandée par M. le Duc d'Enville.* The writer was on board the "Prince d'Orange," and describes what he saw (Archives du Séminaire de Québec; printed in *Le Canada Français*).

of her upper deck; and the vice-admiral's ship, the "Trident," was in scarcely better condition.

On the 23d they were wrapped in thick fog and lay firing guns, ringing bells, and beating drums to prevent collisions. When the weather cleared, they looked in vain for the Admiral's ship, the "Northumberland."[1] She was not lost, however, but with two other ships was far ahead of the fleet and near Chibucto, though in great perplexity, having no pilot who knew the coast. She soon after had the good fortune to capture a small English vessel with a man on board well acquainted with Chibucto harbor. D'Anville offered him his liberty and a hundred louis if he would pilot the ship in. To this he agreed; but when he rejoined his fellow-prisoners they called him a traitor to his country, on which he retracted his promise. D'Anville was sorely perplexed; but Duperrier, captain of the "Northumberland," less considerate of the prisoner's feelings, told him that unless he kept his word he should be thrown into the sea, with a pair of cannon-balls made fast to his feet. At this his scruples gave way, and before night the "Northumberland" was safe in Chibucto Bay. D'Anville had hoped to find here the four ships of Conflans which were to have met him from the West Indies at this, the appointed rendezvous; but he saw only a solitary transport of his own fleet. Hills covered with forests stood lonely and savage round what

[1] The "Northumberland" was an English prize captured by Captains Serier and Conflans in 1744.

is now the harbor of Halifax. Conflans and his four ships had arrived early in the month, and finding nobody, though it was nearly three months since D'Anville left Rochelle, he cruised among the fogs for a while, and then sailed for France a few days before the Admiral's arrival.

D'Anville was ignorant of the fate of his fleet; but he knew that the two ships which had reached Chibucto with him were full of sick men, that their provisions were nearly spent, and that there was every reason to believe such of the fleet as the storm might have spared to be in no better case. An officer of the expedition describes D'Anville as a man "made to command and worthy to be loved," and says that he had borne the disasters of the voyage with the utmost fortitude and serenity.[1] Yet suspense and distress wrought fatally upon him, and at two o'clock in the morning of the 27th he died, — of apoplexy, by the best accounts; though it was whispered among the crews that he had ended his troubles by poison.[2]

At six o'clock in the afternoon of the same day D'Estournel, the vice-admiral, with such ships as remained with him, entered the harbor and learned what had happened. He saw with dismay that he was doomed to bear the burden of command over a ruined enterprise and a shattered fleet. The long voyage had consumed the provisions, and in

[1] *Journal historique du Voyage.*

[2] *Declaration of H Kannan and D. Deas*, 23 *Oct.* 1746. *Deposition of Joseph Foster*, 24 *Oct.* 1746, *sworn to before Jacob Wendell, J. P.* These were prisoners in the ships at Chibucto.

some of the ships the crews were starving. The pestilence grew worse, and men were dying in numbers every day. On the 28th, D'Anville was buried without ceremony on a small island in the harbor. The officers met in council, and the papers of the dead commander were examined. Among them was a letter from the King in which he urged the recapture of Louisbourg as the first object of the expedition; but this was thought impracticable, and the council resolved to turn against Annapolis all the force that was left. It is said that D'Estournel opposed the attempt, insisting that it was hopeless, and that there was no alternative but to return to France. The debate was long and hot, and the decision was against him.[1] The council dissolved, and he was seen to enter his cabin in evident distress and agitation. An unusual sound was presently heard, followed by groans. His door was fastened by two bolts, put on the evening before by his order. It was burst open, and the unfortunate commander was found lying in a pool of blood, transfixed with his own sword. Enraged and mortified, he had thrown himself upon it in a fit of desperation. The surgeon drew out the blade, but it was only on the urgent persuasion of two Jesuits that the dying man would permit the wound to be dressed. He then ordered all the captains to the side of his berth, and said, "Gentlemen, I beg pardon of

[1] This is said by all the writers except the author of the *Journal historique*, who merely states that the council decided to attack Annapolis, and to detach some soldiers to the aid of Quebec. This last vote was reconsidered.

God and the King for what I have done, and I protest to the King that my only object was to prevent my enemies from saying that I had not executed his orders;" and he named M. de la Jonquière to command in his place. In fact, La Jonquière's rank entitled him to do so. He was afterwards well known as governor of Canada, and was reputed a brave and able sea-officer.

La Jonquière remained at Chibucto till late in October. Messengers were sent to the Acadian settlements to ask for provisions, of which there was desperate need: and as payment was promised in good metal, and not in paper, the Acadians brought in a considerable supply. The men were encamped on shore, yet the pestilence continued its ravages. Two English prisoners were told that between twenty-three and twenty-four hundred men had been buried by sea or land since the fleet left France; and another declares that eleven hundred and thirty-five burials took place while he was at Chibucto.[1] The survivors used the clothing of the dead as gifts to the neighboring Indians, who in consequence were attacked with such virulence by the disease that of the band at Cape Sable three fourths are said to have perished. The English, meanwhile, learned something of the condition of their enemies. Towards the end of September Captain Sylvanus Cobb, in a sloop from Boston, boldly entered Chibucto Harbor, took note of the ships lying there, and though pursued, ran out to sea and carried

[1] *Declaration of Kannan and Deas. Deposition of Joseph Foster.*

the results of his observations to Louisbourg.[1] A more thorough reconnoissance was afterwards made by a vessel from Louisbourg bringing French prisoners for exchange under a flag of truce; and it soon became evident that the British colonies had now nothing to fear.

La Jonquière still clung to the hope of a successful stroke at Annapolis, till in October an Acadian brought him the report that the garrison of that place had received a reinforcement of twelve hundred men. The reinforcement consisted in reality of three small companies of militia sent from Boston by Shirley. La Jonquière called a secret council, and the result seems to have been adverse to any further attempt. The journalist reports that only a thousand men were left in fighting condition, and that even of these some were dying every day.

La Jonquière, however, would not yet despair. The troops were re-embarked; five hospital ships were devoted to the sick; the "Parfait," a fifty-gun ship no longer serviceable, was burned, as were several smaller vessels, and on the 4th of October what was left of the fleet sailed out of Chibucto Harbor and steered for Annapolis, piloted by Acadians. The flag of truce from Louisbourg was compelled for a time to bear them company, and Joseph Foster of Beverly, an exchanged prisoner on board of her, deposed that as the fleet held its way, he saw "a great number of dead persons" dropped into the sea every day. Ill-

[1] *Report of Captain Cobb*, in *Shirley to Newcastle*, 13 *Oct.* 1746.

luck still pursued the French. A storm off Cape Sable dispersed the ships, two of which some days later made their way to Annapolis Basin in expectation of finding some of their companions there. They found instead the British fifty-gun ship "Chester" and the Massachusetts frigate "Shirley" anchored before the fort, on which the two Frenchmen retired as they had come; and so ended the last aggressive movement on the part of the great armament.

The journalist reports that on the night of the 27th there was a council of officers on board the "Northumberland," at which it was resolved that no choice was left but to return to France with the ships that still kept together. On the 4th of November there was another storm, and when it subsided, the "Prince d'Orange" found herself with but nine companions, all of which were transports. These had on board eleven companies of soldiers, of whom their senior officer reports that only ninety-one were in health. The pestilence made such ravages among the crews that four or five corpses were thrown into the sea every day, and there was fear that the vessels would be left helpless in mid-ocean for want of sailors to work them.[1] At last, on the 7th of December, after narrowly escaping an English squadron, they reached Port Louis in Brittany, where several ships of the fleet had arrived before them. Among these was the frigate "La Palme." "Yesterday," says the journalist, "I supped with M. Destra-

[1] *Journal historique.*

houdal, who commands this frigate; and he told me things which from anybody else would have been incredible. This is his story, exactly as I had it from him." And he goes on to the following effect.

After the storm of the 14th of September, provisions being almost spent, it was thought that there was no hope for "La Palme" and her crew but in giving up the enterprise and making all sail at once for home, since France now had no port of refuge on the western continent nearer than Quebec. Rations were reduced to three ounces of biscuit and three of salt meat a day; and after a time half of this pittance was cut off. There was diligent hunting for rats in the hold; and when this game failed, the crew, crazed with famine, demanded of their captain that five English prisoners who were on board should be butchered to appease the frenzy of their hunger. The captain consulted his officers, and they were of opinion that if he did not give his consent, the crew would work their will without it. The ship's butcher was accordingly ordered to bind one of the prisoners, carry him to the bottom of the hold, put him to death, and distribute his flesh to the men in portions of three ounces each. The captain, walking the deck in great agitation all night, found a pretext for deferring the deed till morning, when a watchman sent aloft at daylight cried, "A sail!" The providential stranger was a Portuguese ship; and as Portugal was neutral in the war, she let the frigate approach to within

hailing distance. The Portuguese captain soon came alongside in a boat, "accompanied," in the words of the narrator, "by five sheep." These were eagerly welcomed by the starving crew as agreeable substitutes for the five Englishmen; and being forthwith slaughtered, were parcelled out among the men, who would not wait till the flesh was cooked, but devoured it raw. Provisions enough were obtained from the Portuguese to keep the frigate's company alive till they reached Port Louis.[1]

There are no sufficient means of judging how far the disasters of D'Anville's fleet were due to a neglect of sanitary precautions or to deficient seamanship. Certain it is that there were many in self-righteous New England who would have held it impious to doubt that God had summoned the pestilence and the storm to fight the battles of his modern Israel.

Undaunted by disastrous failure, the French court equipped another fleet, not equal to that of D'Anville, yet still formidable, and placed it under La Jonquière, for the conquest of Acadia and Louisbourg. La Jonquière sailed from Rochelle on the 10th of May, 1747, and on the 14th was met by an English fleet stronger than his own and commanded by Admirals Anson and Warren. A fight ensued, in which, after brave resistance, the French were totally defeated. Six

[1] *Relation du Voyage de Retour de M. Destrahoudal après la Tempête du* 14 *Septembre*, in *Journal historique*.

ships-of-war, including the flag-ship, were captured, with a host of prisoners, among whom was La Jonquière himself.[1]

[1] *Relation du Combat rendu le* 14 *Mai* (new style), *par l'Escadre du Roy commandée par M. de la Jonquière*, in *Le Canada Français, Supplément de Documents inédits*, 33. *Newcastle to Shirley*, 30 *May*, 1747.

CHAPTER XXII.

1745–1747.

ACADIAN CONFLICTS.

Efforts of France. — Apathy of Newcastle. — Dilemma of Acadians. — Their Character. — Danger of the Province. — Plans of Shirley. — Acadian Priests. — Political Agitators. — Noble's Expedition. — Ramesay at Beaubassin. — Noble at Grand Pré. — A Winter March. — Defeat and Death of Noble. — Grand Pré re-occupied by the English. — Threats of Ramesay against the Acadians. — The British Ministry will not protect them.

Since the capture of Louisbourg, France had held constantly in view, as an object of prime importance, the recovery of her lost colony of Acadia. This was one of the chief aims of D'Anville's expedition, and of that of La Jonquière in the next year. And to make assurance still more sure, a large body of Canadians, under M. de Ramesay, had been sent to Acadia to co-operate with D'Anville's force; but the greater part of them had been recalled to aid in defending Quebec against the expected attack of the English. They returned when the news came that D'Anville was at Chibucto, and Ramesay, with a part of his command, advanced upon Port Royal, or Annapolis, in order to support the fleet in its promised attack on that place. He encamped at a little distance from the English fort, till he heard of the disasters

that had ruined the fleet,[1] and then fell back to Chignecto, on the neck of the Acadian peninsula, where he made his quarters, with a force which, including Micmac, Malecite, and Penobscot Indians, amounted, at one time, to about sixteen hundred men.

If France was bent on recovering Acadia, Shirley was no less resolved to keep it, if he could. In his belief, it was the key of the British American colonies, and again and again he urged the Duke of Newcastle to protect it. But Newcastle seems scarcely to have known where Acadia was, being ignorant of most things except the art of managing the House of Commons, and careless of all things that could not help his party and himself. Hence Shirley's hyperboles, though never without a basis of truth, were lost upon him. Once, it is true, he sent three hundred men to Annapolis; but one hundred and eighty of them died on the voyage, or lay helpless in Boston hospitals, and the rest could better have been spared, some being recruits from English jails, and others Irish Catholics, several of whom deserted to the French, with information of the state of the garrison.

The defence of Acadia was left to Shirley and his Assembly, who in time of need sent companies of militia and rangers to Annapolis, and thus on several occasions saved it from returning to France. Shirley was the most watchful and strenuous defender of British interests on the

[1] *Journal de Beaujeu*, in *Le Canada Français, Documents*, 53.

continent; and in the present crisis British and colonial interests were one. He held that if Acadia were lost, the peace and safety of all the other colonies would be in peril; and in spite of the immense efforts made by the French court to recover it, he felt that the chief danger of the province was not from without, but from within. "If a thousand French troops should land in Nova Scotia," he writes to Newcastle, "all the people would rise to join them, besides all the Indians."[1] So, too, thought the French officials in America. The Governor and Intendant of Canada wrote to the colonial minister: "The inhabitants, with few exceptions, wish to return under the French dominion, and will not hesitate to take up arms as soon as they see themselves free to do so; that is, as soon as we become masters of Port Royal, or they have powder and other munitions of war, and are backed by troops for their protection against the resentment of the English."[2] Up to this time, however, though they had aided Duvivier in his attack on Annapolis so far as was possible without seeming to do so, they had not openly taken arms, and their refusal to fight for the besiegers is one among several causes to which Mascarene ascribes the success of his defence. While the greater part remained attached to France, some leaned to the English, who bought their produce and paid them in ready coin. Money was rare with the Acadians, who

[1] *Shirley to Newcastle*, 29 *Oct.* 1745.
[2] *Beauharnois et Hocquart au Ministre*, 12 *Sept.* 1745.

loved it, and were so addicted to hoarding it that the French authorities were led to speculate as to what might be the object of these careful savings.[1]

Though the Acadians loved France, they were not always ready to sacrifice their interests to her. They would not supply Ramesay's force with provisions in exchange for his promissory notes, but demanded hard cash.[2] This he had not to give, and was near being compelled to abandon his position in consequence. At the same time, in consideration of specie payment, the inhabitants brought in fuel for the English garrison at Louisbourg, and worked at repairing the rotten *chevaux de frise* of Annapolis.[3]

Mascarene, commandant at that place, being of French descent, was disposed at first to sympathize with the Acadians and treat them with a lenity that to the members of his council seemed neither fitting nor prudent. He wrote to Shirley: "The French inhabitants are certainly in a very perilous situation, those who pretend to be their friends and old masters having let loose a parcel of banditti to plunder them; whilst, on the other hand, they see themselves threatened with ruin if they fail in their allegiance to the British Government."[4]

This unhappy people were in fact between

[1] *Beauharnois et Hocquart au Ministre*, 12 *Sept.* 1745.

[2] *Ibid.*

[3] *Admiral Knowles à* —— 1746. Mascarene in *Le Canada Français, Documents*, 82.

[4] Mascarene, in *Le Canada Français, Documents*, 81.

two fires. France claimed them on one side, and England on the other, and each demanded their adhesion, without regard to their feelings or their welfare. The banditti of whom Mascarene speaks were the Micmac Indians, who were completely under the control of their missionary, Le Loutre, and were used by him to terrify the inhabitants into renouncing their English allegiance and actively supporting the French cause. By the Treaty of Utrecht France had transferred Acadia to Great Britain, and the inhabitants had afterwards taken an oath of fidelity to King George. Thus they were British subjects; but as their oath had been accompanied by a promise, or at least a clear understanding, that they should not be required to take arms against Frenchmen or Indians, they had become known as the "Neutral French." This name tended to perplex them, and in their ignorance and simplicity they hardly knew to which side they owed allegiance. Their illiteracy was extreme. Few of them could sign their names, and a contemporary well acquainted with them declares that he knew but a single Acadian who could read and write.[1] This was probably the notary, Le Blanc, whose compositions are crude and illiterate. Ignorant of books and isolated in a wild and remote corner of the world, the Acadians knew nothing of affairs, and were totally incompetent to meet the crisis that was soon to come upon them. In activity

[1] Moïse des Derniers, in *Le Canada Français*, I. 118.

and enterprise they were far behind the Canadians, who looked on them as inferiors. Their pleasures were those of the humblest and simplest peasants; they were contented with their lot, and asked only to be let alone. Their intercourse was unceremonious to such a point that they never addressed each other, or, it is said, even strangers, as *monsieur*. They had the social equality which can exist only in the humblest conditions of society, and presented the phenomenon of a primitive little democracy, hatched under the wing of an absolute monarchy. Each was as good as his neighbor; they had no natural leaders, nor any to advise or guide them, except the missionary priest, who in every case was expected by his superiors to influence them in the interest of France, and who, in fact, constantly did so. While one observer represents them as living in a state of primeval innocence, another describes both men and women as extremely foul of speech; from which he draws inferences unfavorable to their domestic morals,[1] which, nevertheless, were commendable. As is usual with a well-fed and unambitious peasantry, they were very prolific, and are said to have doubled their number every sixteen years. In 1748 they counted in the peninsula of Nova Scotia between twelve and thirteen thousand souls.[2] The English rule had been of the lightest, — so light that it could scarcely be felt;

[1] *Journal de Franquet*, Part II.

[2] *Description de l'Acadie, avec le Nom des Paroisses et le Nombre des Habitants*, 1748.

and this was not surprising, since the only instruments for enforcing it over a population wholly French were some two hundred disorderly soldiers in the crumbling little fort of Annapolis; and the province was left, perforce, to take care of itself.

The appearance of D'Anville's fleet caused great excitement among the Acadians, who thought that they were about to pass again under the Crown of France. Fifty of them went on board the French ships at Chibucto to pilot them to the attack of Annapolis, and to their dismay found that no attack was to be made. When Ramesay, with his Canadians and Indians, took post at Chignecto and built a fort at Baye Verte, on the neck of the peninsula of Nova Scotia, the English power in that part of the colony seemed at an end. The inhabitants cut off all communication with Annapolis, and detained the officers whom Mascarene sent for intelligence.

From the first outbreak of the war it was evident that the French built their hopes of recovering Acadia largely on a rising of the Acadians against the English rule, and that they spared no efforts to excite such a rising. Early in 1745 a violent and cruel precaution against this danger was suggested. William Shirreff, provincial secretary, gave it as his opinion that the Acadians ought to be removed, being a standing menace to the colony.[1] This is the first proposal of such a

[1] *Shirreff to K. Gould, agent of Phillips's Regiment, March,* 1745

nature that I find. Some months later, Shirley writes that, on a false report of the capture of Annapolis by the French, the Acadians sang *Te Deum*, and that every sign indicates that there will be an attempt in the spring to capture Annapolis, with their help.[1] Again, Shirley informs Newcastle that the French will get possession of Acadia unless the most dangerous of the inhabitants are removed, and English settlers put in their place.[2] He adds that there are not two hundred and twenty soldiers at Annapolis to defend the province against the whole body of Acadians and Indians, and he tells the minister that unless the expedition against Canada should end in the conquest of that country, the removal of some of the Acadians will be a necessity. He means those of Chignecto, who were kept in a threatening attitude by the presence of Ramesay and his Canadians, and who, as he thinks, had forfeited their lands by treasonable conduct. Shirley believes that families from New England might be induced to take their place, and that these, if settled under suitable regulations, would form a military frontier to the province of Nova Scotia "strong enough to keep the Canadians out," and hold the Acadians to their allegiance.[3] The Duke of Bedford thinks the plan a good one, but objects to the expense.[4] Commodore Knowles,

[1] *Shirley to Newcastle*, 14 *Dec.* 1745.
[2] *Ibid.*, 10 *May*, 1746.
[3] *Ibid.*, 8 *July*, 1747.
[4] *Bedford to Newcastle*, 11 *Sept.* 1747.

then governor of Louisbourg, who, being threatened with consumption and convinced that the climate was killing him, vented his feelings in strictures against everything and everybody, was of opinion that the Acadians, having broken their neutrality, ought to be expelled at once, and expresses the amiable hope that should his Majesty adopt this plan, he will charge him with executing it.[1]

Shirley's energetic nature inclined him to trenchant measures, and he had nothing of modern humanitarianism; but he was not inhuman, and he shrank from the cruelty of forcing whole communities into exile. While Knowles and others called for wholesale expatriation, he still held that it was possible to turn the greater part of the Acadians into safe subjects of the British Crown;[2] and to this end he advised the planting of a fortified town where Halifax now stands, and securing by forts and garrisons the neck of the Acadian peninsula, where the population was most numerous and most disaffected. The garrisons, he thought, would not only impose respect, but would

[1] *Knowles to Newcastle*, 8 *Nov.* 1746.

[2] Shirley says that the indiscriminate removal of the Acadians would be "unjust" and "too rigorous." Knowles had proposed to put Catholic Jacobites from the Scotch Highlands into their place. Shirley thinks this inexpedient, but believes that Protestants from Germany and Ulster might safely be trusted. The best plan of all, in his opinion, is that of "treating the Acadians as subjects, confining their punishment to the most guilty and dangerous among 'em, and keeping the rest in the country and endeavoring to make them useful members of society under his Majesty's Government." *Shirley to Newcastle*, 21 *Nov.* 1746. If the Newcastle Government had vigorously carried his recommendations into effect, the removal of the Acadians in 1755 would not have taken place.

furnish the Acadians with what they wanted most, — ready markets for their produce, — and thus bind them to the British by strong ties of interest. Newcastle thought the plan good, but wrote that its execution must be deferred to a future day. Three years later it was partly carried into effect by the foundation of Halifax; but at that time the disaffection of the Acadians had so increased, and the hope of regaining the province for France had risen so high, that this partial and tardy assertion of British authority only spurred the French agents to redoubled efforts to draw the inhabitants from the allegiance they had sworn to the Crown of England.

Shirley had also other plans in view for turning the Acadians into good British subjects. He proposed, as a measure of prime necessity, to exclude French priests from the province. The free exercise of their religion had been insured to the inhabitants by the Treaty of Utrecht, and on this point the English authorities had given no just cause of complaint. A priest had occasionally been warned, suspended, or removed; but without a single exception, so far as appears, this was in consequence of conduct which tended to excite disaffection, and which would have incurred equal or greater penalties in the case of a layman.[1] The sentence was directed, not against the priest,

[1] There was afterwards sharp correspondence between Shirley and the Governor of Canada touching the Acadian priests. Thus, Shirley writes: "I can't avoid now, Sir, expressing great surprise at the other parts of your letter, whereby you take upon you to call Mr. Mascarene to account for expelling the missionary from Minas for being guilty of such treason-

but against the political agitator. Shirley's plan of excluding French priests from the province would not have violated the provisions of the treaty, provided that the inhabitants were supplied with other priests, not French subjects, and therefore not politically dangerous; but though such a measure was several times proposed by the provincial authorities, the exasperating apathy of the Newcastle Government gave no hope that it could be accomplished.

The influences most dangerous to British rule did not proceed from love of France or sympathy of race, but from the power of religion over a simple and ignorant people, trained in profound love and awe of their Church and its ministers, who were used by the representatives of Louis XV. as agents to alienate the Acadians from England.

The most strenuous of these clerical agitators was Abbé Le Loutre, missionary to the Micmacs, and after 1753 vicar-general of Acadia. He was a fiery and enterprising zealot, inclined by temperament to methods of violence, detesting the English, and restrained neither by pity nor scruple from using threats of damnation and the Micmac tomahawk to frighten the Acadians into

able practices within His Majesty's government as merited a much severer Punishment." *Shirley à Galissonière*, 9 *Mai*, 1749.

Shirley writes to Newcastle that the Acadians "are greatly under the influence of their priests, who continually receive their directions from the Bishop of Quebec, and are the instruments by which the Governor of Canada makes all his attempts for the reduction of the province to the French Crown." *Shirley to Newcastle*, 20 *Oct.* 1747. He proceeds to give facts in proof of his assertion. Compare *Montcalm and Wolfe*, I. 106, 107, 266, *note*.

doing his bidding. The worst charge against him, that of exciting the Indians of his mission to murder Captain Howe, an English officer, has not been proved; but it would not have been brought against him by his own countrymen if his character and past conduct had gained him their esteem.

The other Acadian priests were far from sharing Le Loutre's violence; but their influence was always directed to alienating the inhabitants from their allegiance to King George. Hence Shirley regarded the conversion of the Acadians to Protestantism as a political measure of the first importance, and proposed the establishment of schools in the province to that end. Thus far his recommendations are perfectly legitimate; but when he adds that rewards ought to be given to Acadians who renounce their faith, few will venture to defend him.

Newcastle would trouble himself with none of his schemes, and Acadia was left to drift with the tide, as before. "I shall finish my troubleing your Grace upon the affairs of Nova Scotia with this letter," writes the persevering Shirley. And he proceeds to ask, "as a proper Scheme for better securing the Subjection of the French inhabitants and Indians there," that the Governor and Council at Annapolis have special authority and direction from the King to arrest and examine such Acadians as shall be "most obnoxious and dangerous to his Majesty's Government;" and if found guilty of treasonable correspondence with

the enemy, to dispose of them and their estates in such manner as his Majesty shall order, at the same time promising indemnity to the rest for past offences, upon their taking or renewing the oath of allegiance.[1]

To this it does not appear that Newcastle made any answer except to direct Shirley, eight or nine months later, to tell the Acadians that so long as they were peaceable subjects, they should be protected in property and religion.[2] Thus left to struggle unaided with a most difficult problem, entirely outside of his functions as governor of Massachusetts, Shirley did what he could. The most pressing danger, as he thought, rose from the presence of Ramesay and his Canadians at Chignecto; for that officer spared no pains to induce the Acadians to join him in another attempt against Annapolis, telling them that if they did not drive out the English, the English would drive them out. He was now at Mines, trying to raise the inhabitants in arms for France. Shirley thought it necessary to counteract him, and force him and his Canadians back to the isthmus whence they had come; but as the ministry would give no soldiers, he was compelled to draw them from New England. The defence of Acadia was the business of the Home Government, and not of

[1] *Shirley to Newcastle*, 15 *Aug.* 1746.

[2] *Newcastle to Shirley*, 30 *May*, 1747. Shirley had some time before directed Mascarene to tell the Acadians that while they behave peaceably and do not correspond with the enemy, their property will be safe, but that such as turn traitors will be treated accordingly. *Shirley to Mascarene*, 16 *Sept.* 1746.

the colonies; but as they were deeply interested in the preservation of the endangered province, Massachusetts gave five hundred men in response to Shirley's call, and Rhode Island and New Hampshire added, between them, as many more. Less than half of these levies reached Acadia. It was the stormy season. The Rhode Island vessels were wrecked near Martha's Vineyard. A New Hampshire transport sloop was intercepted by a French armed vessel, and ran back to Portsmouth. Four hundred and seventy men from Massachusetts, under Colonel Arthur Noble, were all who reached Annapolis, whence they sailed for Mines, accompanied by a few soldiers of the garrison. Storms, drifting ice, and the furious tides of the Bay of Fundy made their progress so difficult and uncertain that Noble resolved to finish the journey by land; and on the 4th of December he disembarked near the place now called French Cross, at the foot of the North Mountain, — a lofty barrier of rock and forest extending along the southern shore of the Bay of Fundy. Without a path and without guides, the party climbed the snow-encumbered heights and toiled towards their destination, each man carrying provisions for fourteen days in his haversack. After sleeping eight nights without shelter among the snowdrifts, they reached the Acadian village of Grand Pré, the chief settlement of the district of Mines. Ramesay and his Canadians were gone. On learning the approach of an English force, he had tried to persuade the Acadians that they were to be

driven from their homes, and that their only hope was in joining with him to meet force by force; but they trusted Shirley's recent assurance of protection, and replied that they would not break their oath of fidelity to King George. On this, Ramesay retreated to his old station at Chignecto, and Noble and his men occupied Grand Pré without opposition.

The village consisted of small, low wooden houses, scattered at intervals for the distance of a mile and a half, and therefore ill fitted for defence. The English had the frame of a blockhouse, or, as some say, of two blockhouses, ready to be set up on their arrival; but as the ground was hard frozen it was difficult to make a foundation, and the frames were therefore stored in outbuildings of the village, with the intention of raising them in the spring. The vessels which had brought them, together with stores, ammunition, five small cannon, and a good supply of snow-shoes, had just arrived at the landing-place, — and here, with incredible fatuity, were allowed to remain, with most of their indispensable contents still on board. The men, meanwhile, were quartered in the Acadian houses.

Noble's position was critical, but he was assured that he could not be reached from Chignecto in such a bitter season; and this he was too ready to believe, though he himself had just made a march, which, if not so long, was quite as arduous. Yet he did not neglect every precaution, but kept out scouting-parties to range the surrounding coun-

try, while the rest of his men took their ease in the Acadian houses, living on the provisions of the villagers, for which payment was afterwards made. Some of the inhabitants, who had openly favored Ramesay and his followers, fled to the woods, in fear of the consequences; but the greater part remained quietly in the village.

At the head of the Bay of Fundy its waters form a fork, consisting of Chignecto Bay on the one hand, and Mines Basin on the other. At the head of Chignecto Bay was the Acadian settlement of Chignecto, or Beaubassin, in the houses of which Ramesay had quartered his Canadians. Here the neck of the Acadian peninsula is at its narrowest, the distance across to Baye Verte, where Ramesay had built a fort, being little more than twelve miles. Thus he controlled the isthmus, — from which, however, Noble hoped to dislodge him in the spring.

In the afternoon of the 8th of January an Acadian who had been sent to Mines by the missionary Germain, came to Beaubassin with the news that two hundred and twenty English were at Grand Pré, and that more were expected.[1] Ramesay instantly formed a plan of extraordinary hardihood, and resolved, by a rapid march and a night attack, to surprise the new-comers. His party was greatly reduced by disease, and to recruit it he wrote to La Corne, Récollet missionary at Miramichi, to join him with his Indians; writing at the same time

[1] Beaujeu, *Journal de la Campagne du Détachement de Canada à l'Acadie*, in *Le Canada Français*, II. *Documents*, 16.

to Maillard, former colleague of Le Loutre at the mission of Shubenacadie, and to Girard, priest of Cobequid, to muster Indians, collect provisions, and gather information concerning the English. Meanwhile his Canadians busied themselves with making snow-shoes and dog-sledges for the march.

Ramesay could not command the expedition in person, as an accident to one of his knees had disabled him from marching. This was less to be regretted, in view of the quality of his officers, for he had with him the flower of the warlike Canadian *noblesse*, — Coulon de Villiers, who, seven years later, defeated Washington at Fort Necessity; Beaujeu, the future hero of the Monongahela, in appearance a carpet knight, in reality a bold and determined warrior; the Chevalier de la Corne, a model of bodily and mental hardihood; Saint-Pierre, Lanaudière, Saint-Ours, Desligneris, Courtemanche, Repentigny, Boishébert, Gaspé, Colombière, Marin, Lusignan, — all adepts in the warfare of surprise and sudden onslaught in which the Canadians excelled.

Coulon de Villiers commanded in Ramesay's place; and on the 21st of January he and the other officers led their men across the isthmus from Beaubassin to Baye Verte, where they all encamped in the woods, and where they were joined by a party of Indians and some Acadians from Beaubassin and Isle St. Jean.[1] Provisions, ammunition, and other requisites were distributed, and at noon of the 23d they broke up their

[1] *Mascarene to Shirley*, 8 *Feb.* 1746 (1747, new style).

camp, marched three leagues, and bivouacked towards evening. On the next morning they marched again at daybreak. There was sharp cold, with a storm of snow, — not the large, moist, lazy flakes that fall peacefully and harmlessly, but those small crystalline particles that drive spitefully before the wind, and prick the cheek like needles. It was the kind of snow-storm called in Canada *la poudrerie*. They had hoped to make a long day's march; but feet and faces were freezing, and they were forced to stop, at noon, under such shelter as the thick woods of pine, spruce, and fir could supply. In the morning they marched again, following the border of the sea, their dog-teams dragging provisions and baggage over the broken ice of creeks and inlets, which they sometimes avoided by hewing paths through the forest. After a day of extreme fatigue they stopped at the small bay where the town of Wallace now stands. Beaujeu says: "While we were digging out the snow to make our huts, there came two Acadians with letters from MM. Maillard and Girard." The two priests sent a mixture of good and evil news. On one hand the English were more numerous than had been reported; on the other, they had not set up the blockhouses they had brought with them. Some Acadians of the neighboring settlement joined the party at this camp, as also did a few Indians.

On the next morning, January 27th, the adventurers stopped at the village of Tatmagouche,

where they were again joined by a number of Acadians. After mending their broken sledges they resumed their march, and at five in the afternoon reached a place called Bacouel, at the beginning of the portage that led some twenty-five miles across the country to Cobequid, now Truro, at the head of Mines Basin. Here they were met by Girard, priest of Cobequid, from whom Coulon exacted a promise to meet him again at that village in two days. Girard gave the promise unwillingly, fearing, says Beaujeu, to embroil himself with the English authorities. He reported that the force at Grand Pré counted at least four hundred and fifty, or, as some said, more than five hundred. This startling news ran through the camp; but the men were not daunted. "The more there are," they said, "the more we shall kill."

The party spent the 28th in mending their damaged sledges, and in the afternoon they were joined by more Acadians and Indians. Thus reinforced, they marched again, and towards evening reached a village on the outskirts of Cobequid. Here the missionary Maillard joined them, — to the great satisfaction of Coulon, who relied on him and his brother priest Girard to procure supplies of provisions. Maillard promised to go himself to Grand Pré with the Indians of his mission.

The party rested for a day, and set out again on the 1st of February, stopped at Maillard's house in Cobequid for the provisions he had collected for them, and then pushed on towards the river Shubenacadie, which runs from the south

into Cobequid Bay, the head of Mines Basin. When they reached the river they found it impassable from floating ice, which forced them to seek a passage at some distance above. Coulon was resolved, however, that at any risk a detachment should cross at once, to stop the roads to Grand Pré, and prevent the English from being warned of his approach; for though the Acadians inclined to the French, and were eager to serve them when the risk was not too great, there were some of them who, from interest or fear, were ready to make favor with the English by carrying them intelligence. Boishébert, with ten Canadians, put out from shore in a canoe, and were near perishing among the drifting ice; but they gained the farther shore at last, and guarded every path to Grand Pré. The main body filed on snow-shoes up the east bank of the Shubenacadie, where the forests were choked with snow and encumbered with fallen trees, over which the sledges were to be dragged, to their great detriment. On this day, the 3d, they made five leagues; on the next only two, which brought them within half a league of Le Loutre's Micmac mission. Not far from this place the river was easily passable on the ice, and they continued their march westward across the country to the river Kennetcook by ways so difficult that their Indian guide lost the path, and for a time led them astray. On the 7th, Boishébert and his party rejoined them, and brought a reinforcement of sixteen Indians, whom the Acadians had furnished with arms. Provisions

were failing, till on the 8th, as they approached the village of Pisiquid, now Windsor, the Acadians, with great zeal, brought them a supply. They told them, too, that the English at Grand Pré were perfectly secure, suspecting no danger.

On the 9th, in spite of a cold, dry storm of snow, they reached the west branch of the river Avon. It was but seven French leagues to Grand Pré, which they hoped to reach before night; but fatigue compelled them to rest till the 10th. At noon of that day, the storm still continuing, they marched again, though they could hardly see their way for the driving snow. They soon came to a small stream, along the frozen surface of which they drew up in order, and, by command of Coulon, Beaujeu divided them all into ten parties, for simultaneous attacks on as many houses occupied by the English. Then, marching slowly, lest they should arrive too soon, they reached the river Gaspereau, which enters Mines Basin at Grand Pré. They were now but half a league from their destination. Here they stopped an hour in the storm, shivering and half frozen, waiting for nightfall. When it grew dark they moved again, and soon came to a number of houses on the river-bank. Each of the ten parties took possession of one of these, making great fires to warm themselves and dry their guns.

It chanced that in the house where Coulon and his band sought shelter, a wedding-feast was going on. The guests were much startled at this sudden irruption of armed men; but to the Canadians

and their chief the festival was a stroke of amazing good luck, for most of the guests were inhabitants of Grand Pré, who knew perfectly the houses occupied by the English, and could tell with precision where the officers were quartered. This was a point of extreme importance. The English were distributed among twenty-four houses, scattered, as before mentioned, for the distance of a mile and a half.[1] The assailants were too few to attack all these houses at once; but if those where the chief officers lodged could be surprised and captured with their inmates, the rest could make little resistance. Hence it was that Coulon had divided his followers into ten parties, each with one or more chosen officers; these officers were now called together at the house of the interrupted festivity, and the late guests having given full information as to the position of the English quarters and the military quality of their inmates, a special object of attack was assigned to the officer of each party, with Acadian guides to conduct him to it. The principal party, consisting of fifty, or, as another account says, of seventy-five men, was led by Coulon himself, with Beaujeu, Desligneris, Mercier, Léry, and Lusignan as his officers. This party was to attack a stone house near the middle of the village, where the main guard was stationed, — a building somewhat larger than the rest, and the only one at all suited for defence. The second party, of forty

1 *Goldthwait to Shirley*, 2 *March*, 1746 (1747). Captain Benjamin Goldthwait was second in command of the English detachment.

men, commanded by La Corne, with Rigauville, Lagny, and Villemont, was to attack a neighboring house, the quarters of Colonel Noble, his brother, Ensign Noble, and several other officers. The remaining parties, of twenty-five men each according to Beaujeu, or twenty-eight according to La Corne, were to make a dash, as nearly as possible at the same time, at other houses which it was thought most important to secure. All had Acadian guides, whose services in that capacity were invaluable; though Beaujeu complains that they were of no use in the attack. He says that the united force was about three hundred men, while the English Captain Goldthwait puts it, including Acadians and Indians, at from five to six hundred. That of the English was a little above five hundred in all. Every arrangement being made, and his part assigned to each officer, the whole body was drawn up in the storm, and the chaplain pronounced a general absolution. Then each of the ten parties, guided by one or more Acadians, took the path for its destination, every man on snow-shoes, with the lock of his gun well sheltered under his capote.

The largest party, under Coulon, was, as we have seen, to attack the stone house in the middle of the village; but their guide went astray, and about three in the morning they approached a small wooden house not far from their true object. A guard was posted here, as at all the English quarters. The night was dark and the snow was still falling, as it had done without ceasing for the

past thirty hours. The English sentinel descried through the darkness and the storm what seemed the shadows of an advancing crowd of men. He cried, "Who goes there?" and then shouted, "To arms!" A door was flung open, and the guard appeared in the entrance. But at that moment the moving shadows vanished from before the eyes of the sentinel. The French, one and all, had thrown themselves flat in the soft, light snow, and nothing was to be seen or heard. The English thought it a false alarm, and the house was quiet again. Then Coulon and his men rose and dashed forward. Again, in a loud and startled voice, the sentinel shouted, "To arms!" A great light, as of a blazing fire, shone through the open doorway, and men were seen within in hurried movement. Coulon, who was in the front, said to Beaujeu, who was close at his side, that the house was not the one they were to attack. Beaujeu replied that it was no time to change, and Coulon dashed forward again. Beaujeu aimed at the sentinel and shot him dead. There was the flash and report of muskets from the house, and Coulon dropped in the snow, severely wounded. The young cadet, Lusignan, was hit in the shoulder; but he still pushed on, when a second shot shattered his thigh. "Friends," cried the gallant youth, as he fell by the side of his commander, "don't let two dead men discourage you." The Canadians, powdered from head to foot with snow, burst into the house. Within ten minutes, all resistance was overpowered. Of twenty-four

Englishmen, twenty-one were killed, and three made prisoners.[1]

Meanwhile, La Corne, with his party of forty men, had attacked the house where were quartered Colonel Noble and his brother, with Captain Howe and several other officers. Noble had lately transferred the main guard to the stone house, but had not yet removed thither himself, and the guard in the house which he occupied was small. The French burst the door with axes, and rushed in. Colonel Noble, startled from sleep, sprang from his bed, receiving two musket-balls in the body as he did so. He seems to have had pistols, for he returned the fire several times. His servant, who was in the house, testified that the French called to the Colonel through a window and promised him quarter if he would surrender; but that he refused, on which they fired again, and a bullet, striking his forehead, killed him instantly. His brother, Ensign Noble, was also shot down, fighting in his shirt. Lieutenants Pickering and Lechmere lay in bed dangerously ill, and were killed there. Lieutenant Jones, after, as the narrator says, "ridding himself of some of the enemy," tried to break through the rest and escape, but was run through the heart with a bayonet. Captain Howe was severely wounded and made prisoner.

Coulon and Lusignan, disabled by their wounds, were carried back to the houses on the Gaspereau, where the French surgeon had remained. Coulon's

[1] Beaujeu, *Journal.*

party, now commanded by Beaujeu, having met and joined the smaller party under Lotbinière, proceeded to the aid of others who might need their help; for while they heard a great noise of musketry from far and near, and could discern bodies of men in motion here and there, they could not see whether these were friends or foes, or discern which side fortune favored. They presently met the party of Marin, composed of twenty-five Indians, who had just been repulsed with loss from the house which they had attacked. By this time there was a gleam of daylight, and as they plodded wearily over the snow-drifts, they no longer groped in darkness. The two parties of Colombière and Boishébert soon joined them, with the agreeable news that each had captured a house; and the united force now proceeded to make a successful attack on two buildings where the English had stored the frames of their blockhouses. Here the assailants captured ten prisoners. It was now broad day, but they could not see through the falling snow whether the enterprise, as a whole, had prospered or failed. Therefore Beaujeu sent Marin to find La Corne, who, in the absence of Coulon, held the chief command. Marin was gone two hours. At length he returned, and reported that the English in the houses which had not been attacked, together with such others as had not been killed or captured, had drawn together at the stone house in the middle of the village, that La Corne was blockading them there, and that he ordered Beaujeu and his party to join him at once.

When Beaujeu reached the place he found La Corne posted at the house where Noble had been killed, and which was within easy musket-shot of the stone house occupied by the English, against whom a spattering fire was kept up by the French from the cover of neighboring buildings. Those in the stone house returned the fire; but no great harm was done on either side, till the English, now commanded by Captain Goldthwait, attempted to recapture the house where La Corne and his party were posted. Two companies made a sally; but they had among them only eighteen pairs of snow-shoes, the rest having been left on board the two vessels which had brought the stores of the detachment from Annapolis, and which now lay moored hard by, in the power of the enemy, at or near the mouth of the Gaspereau. Hence the sallying party floundered helpless among the drifts, plunging so deep in the dry snow that they could not use their guns and could scarcely move, while bullets showered upon them from La Corne's men in the house and others hovering about them on snow-shoes. The attempt was hopeless, and after some loss the two companies fell back. The firing continued, as before, till noon, or, according to Beaujeu, till three in the afternoon, when a French officer, carrying a flag of truce, came out of La Corne's house. The occasion of the overture was this.

Captain Howe, who, as before mentioned, had been badly wounded at the capture of this house, was still there, a prisoner, without surgical aid,

the French surgeon being at the houses on the Gaspereau, in charge of Coulon and other wounded men. "Though," says Beaujeu, "M. Howe was a firm man, he begged the Chevalier La Corne not to let him bleed to death for want of aid, but permit him to send for an English surgeon." To this La Corne, after consulting with his officers, consented, and Marin went to the English with a white flag and a note from Howe explaining the situation. The surgeon was sent, and Howe's wound was dressed, Marin remaining as a hostage. A suspension of arms took place till the surgeon's return; after which it was prolonged till nine o'clock of the next morning, at the instance, according to French accounts, of the English, and, according to English accounts, of the French. In either case, the truce was welcome to both sides. The English, who were in the stone house to the number of nearly three hundred and fifty, crowded to suffocation, had five small cannon, two of which were four-pounders, and three were swivels; but these were probably not in position, as it does not appear that any use was made of them. There was no ammunition except what the men had in their powder-horns and bullet-pouches, the main stock having been left, with other necessaries, on board the schooner and sloop now in the hands of the French. It was found, on examination, that they had ammunition for eight shots each, and provisions for one day. Water was only to be had by bringing it from a neighboring brook. As there were snow-shoes for only about one man

in twenty, sorties were out of the question; and the house was commanded by high ground on three sides.

Though their number was still considerable, their position was growing desperate. Thus it happened that when the truce expired, Goldthwait, the English commander, with another officer, who seems to have been Captain Preble, came with a white flag to the house where La Corne was posted, and proposed terms of capitulation, Howe, who spoke French, acting as interpreter. La Corne made proposals on his side, and as neither party was anxious to continue the fray, they soon came to an understanding.

It was agreed that within forty-eight hours the English should march for Annapolis with the honors of war; that the prisoners taken by the French should remain in their hands; that the Indians, who had been the only plunderers, should keep the plunder they had taken; that the English sick and wounded should be left, till their recovery, at the neighboring settlement of Rivière-aux-Canards, protected by a French guard, and that the English engaged in the affair at Grand Pré should not bear arms during the next six months within the district about the head of the Bay of Fundy, including Chignecto, Grand Pré, and the neighboring settlements.

Captain Howe was released on parole, with the condition that he should send back in exchange one Lacroix, a French prisoner at Boston, — "which," says La Corne, "he faithfully did."

Thus ended one of the most gallant exploits in French-Canadian annals. As respects the losses on each side, the French and English accounts are irreconcilable; nor are the statements of either party consistent with themselves. Mascarene reports to Shirley that seventy English were killed, and above sixty captured; though he afterwards reduces these numbers, having, as he says, received farther information. On the French side he says that four officers and about forty men were killed, and that many wounded were carried off in carts during the fight. Beaujeu, on the other hand, sets the English loss at one hundred and thirty killed, fifteen wounded, and fifty captured; and the French loss at seven killed and fifteen wounded. As for the numbers engaged, the statements are scarcely less divergent. It seems clear, however, that when Coulon began his march from Baye Verte, his party consisted of about three hundred Canadians and Indians, without reckoning some Acadians who had joined him from Beaubassin and Isle St. Jean. Others joined him on the way to Grand Pré, counting a hundred and fifty according to Shirley, — which appears to be much too large an estimate. The English, by their own showing, numbered five hundred, or five hundred and twenty-five. Of eleven houses attacked, ten were surprised and carried, with the help of the darkness and storm and the skilful management of the assailants.

"No sooner was the capitulation signed," says Beaujeu, "than we became in appearance the best

of friends." La Corne directed military honors to be rendered to the remains of the brothers Noble; and in all points the Canadians, both officers and men, treated the English with kindness and courtesy. "The English commandant," again says Beaujeu, "invited us all to dine with him and his officers, so that we might have the pleasure of making acquaintance over a bowl of punch." The repast being served after such a fashion as circumstances permitted, victors and vanquished sat down together; when, says Beaujeu, "we received on the part of our hosts many compliments on our polite manners and our skill in making war." And the compliments were well deserved.

At eight o'clock on the morning of the 14th of February the English filed out of the stone house, and with arms shouldered, drums beating, and colors flying, marched between two ranks of the French, and took the road for Annapolis. The English sick and wounded were sent to the settlement of Rivière-aux-Canards, where, protected by a French guard and attended by an English surgeon, they were to remain till able to reach the British fort.

La Corne called a council of war, and in view of the scarcity of food and other reasons it was resolved to return to Beaubassin. Many of the French had fallen ill. Some of the sick and wounded were left at Grand Pré, others at Cobequid, and the Acadians were required to supply means of carrying the rest. Coulon's party left

Grand Pré on the 23d of February, and on the 8th of March reached Beaubassin.[1]

Ramesay did not fail to use the success at Grand Pré to influence the minds of the Acadians. He sent a circular letter to the inhabitants of the various districts, and especially to those of Mines, in which he told them that their country had been reconquered by the arms of the King of France, to whom he commanded them to be faithful subjects, holding no intercourse with the English under any pretence whatever, on pain of the severest punishment. "If," he concludes, "we have withdrawn our soldiers from among you, it is for reasons known to us alone, and with a view to your advantage."[2]

Unfortunately for the effect of this message,

[1] The dates are of the new style, which the French had adopted, while the English still clung to the old style.

By far the best account of this French victory at Mines is that of Beaujeu, in his *Journal de la Campagne du Détachement de Canada à l'Acadie et aux Mines en* 1746–47. It is preserved in the Archives de la Marine et des Colonies, and is printed in the documentary supplement of *Le Canada Français*, Vol. II. It supplies the means of correcting many errors and much confusion in some recent accounts of the affair. The report of Chevalier de la Corne, also printed in *Le Canada Français*, though much shorter, is necessary to a clear understanding of the matter. Letters of Lusignan fils to the minister Maurepas, 10 Oct. 1747, of Bishop Pontbriand (to Maurepas ?), 10 July, 1747, and of Lusignan père to Maurepas, 10 Oct. 1747, give some additional incidents. The principal document on the English side is the report of Captain Benjamin Goldthwait, who succeeded Noble in command. A copy of the original, in the Public Record Office, is before me. The substance of it is correctly given in *The Boston Post Boy* of 2 March, 1747, and in *N. E. Hist. Gen. Reg.*, X. 108. Various letters from Mascarene and Shirley (Public Record Office) contain accounts derived from returned officers and soldiers. The *Notice of Colonel Arthur Noble*, by William Goold (*Collections Maine Historical Soc.*, 1881), may also be consulted.

[2] *Ramesay aux Députés et Habitants des Mines*, 31 *Mars*, 1747. At the end is written "A true copy, with the misspellings: signed W. Shirley."

Shirley had no sooner heard of the disaster at Grand Pré than he sent a body of Massachusetts soldiers to reoccupy the place.[1] This they did in April. The Acadians thus found themselves, as usual, between two dangers; and unable to see which horn of the dilemma was the worse, they tried to avoid both by conciliating French and English alike, and assuring each of their devoted attachment. They sent a pathetic letter to Ramesay, telling him that their hearts were always French, and begging him at the same time to remember that they were a poor, helpless people, burdened with large families, and in danger of expulsion and ruin if they offended their masters, the English.[2] They wrote at the same time to Mascarene at Annapolis, sending him, to explain the situation, a copy of Ramesay's threatening letter to them;[3] begging him to consider that they could not without danger dispense with answering it; at the same time they protested their entire fidelity to King George.[4]

[1] *Shirley to Newcastle*, 24 *Aug.* 1747.

[2] "Ainsis Monsieur nous vous prions de regarder notre bon Coeur et en meme Temps notre Impuissance pauvre Peuple chargez la plus part de familles nombreuse point de Recours sil falois evacuer a quoy nous sommes menacez tous les jours qui nous tien dans une Crainte perpetuelle en nous voyant a la proximitet de nos maitre depuis un sy grand nombre dannes" (printed *literatim*). *Deputés des Mines à Ramesay*, 24 *Mai*, 1747.

[3] This probably explains the bad spelling of the letter, the copy before me having been made from the Acadian transcript sent to Mascarene, and now in the Public Record Office.

[4] *Les Habitants a l'honorable gouverneur au for d'anapolisse royal* [sic], *Mai* (?), 1747.

On the 27th of June the inhabitants of Cobequid wrote again to Mascarene: "Monsieur nous prenons la Liberte de vous recrire celle icy pour vous assurer de nos tres humble Respect et d'un entiere Sou-mission a vos Ordres" (*literatim*).

Ramesay, not satisfied with the results of his first letter, wrote again to the Acadians, ordering them, in the name of the Governor-General of New France, to take up arms against the English, and enclosing for their instruction an extract from a letter of the French Governor. "These," says Ramesay, "are his words: 'We consider ourself as master of Beaubassin and Mines, since we have driven off the English. Therefore there is no difficulty in forcing the Acadians to take arms for us; to which end we declare to them that they are discharged from the oath that they formerly took to the English, by which they are bound no longer, as has been decided by the authorities of Canada and Monseigneur our Bishop.'"[1]

"In view of the above," continues Ramesay, "we order all the inhabitants of Memeramcook to come to this place [Beaubassin] as soon as they see the signal-fires lighted, or discover the approach of the enemy; and this on pain of death, confiscation of all their goods, burning of their houses, and the punishment due to rebels against the King."[2]

[1] "Nous nous regardons aujourdhuy Maistre de Beaubassin et des Mines puisque nous en avons Chassé les Anglois; ainsi il ny a aucune difficulté de forcer les Accadiens à prendre les armes pour nous, et de les y Contraindre; leur declarons à cet effêt qu'ils sont dechargé [*sic*] du Serment preté, cy devant, à l'Anglois, auquel ils ne sont plus obligé [*sic*] comme il y a été decidé par nos puissances de Canada et de Monseigneur notre Evesque" (*literatim*).

[2] *Ramesay aux Habitants de Chignecto, etc.*, 25 *Mai*, 1747.

A few months later, the deputies of Rivière-aux-Canards wrote to Shirley, thanking him for kindness which they said was undeserved, promising to do their duty thenceforth, but begging him to excuse them from giving up persons who had acted "contraire aux Interests de leur

The position of the Acadians was deplorable. By the Treaty of Utrecht, France had transferred them to the British Crown; yet French officers denounced them as rebels and threatened them with death if they did not fight at their bidding against England; and English officers threatened them with expulsion from the country if they broke their oath of allegiance to King George. It was the duty of the British ministry to occupy the province with a force sufficient to protect the inhabitants against French terrorism, and leave no doubt that the King of England was master of Acadia in fact as well as in name. This alone could have averted the danger of Acadian revolt, and the harsh measures to which it afterwards gave rise. The ministry sent no aid, but left to Shirley and Massachusetts the task of keeping the province for King George. Shirley and Massachusetts did what they could; but they could not do all that the emergency demanded.

Shirley courageously spoke his mind to the ministry, on whose favor he was dependent. "The fluctuating state of the inhabitants of Acadia," he wrote to Newcastle, "seems, my lord, naturally to arise from their finding a want of due protection from his Majesty's Government." [1]

devoire," representing the difficulty of their position, and protesting "une Soumission parfaite et en touts Respects." The letter is signed by four deputies, of whom one writes his name, and three sign with crosses.

[1] *Shirley to Newcastle*, 29 *April*, 1747.

On Shirley's relations with the Acadians, *see* Appendix C.

CHAPTER XXIII.

1740–1747.

WAR AND POLITICS.

GOVERNOR AND ASSEMBLY. — SARATOGA DESTROYED. — WILLIAM JOHNSON. — BORDER RAVAGES. — UPPER ASHUELOT. — FRENCH "MILITARY MOVEMENTS." — NUMBER FOUR. — NIVERVILLE'S ATTACK. — PHINEAS STEVENS. — THE FRENCH REPULSED.

FROM the East we turn to the West, for the province of New York passed for the West at that day. Here a vital question was what would be the attitude of the Five Nations of the Iroquois towards the rival European colonies, their neighbors. The Treaty of Utrecht called them British subjects. What the word "subjects" meant, they themselves hardly knew. The English told them that it meant children; the French that it meant dogs and slaves. Events had tamed the fierce confederates; and now, though, like all savages, unstable as children, they leaned in their soberer moments to a position of neutrality between their European neighbors, watching with jealous eyes against the encroachments of both. The French would gladly have enlisted them and their tomahawks in the war; but seeing little hope of this, were generally content if they could prevent them from siding with the English, who on their part regarded

them as their Indians, and were satisfied with nothing less than active alliance.

When Shirley's plan for the invasion of Canada was afoot, Clinton, governor of New York, with much ado succeeded in convening the deputies of the confederacy at Albany, and by dint of speeches and presents induced them to sing the war-song and take up the hatchet for England. The Iroquois were disgusted when the scheme came to nought, their warlike ardor cooled, and they conceived a low opinion of English prowess.

The condition of New York as respects military efficiency was deplorable. She was divided against herself, and, as usual in such cases, party passion was stronger than the demands of war. The province was in the midst of one of those disputes with the representative of the Crown, which, in one degree or another, crippled or paralyzed the military activity of nearly all the British colonies. Twenty years or more earlier, when Massachusetts was at blows with the Indians on her borders, she suffered from the same disorders; but her Governor and Assembly were of one mind as to urging on the war, and quarrelled only on the questions in what way and under what command it should be waged. But in New York there was a strong party that opposed the war, being interested in the contraband trade long carried on with Canada. Clinton, the governor, had, too, an enemy in the person of the Chief Justice, James de Lancey, with whom he had had an after-dinner dispute, ending in a threat

on the part of De Lancey that he would make the Governor's seat uncomfortable. To marked abilities, better education, and more knowledge of the world than was often found in the provinces, ready wit, and conspicuous social position, the Chief Justice joined a restless ambition and the arts of a demagogue.

He made good his threat, headed the opposition to the Governor, and proved his most formidable antagonist. If either Clinton or Shirley had had the independent authority of a Canadian governor, the conduct of the war would have been widely different. Clinton was hampered at every turn. The Assembly held him at advantage; for it was they, and not the King, who paid his salary, and they could withhold or retrench it when he displeased them. The people sympathized with their representatives and backed them in opposition, — at least when not under the stress of imminent danger.

A body of provincials, in the pay of the King, had been mustered at Albany for the proposed Canada expedition; and after that plan was abandoned, Clinton wished to use them for protecting the northern frontier and capturing that standing menace to the province, Crown Point. The Assembly, bent on crossing him at any price, refused to provide for transporting supplies farther than Albany. As the furnishing of provisions and transportation depended on that body, they could stop the movement of troops and defeat the Governor's military plans at their pleas-

ure. In vain he told them, "If you deny me the necessary supplies, all my endeavors must become fruitless; I must wash my own hands, and leave at your doors the blood of the innocent people."[1]

He urged upon them the necessity of building forts on the two carrying-places between the Hudson and Lakes George and Champlain, thus blocking the path of war-parties from Canada. They would do nothing, insisting that the neighboring colonies, to whom the forts would also be useful, ought to help in building them; and when it was found that these colonies were ready to do their part, the Assembly still refused. Passionate opposition to the royal Governor seemed to blind them to the interests of the province. Nor was the fault all on their side; for the Governor, though he generally showed more self-control and moderation than could have been expected, sometimes lost temper and betrayed scorn for his opponents, many of whom were but the instruments of leaders urged by personal animosities and small but intense ambitions. They accused him of treating them with contempt, and of embezzling public money; while he retorted by charging them with encroaching on the royal prerogative and treating the representative of the King with indecency. Under such conditions an efficient conduct of the war was out of the question.

Once, when the frontier was seriously threatened, Clinton, as commander-in-chief, called out

[1] *Extract from the Governor's Message*, in Smith, *History of New York*, II. 124 (1830).

the militia to defend it; but they refused to obey, on the ground that no Act of the Assembly required them to do so.[1]

Clinton sent home bitter complaints to Newcastle and the Lords of Trade. "They [the Assembly] are selfish, jealous of the power of the Crown, and of such levelling principles that they are constantly attacking its prerogative. . . . I find that neither dissolutions nor fair means can produce from them such Effects as will tend to a publick good or their own preservation. They will neither act for themselves nor assist their neighbors. . . . Few but hirelings have a seat in the Assembly, who protract time for the sake of their wages, at a great expence to the Province, without contributing anything material for its welfare, credit, or safety." And he declares that unless Parliament takes them in hand he can do nothing for the service of the King or the good of the province.[2] for they want to usurp the whole administration, both civil and military.[3]

At Saratoga there was a small settlement of Dutch farmers, with a stockade fort for their protection. This was the farthest outpost of the colony, and the only defence of Albany in the direction of Canada. It was occupied by a sergeant, a corporal, and ten soldiers, who testified

[1] *Clinton to the Lords of Trade*, 10 *Nov.* 1747.

[2] *Clinton to the Lords of Trade*, 30 *Nov.* 1745.

[3] *Remarks on the Representation of the Assembly of New York, May*, 1747, in *N. Y. Col. Docs.*, VI. 365. On the disputes of the Governor and Assembly, see also Smith, *History of New York*, II. (1830), and Stone, *Life and Times of Sir William Johnson*, I. *N. Y. Colonial Documents*, VI., contains many papers on the subject, chiefly on the Governor's side.

before a court of inquiry that it was in such condition that in rainy weather neither they nor their ammunition could be kept dry. As neither the Assembly nor the merchants of Albany would make it tenable, the garrison was withdrawn before winter by order of the Governor.[1]

Scarcely was this done when five hundred French and Indians, under the partisan Marin, surprised the settlement in the night of the 28th of November, burned fort, houses, mills, and stables, killed thirty persons, and carried off about a hundred prisoners.[2] Albany was left uncovered, and the Assembly voted £150 in provincial currency to rebuild the ruined fort. A feeble palisade work was accordingly set up, but it was neglected like its predecessor. Colonel Peter Schuyler was stationed there with his regiment in 1747, but was forced to abandon his post for want of supplies. Clinton then directed Colonel Roberts, commanding at Albany, to examine the fort, and if he found it indefensible, to burn it, — which he did, much to the astonishment of a French war-party, who visited the place soon after, and found nothing but ashes.[3]

The burning of Saratoga, first by the French

[1] *Examinations at a Court of Inquiry at Albany*, 11 *Dec.* 1745, in *N. Y. Col. Docs.*, VI. 374.

[2] The best account of this affair is in the journal of a French officer in Schuyler, *Colonial New York*, II. 115. The dates, being in new style, differ by eleven days from those of the English accounts. The Dutch hamlet of Saratoga, surprised by Marin, was near the mouth of the Fish Kill, on the west side of the Hudson. There was also a small fort on the east side, a little below the mouth of the Batten Kill.

[3] Schuyler, *Colonial New York*, II. 121.

and then by its own masters, made a deep impression on the Five Nations, and a few years later they taunted their white neighbors with these shortcomings in no measured terms. "You burned your own fort at Seraghtoga and ran away from it, which was a shame and a scandal to you."[1] Uninitiated as they were in party politics and faction quarrels, they could see nothing in this and other military lapses but proof of a want of martial spirit, if not of cowardice. Hence the difficulty of gaining their active alliance against the French was redoubled. Fortunately for the province, the adverse influence was in some measure counteracted by the character and conduct of one man. Up to this time the French had far surpassed the rival nation in the possession of men ready and able to deal with the Indians and mould them to their will. Eminent among such was Joncaire, French emissary among the Senecas in western New York, who, with admirable skill, held back that powerful member of the Iroquois league from siding with the English. But now, among the Mohawks of eastern New York, Joncaire found his match in the person of William Johnson, a vigorous and intelligent young Irishman, nephew of Admiral Warren, and his agent in the management of his estates on the Mohawk. Johnson soon became intimate with his Indian neighbors, spoke their language, joined in their games and dances, sometimes borrowed their dress and their paint, and whooped, yelped, and stamped like one

[1] *Report of a Council with the Indians at Albany*, 28 *June*, 1754.

of themselves. A white man thus playing the Indian usually gains nothing in the esteem of those he imitates; but, as before in the case of the redoubtable Count Frontenac, Johnson's adoption of their ways increased their liking for him and did not diminish their respect. The Mohawks adopted him into their tribe and made him a war-chief. Clinton saw his value; and as the Albany commissioners hitherto charged with Indian affairs had proved wholly inefficient, he transferred their functions to Johnson; whence arose more heart-burnings. The favor of the Governor cost the new functionary the support of the Assembly, who refused the indispensable presents to the Indians, and thus vastly increased the difficulty of his task. Yet the Five Nations promised to take up the hatchet against the French, and their orator said, in a conference at Albany, "Should any French priests now dare to come among us, we know no use for them but to roast them."[1] Johnson's present difficulties, however, sprang more from Dutch and English traders than from French priests, and he begs that an Act may be passed against the selling of liquor to the Indians, "as it is impossible to do anything with them while there is such a plenty to be had all round the neighborhood, being forever drunk." And he complains especially of one Clement, who sells liquor within twenty yards of Johnson's house, and immediately gets from the Indians all the bounty

[1] *Answer of the Six [Five] Nations to His Excellency the Governor at Albany*, 23 *Aug.* 1746.

money they receive for scalps, "which leaves them as poor as ratts," and therefore refractory and unmanageable. Johnson says further: "There is another grand villain, George Clock, who lives by Conajoharie Castle, and robs the Indians of all their cloaths, etc." The chiefs complained, "upon which I wrote him twice to give over that custom of selling liquor to the Indians; the answer was he gave the bearer, I might hang myself."[1] Indian affairs, it will be seen, were no better regulated then than now.

Meanwhile the French Indians were ravaging the frontiers and burning farm-houses to within sight of Albany. The Assembly offered rewards for the scalps of the marauders, but were slow in sending money to pay them, — to the great discontent of the Mohawks, who, however, at Johnson's instigation, sent out various war-parties, two of which, accompanied by a few whites, made raids as far as the island of Montreal, and somewhat checked the incursions of the mission Indians by giving them work near home. The check was but momentary. Heathen Indians from the West joined the Canadian converts, and the frontiers of New York and New England, from the Mohawk to beyond the Kennebec, were stung through all their length by innumerable nocturnal surprises and petty attacks. The details of this murderous though ineffective partisan war would fill volumes, if they were worth recording. One or two examples will show the nature of all.

[1] *Johnson to Clinton, 7 May,* 1747.

In the valley of the little river Ashuelot, a New Hampshire affluent of the Connecticut, was a rude border-settlement which later years transformed into a town noted in rural New England for kindly hospitality, culture without pretence, and good-breeding without conventionality.[1] In 1746 the place was in all the rawness and ugliness of a backwoods hamlet. The rough fields, lately won from the virgin forest, showed here and there, among the stumps, a few log-cabins, roofed with slabs of pine, spruce, or hemlock. Near by was a wooden fort, made, no doubt, after the common frontier pattern, of a stockade fence ten or twelve feet high, enclosing cabins to shelter the settlers in case of alarm, and furnished at the corners with what were called flankers, which were boxes of thick plank large enough to hold two or more men, raised above the ground on posts, and pierced with loopholes, so that each face of the stockade could be swept by a flank fire. One corner of this fort at Ashuelot was, however, guarded by a solid blockhouse, or, as it was commonly called, a "mount."

On the 23d of April a band of sixty, or, by another account, a hundred Indians, approached the settlement before daybreak, and hid in the neighboring thickets to cut off the men in the fort as they came out to their morning work. One of the men, Ephraim Dorman, chanced to

[1] Keene, originally called Upper Ashuelot. On the same stream, a few miles below, was a similar settlement, called Lower Ashuelot, — the germ of the present Swanzey. This, too, suffered greatly from Indian attacks.

go out earlier than the rest. The Indians did not fire on him, but, not to give an alarm, tried to capture or kill him without noise. Several of them suddenly showed themselves, on which he threw down his gun in pretended submission. One of them came up to him with hatchet raised; but the nimble and sturdy borderer suddenly struck him with his fist a blow in the head that knocked him flat, then snatched up his own gun, and, as some say, the blanket of the half-stunned savage also, sprang off, reached the fort unhurt, and gave the alarm. Some of the families of the place were living in the fort; but the bolder or more careless still remained in their farm-houses, and if nothing were done for their relief, their fate was sealed. Therefore the men sallied in a body, and a sharp fight ensued, giving the frightened settlers time to take refuge within the stockade. It was not too soon, for the work of havoc had already begun. Six houses and a barn were on fire, and twenty-three cattle had been killed. The Indians fought fiercely, killed John Bullard and captured Nathan Blake, but at last retreated; and after they were gone, the charred remains of several of them were found among the ruins of one of the burned cabins, where they had probably been thrown to prevent their being scalped.

Before Dorman had given the alarm, an old woman, Mrs. McKenney, went from the fort to milk her cow in a neighboring barn. As she was returning, with her full milk-pail, a naked Indian was seen to spring from a clump of bushes, plunge

a long knife into her back, and dart away without stopping to take the gray scalp of his victim. She tried feebly to reach the fort; but from age, corpulence, and a mortal wound she moved but slowly, and when a few steps from the gate, fell and died.

Ten days after, a party of Indians hid themselves at night by this same fort, and sent one of their number to gain admission under pretence of friendship, intending, no doubt, to rush in when the gate should be opened; but the man on guard detected the trick, and instead of opening the gate, fired through it, mortally wounding the Indian, on which his confederates made off. Again, at the same place, Deacon Josiah Foster, who had taken refuge in the fort, ventured out on a July morning to drive his cows to pasture. A gunshot was heard; and the men who went out to learn the cause, found the Deacon lying in the wood-road, dead and scalped. An ambushed Indian had killed him and vanished. Such petty attacks were without number.

There is a French paper, called a record of "military movements," which gives a list of war-parties sent from Montreal against the English border between the 29th of March, 1746, and the 21st of June in the same year. They number thirty-five distinct bands, nearly all composed of mission Indians living in or near the settled parts of Canada,— Abenakis, Iroquois of the Lake of Two Mountains and of Sault St. Louis (Caughnawaga), Algonkins of the Ottawa, and others, in parties

rarely of more than thirty, and often of no more than six, yet enough for waylaying travellers or killing women in kitchens or cow-sheds, and solitary laborers in the fields. This record is accompanied by a list of wild Western Indians who came down to Montreal in the summer of 1746 to share in these "military movements."[1]

No part of the country suffered more than the western borders of Massachusetts and New Hampshire, and here were seen too plainly the evils of the prevailing want of concert among the British colonies. Massachusetts claimed extensive tracts north of her present northern boundary, and in the belief that her claim would hold good, had built a small wooden fort, called Fort Dummer, on the Connecticut, for the protection of settlers. New Hampshire disputed the title, and the question, being referred to the Crown, was decided in her favor. On this, Massachusetts withdrew the garrison of Fort Dummer and left New Hampshire to defend her own. This the Assembly of that province refused to do, on the ground that the fort was fifty miles from any settlement made by New Hampshire people, and was therefore useless to them, though of great value to Massachusetts as a cover to Northfield and other of her settlements lower down the Connecticut, to protect[2] which was no business of New Hampshire.

[1] *Extrait sur les différents Mouvements Militaires qui se sont faits à Montréal à l'occasion de la Guerre*, 1745, 1746. There is a translation in *N. Y. Col. Docs.*

[2] *Journal of the Assembly of New Hampshire*, quoted in Saunderson, *History of Charlestown, N. H.*, 20.

But some years before, in 1740, three brothers, Samuel, David, and Stephen Farnsworth, natives of Groton, Massachusetts, had begun a new settlement on the Connecticut about forty-five miles north of the Massachusetts line and on ground which was soon to be assigned to New Hampshire. They were followed by five or six others. They acted on the belief that their settlement was within the jurisdiction of Massachusetts, and that she could and would protect them. The place was one of extreme exposure, not only from its isolation, far from help, but because it was on the banks of a wild and lonely river, the customary highway of war-parties on their descent from Canada. Number Four — for so the new settlement was called, because it was the fourth in a range of townships recently marked out along the Connecticut, but, with one or two exceptions, wholly unoccupied as yet — was a rude little outpost of civilization, buried in forests that spread unbroken to the banks of the St. Lawrence, while its nearest English neighbor was nearly thirty miles away. As may be supposed, it grew slowly, and in 1744 it had but nine or ten families. In the preceding year, when war seemed imminent, and it was clear that neither Massachusetts nor New Hampshire would lend a helping hand, the settlers of Number Four, seeing that their only resource was in themselves, called a meeting to consider the situation and determine what should be done. The meeting was held at the house, or log-cabin, of John Spafford, Jr., and being duly called to order, the

following resolutions were adopted: that a fort be built at the charge of the proprietors of the said township of Number Four; that John Hastings, John Spafford, and John Avery be a committee to direct the building; that each carpenter be allowed nine shillings, old tenor, a day, each laborer seven shillings, and each pair of oxen three shillings and sixpence; that the proprietors of the township be taxed in the sum of three hundred pounds, old tenor, for building the fort; that John Spafford, Phineas Stevens, and John Hastings be assessors to assess the same, and Samuel Farnsworth collector to collect it.[1] And to the end that their fort should be a good and creditable one, they are said to have engaged the services of John Stoddard, accounted the foremost man of western Massachusetts, Superintendent of Defence, Colonel of Militia, Judge of Probate, Chief Justice of the Court of Common Pleas, a reputed authority in the construction of backwoods fortifications, and the admired owner of the only gold watch in Northampton.

Timber was abundant and could be had for the asking; for the frontiersman usually regarded a tree less as a valuable possession than as a natural enemy, to be got rid of by fair means or foul. The only cost was the labor. The fort rose rapidly. It was a square enclosing about three quarters of an acre, each side measuring a hundred and eighty feet. The wall was not of palisades, as was more

[1] Extracts from the Town Record, in Saunderson, *History of Charlestown, N. H. (Number Four)*, 17, 18.

usual, but of squared logs laid one upon another, and interlocked at the corners after the fashion of a log-cabin. Within were several houses, which had been built close together, for mutual protection, before the fort was begun, and which belonged to Stevens, Spafford, and other settlers. Apparently they were small log-cabins; for they were valued at only from eight to thirty-five pounds each, in old tenor currency wofully attenuated by depreciation; and these sums being paid to the owners out of the three hundred pounds collected for building the fort, the cabins became public property. Either they were built in a straight line, or they were moved to form one, for when the fort was finished, they all backed against the outer wall, so that their low roofs served to fire from. The usual flankers completed the work, and the settlers of Number Four were so well pleased with it that they proudly declared their fort a better one than Fort Dummer, its nearest neighbor, which had been built by public authority at the charge of the province.

But a fort must have a garrison, and the ten or twelve men of Number Four would hardly be a sufficient one. Sooner or later an attack was certain; for the place was a backwoods Castle Dangerous, lying in the path of war-parties from Canada, whether coming down the Connecticut from Lake Memphremagog, or up Otter Creek from Lake Champlain, then over the mountains to Black River, and so down that stream, which would bring them directly to Number Four. New

Hampshire would do nothing for them, and their only hope was in Massachusetts, of which most of them were natives, and which had good reasons for helping them to hold their ground, as a cover to its own settlements below. The Governor and Assembly of Massachusetts did, in fact, send small parties of armed men from time to time to defend the endangered outpost, and the succor was timely; for though, during the first year of the war, Number Four was left in peace, yet from the 19th of April to the 19th of June, 1746, it was attacked by Indians five times, with some loss of scalps, and more of cattle, horses, and hogs. On the last occasion there was a hot fight in the woods, ending in the retreat of the Indians, said to have numbered a hundred and fifty, into a swamp, leaving behind them guns, blankets, hatchets, spears, and other things, valued at forty pounds, old tenor, — which, says the chronicle, "was reckoned a great booty for such beggarly enemies." [1]

But Massachusetts grew tired of defending lands that had been adjudged to New Hampshire, and as the season drew towards an end, Number Four was left again to its own keeping. The settlers saw no choice but to abandon a place which they were too few to defend, and accordingly withdrew to the older settlements, after burying such of their effects as would bear it, and leaving others to their fate. Six men, a dog, and a cat remained to keep the fort. Towards midwinter the human part of

[1] Saunderson, *History of Charlestown, N. H.*, 29 Doolittle, *Narrative of Mischief done by the Indian Enemy*, — a contemporary chronicle.

the garrison also withdrew, and the two uncongenial quadrupeds were left alone.

When the authorities of Massachusetts saw that a place so useful to bear the brunt of attack was left to certain destruction, they repented of their late withdrawal, and sent Captain Phineas Stevens, with thirty men, to re-occupy it. Stevens, a native of Sudbury, Massachusetts, one of the earliest settlers of Number Four, and one of its chief proprietors, was a bold, intelligent, and determined man, well fitted for the work before him. He and his band reached the fort on the 27th of March, 1747, and their arrival gave peculiar pleasure to its tenants, the dog and cat, the former of whom met them with lively demonstrations of joy. The pair had apparently lived in harmony, and found means of subsistence, as they are reported to have been in tolerable condition.

Stevens had brought with him a number of other dogs,— animals found useful for detecting the presence of Indians and tracking them to their lurking-places. A week or more after the arrival of the party, these canine allies showed great uneasiness and barked without ceasing; on which Stevens ordered a strict watch to be kept, and great precaution to be used in opening the gate of the fort. It was time, for the surrounding forest concealed what the New England chroniclers call an "army," commanded by General Debeline. It scarcely need be said that Canada had no General Debeline, and that no such name is to be found in Canadian annals. The "army" was a large war-party of

both French and Indians, and a French record shows that its commander was Boucher de Niverville, ensign in the colony troops.[1]

The behavior of the dogs was as yet the only sign of danger, when, about nine o'clock on the morning of the 7th of April, one of Stevens's men took it upon him to go out and find what was amiss. Accompanied by two or three of the dogs, he advanced, gun in hand, into the clearing, peering at every stump, lest an Indian should lurk behind it. When about twenty rods from the gate, he saw a large log, or trunk of a fallen tree, not far before him, and approached it cautiously, setting on the dogs, or, as Stevens whimsically phrases it, "saying *Choboy!*" to them. They ran forward barking, on which several heads appeared above the log, and several guns were fired at him. He was slightly wounded, but escaped to the fort. Then, all around, the air rang with war-whoops, and a storm of bullets flew from the tangle of bushes that edged the clearing, and rapped spitefully, but harmlessly, against the wooden wall. At a little distance on the windward side was a log-house, to which, with adjacent fences, the assailants presently set fire, in the hope that, as the wind was strong, the flames would catch the fort. When Stevens saw what they were doing, he set himself to thwart them; and while some of his men kept them at bay with their guns, the rest fell to work digging a number of short trenches

[1] *Extrait en forme de Journal de ce qui s'est passé d'intéressant dans la Colonie à l'occasion des Mouvements de Guerre, etc.*, 1746, 1747.

under the wall, on the side towards the fire. As each trench was six or seven feet deep, a man could stand in it outside the wall, sheltered from bullets, and dash buckets of water, passed to him from within, against the scorching timbers. Eleven such trenches were dug, and eleven men were stationed in them, so that the whole exposed front of the wall was kept wet.[1] Thus, though clouds of smoke drifted over the fort, and burning cinders showered upon it, no harm was done, and the enemy was forced to other devices. They found a wagon, which they protected from water and bullets by a shield of planks, — for there was a saw-mill hard by, — and loaded it with dry fagots, thinking to set them on fire and push the blazing machine against a dry part of the fort wall; but the task proved too dangerous, "for," says Stevens, "instead of performing what they threatened and seemed to be immediately going to undertake, they called to us and desired a cessation of arms till sunrise the next morning, which was granted, at which time they said they would come to a parley." In fact, the French commander, with about sixty of his men, came in the morning with a flag of truce, which he stuck in the ground at a musket-shot from the fort, and,

[1] "Those who were not employed in firing at the enemy were employed in digging trenches under the bottom of the fort. We dug no less than eleven of them, so deep that a man could go and stand upright on the outside and not endanger himself; so that when these trenches were finished, we could wet all the outside of the fort, which we did, and kept it wet all night. We drew some hundreds of barrels of water; and to undergo all this hard service there were but thirty men." *Stevens to Colonel W. Williams, — April*, 1747.

in the words of Stevens, "said, if we would send three men to him, he would send as many to us." Stevens agreed to this, on which two Frenchmen and an Indian came to the fort, and three soldiers went out in return. The two Frenchmen demanded, on the part of their commander, that the garrison should surrender, under a promise of life, and be carried prisoners to Quebec; and they farther required that Stevens should give his answer to the French officer in person.

Wisely or unwisely, Stevens went out at the gate, and was at once joined by Niverville, attended, no doubt, by an interpreter. "Upon meeting the Monsieur," says the English captain, "he did not wait for me to give him an answer," but said, in a manner sufficiently peremptory, that he had seven hundred men with him, and that if his terms were refused, he would storm the fort, "run over it," burn it to the ground, and if resistance were offered, put all in it to the sword; adding that he would have it or die, and that Stevens might fight or not as he pleased, for it was all one to him. His terms being refused, he said, as Stevens reports, "Well, go back to your fort and see if your men dare fight any more, and give me an answer quickly; for my men want to be fighting." Stevens now acted as if he had been the moderator of a town-meeting. "I went into the fort and called the men together, and informed them what the General said, and then put it to vote whether they would fight or resign; and they voted to a man to stand it out, and also

declared that they would fight as long as they had life."[1]

Answer was made accordingly, but Niverville's promise to storm the fort and "run over it" was not kept. Stevens says that his enemies had not the courage to do this, or even to bring up their "fortification," meaning their fire-wagon with its shield of planks. In fact, an open assault upon a fortified place was a thing unknown in this border warfare, whether waged by Indians alone, or by French and Indians together. The assailants only raised the war-whoop again, and fired, as before, from behind stumps, logs, and bushes. This amusement they kept up from two o'clock till night, when they grew bolder, approached nearer, and shot flights of fire-arrows into the fort, which, water being abundant, were harmless as their bullets. At daylight they gave over this exercise, called out "Good morning!" to the garrison, and asked for a suspension of arms for two hours. This being agreed to, another flag of truce presently appeared, carried by two Indians, who planted it in the ground within a stone's throw of the fort, and asked that two men should be sent out to confer with them. This was done, and the men soon came back with a proposal that Stevens should sell provisions to his besiegers, under a promise on their part that they would give him no farther trouble. He answered that he would not sell them provisions for money, but would exchange them for prisoners, and give five bushels of Indian corn

[1] *Stevens to Colonel William Williams, — April,* 1747.

for every hostage placed in his hands as security for the release of an English captive in Canada. To this their only answer was firing a few shots against the fort, after which they all disappeared, and were seen no more. The garrison had scarcely eaten or slept for three days. "I believe men were never known to hold out with better resolution," writes Stevens; and "though there were some thousands of guns shot at us, we had but two men slightly wounded, John Brown and Joseph Ely."[1]

Niverville and his party, disappointed and hungry, now made a tour among the scattered farms and hamlets of the country below, which, incapable of resisting such an inroad, were abandoned at their approach. Thus they took an easy revenge for their rebuff at Number Four, and in a march of thirty or forty leagues, burned five small deserted forts or stockaded houses, "three meeting-houses, several fine barns, about one hundred dwellings, mostly of two stories, furnished even to chests of drawers, and killed five to six hundred sheep and hogs, and about thirty horned cattle. This devastation is well worth a few prisoners or scalps."[2] It is curious to find such exploits mentioned with complacency, as evidence of prowess.

The successful defence of the most exposed place on the frontier was welcome news throughout New England, and Commodore Charles Knowles, who was then at Boston, sent Stevens a silver-hilted sword in recognition of his conduct. The settlers

[1] *Stevens to Colonel W. Williams, — April*, 1747.
[2] *N. Y. Col. Docs.*, X. 97.

of Number Four, who soon returned to their backwoods home, were so well pleased with this compliment to one of their fellows that they gave to the settlement the baptismal name of the Commodore, and the town that has succeeded the hamlet of Number Four is Charlestown to this day.[1]

[1] Just after the withdrawal of the French and Indians, Stevens wrote two letters giving an account of the affair, one to Governor Shirley, and the other to Colonel William Williams, who seems to have been his immediate military superior. At most points they are substantially the same; but that to Williams contains some passages not found in the other. The letter to Shirley is printed in Saunderson, *History of Charlestown, N. H.*, 34–37, and that to Williams in *Collections of the New Hampshire Historical Society*, IV. 109–113. Stevens also kept a diary, which was long in possession of his descendants. One of these, Mr. B. F. Stevens, kindly made a search for it, at my request, and learned that it had been unfortunately destroyed by fire, in 1856. Doolittle, in his *Narrative of Mischief*, and Hoyt, in his *Antiquarian Researches*, give other accounts. The French notices of the affair are few and short, as usual in cases of failure. For the principal one, see *N. Y. Col. Docs.*, X. 97. It is here said that Stevens asked for a parley, in order to capitulate; but all the English accounts say that the French made the first advances.

CHAPTER XXIV.

1745–1748.

FORT MASSACHUSETTS.

Frontier Defence. — Northfield and its Minister. — Military Criticisms of Rev. Benjamin Doolittle. — Rigaud de Vaudreuil. — His Great War-Party. — He attacks Fort Massachusetts. — Sergeant Hawks and his Garrison. — A Gallant Defence. — Capitulation. — Humanity of the French. — Ravages. — Return to Crown Point. — Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle.

Since the last war, the settlements of Massachusetts had pushed westward and begun to invade the beautiful region of mountains and valleys that now forms Berkshire. Villages, or rudiments of villages, had grown up on the Housatonic, and an establishment had been attempted at Pontoosuc, now Pittsfield, on the extreme western limits of the province. The position of these new settlements was critical, for the enemy could reach them with little difficulty by way of Lake Champlain and Wood Creek. The Massachusetts Government was not unmindful of them, and when war again broke out, three wooden forts were built for their protection, forming a line of defence westward from Northfield on the northern frontier of the province. One of these forts was in the present town of Heath, and was called Fort Shirley;

another, named Fort Pelham, was in the present town of Rowe; while the third, Fort Massachusetts, was farther westward, in what is now the town of Adams, then known as East Hoosac. Two hundred men from the militia were taken into pay to hold these posts and patrol the intervening forests. Other defensive works were made here and there, sometimes by the votes of town meetings, and sometimes by individuals, at their own cost. These works consisted of a fence of palisades enclosing a farm-house, or sometimes of a blockhouse of timber or heavy planks. Thus, at Northfield, Deacon Ebenezer Alexander, a veteran of sixty who had served at Louisbourg, built a "mount," or blockhouse, on the knoll behind his house, and carried a stockade from it to enclose the dwelling, shed, and barn, the whole at the cost of thirty-six pounds, one shilling, and sixpence, in Massachusetts currency,[1] which the town repaid him, his fortifications being of public utility as a place of refuge for families in case of attack. Northfield was a place notoriously dangerous, and military methods were in vogue there in season and out of season. Thus, by a vote of the town, the people were called to the Sunday sermon by beat of drum, and Eleazer Holton was elected to sound the call in consideration of one pound and ten shillings a year, the drum being hired of Ensign Field, its fortunate possessor, for the

[1] Temple and Sheldon, *History of Northfield*, 237, give the items from the original account. This is one of the best of the innumerable town-histories of New England.

farther sum of three shillings. This was in the earlier days of Northfield. In 1734 the Sunday drum-beat was stopped, and the worshippers were summoned by the less obstreperous method of "hanging out a flagg," for the faithful discharge of which function Daniel Wright received in 1744 one pound and five shillings.[1]

The various fortifications, public and private, were garrisoned, sometimes by the owner and his neighbors, sometimes by men in pay of the provincial Assembly. As was to be expected from a legislative body undertaking warlike operations, the work of defence was but indifferently conducted. John Stoddard, the village magnate of Northampton, was charged, among the rest of his multifarious employments, with the locating and construction of forts; Captain Ephraim Williams was assigned to the general command on the western frontier, with headquarters at Fort Shirley and afterwards at Fort Massachusetts; and Major Israel Williams, of Hatfield, was made commissary.

At Northfield dwelt the Reverend Benjamin Doolittle, minister, apothecary, physician, and surgeon of the village; for he had studied medicine no less than theology. His parishioners thought that his cure of bodies encroached on his cure of souls, and requested him to confine his attention to his spiritual charge; to which he replied that he could not afford it, his salary as minister being seventy-five pounds in irredeemable

[1] Temple and Sheldon, *History of Northfield*, 218.

Massachusetts paper, while his medical and surgical practice brought him full four hundred a year. He offered to comply with the wishes of his flock if they would add that amount to his salary, — which they were not prepared to do, and the minister continued his heterogeneous labors as before.

As the position of his house on the village street seems to have been regarded as strategic, the town voted to fortify it with a blockhouse and a stockade, for the benefit both of the occupant and of all the villagers. This was accordingly done, at the cost of eighteen pounds, seven shillings, and sixpence for the blockhouse, and a farther charge for the stockade; and thenceforth Mr. Doolittle could write his sermons and mix his doses in peace. To his other callings he added that of historiographer. When, after a ministry of thirty-six years, the thrifty pastor was busied one day with hammer and nails in mending the fence of his yard, he suddenly dropped dead from a stroke of heart-disease, — to the grief of all Northfield; and his papers being searched, a record was found in his handwriting of the inroads of the enemy that had happened in his time on or near the Massachusetts border. Being rightly thought worthy of publication, it was printed at Boston in a dingy pamphlet, now extremely rare, and much prized by antiquarians.[1]

[1] *A short Narrative of Mischief done by the French and Indian Enemy, on the Western Frontiers of the Province of the Massachusetts Bay; from the Beginning of the French War, proclaimed by the King of France, March 15th,* 1743–4; *and by the King of Great Britain, March 29th,* 1744,

Appended to it are the remarks of the author on the conduct of the war. He complains that plans are changed so often that none of them take effect; that terms of enlistment are so short that the commissary can hardly serve out provisions to the men before their time is expired: that neither bread, meat, shoes, nor blankets are kept on hand for an emergency, so that the enemy escape while the soldiers are getting ready to pursue them; that the pay of a drafted man is so small that twice as much would not hire a laborer to take care of his farm in his absence; and that untried and unfit persons are commissioned as officers: in all of which strictures there is no doubt much truth.

Mr. Doolittle's rueful narrative treats mainly of miscellaneous murders and scalpings, interesting only to the sufferers and their friends; but he also chronicles briefly a formidable inroad that still holds a place in New England history.

It may be remembered that Shirley had devised a plan for capturing Fort Frédéric, or Crown Point, built by the French at the narrows of Lake Champlain, and commanding ready access for war-parties to New York and New England.

to August 2nd, 1748. *Drawn up by the Rev. Mr. Doolittle, of Northfield, in the County of Hampshire; and found among his Manuscripts after his Death. And at the Desire of some is now Published, with some small Additions to render it more perfect. Boston; Printed and sold by S. Kneeland, in Queen Street. MDCCL.*

The facts above given concerning Mr. Doolittle are drawn from the excellent *History of Northfield* by Temple and Sheldon, and the introduction to the *Particular History of the Five Years' French and Indian War*, by S. G. Drake.

The approach of D'Anville's fleet had defeated the plan; but rumors of it had reached Canada, and excited great alarm. Large bodies of men were ordered to Lake Champlain to protect the threatened fort. The two brothers De Muy were already on the lake with a numerous party of Canadians and Indians, both Christian and heathen, and Rigaud de Vaudreuil, town-major of Three Rivers, was ordered to follow with a still larger force, repel any English attack, or, if none should be made, take the offensive and strike a blow at the English frontier. On the 3d of August, Rigaud[1] left Montreal with a fleet of canoes carrying what he calls his army, and on the 12th he encamped on the east side of the lake, at the mouth of Otter Creek. There was rain, thunder, and a violent wind all night; but the storm ceased at daybreak, and, embarking again, they soon saw the octagonal stone tower of Fort Frédéric.

The party set up their tents and wigwams near the fort, and on the morning of the 16th the elder De Muy arrived with a reinforcement of sixty Frenchmen and a band of Indians. They had just returned from an incursion towards Albany, and reported that all was quiet in those parts, and that Fort Frédéric was in no danger. Now, to their great satisfaction, Rigaud and his band saw themselves free to take the offensive. The ques-

[1] French writers always call him Rigaud, to distinguish him from his brother, Pierre Rigaud de Vaudreuil-Cavagnal, afterwards governor of Canada, who is usually mentioned as Vaudreuil.

tion was, where to strike. The Indians held council after council, made speech after speech, and agreed on nothing. Rigaud gave them a wampum-belt, and told them that he meant to attack Corlaer, — that is, Schenectady; at which they seemed well pleased, and sang war-songs all night. In the morning they changed their minds, and begged him to call the whole army to a council for debating the question. It appeared that some of them, especially the Iroquois converts of Caughnawaga, disapproved of attacking Schenectady, because some of their Mohawk relatives were always making visits there, and might be inadvertently killed by the wild Western Indians of Rigaud's party. Now all was doubt again, for as Indians are unstable as water, it was no easy task to hold them to any plan of action.

The Abenakis proposed a solution of the difficulty. They knew the New England border well, for many of them had lived upon it before the war, on terms of friendly intercourse with the settlers. They now drew upon the floor of the council-room a rough map of the country, on which was seen a certain river, and on its upper waters a fort which they recommended as a proper object of attack. The river was that eastern tributary of the Hudson which the French called the Kaskékouké, the Dutch the Schaticook, and the English the Hoosac. The fort was Fort Massachusetts, the most westerly of the three posts lately built to guard the frontier. "My Father," said the Abenaki spokesman to Rigaud, "it will be easy to

take this fort, and make great havoc on the lands of the English. Deign to listen to your children and follow our advice."[1] One Cadenaret, an Abenaki chief, had been killed near Fort Massachusetts in the last spring, and his tribesmen were keen to revenge him. Seeing his Indians pleased with the proposal to march for the Hoosac, Rigaud gladly accepted it; on which whoops, yelps, and war-songs filled the air. Hardly, however, was the party on its way when the Indians changed their minds again, and wanted to attack Saratoga; but Rigaud told them that they had made their choice and must abide by it, to which they assented, and gave him no farther trouble.

On the 20th of August they all embarked and paddled southward, passed the lonely promontory where Fort Ticonderoga was afterwards built, and held their course till the lake dwindled to a mere canal creeping through the weedy marsh then called the Drowned Lands. Here, nine summers later, passed the flotilla of Baron Dieskau, bound to defeat and ruin by the shores of Lake George. Rigaud stopped at a place known as East Bay, at the mouth of a stream that joins Wood Creek, just north of the present town of Whitehall. Here he left the younger De Muy, with thirty men, to guard the canoes. The rest of the party, guided by a brother of the slain Cadenaret, filed southward on foot along the base of Skene Moun-

[1] *Journal de la Campagne de Rigaud de Vaudreuil en* 1746 . . . *présenté à Monseigneur le Comte de Maurepas, Ministre et Secrétaire d'Etat* (written by Rigaud).

tain, that overlooks Whitehall. They counted about seven hundred men, of whom five hundred were French, and a little above two hundred were Indians.[1] Some other French reports put the whole number at eleven hundred, or even twelve hundred,[2] while several English accounts make it eight hundred or nine hundred. The Frenchmen of the party included both regulars and Canadians, with six regular officers and ten cadets, eighteen militia officers, two chaplains, — one for the whites and one for the Indians, — and a surgeon.[3]

After a march of four days, they encamped on the 26th by a stream which ran into the Hudson, and was no doubt the Batten Kill, known to the French as *la rivière de Saratogue*. Being nearly opposite Saratoga, where there was then a garrison, they changed their course, on the 27th, from south to southeast, the better to avoid scouting-parties, which might discover their trail and defeat their plan of surprise. Early on the next day they reached the Hoosac, far above its mouth; and now their march was easier, "for," says Rigaud, "we got out of the woods and followed a large road that led up the river." In fact, there seem to have been two roads, one on each side of the Hoosac; for the French were formed into two brigades, one of which, under the Sieur de la Valterie, filed along the right bank of the stream, and the

[1] "Le 19, ayant fait passer l'armée en Revue qui se trouva de 700 hommes, scavoir 500 françois environ et 200 quelques sauvages." *Journal de Rigaud.*

[2] See *N. Y. Col. Docs.*, X. 103, 132.

[3] *Ibid.*, X. 35.

other, under the Sieur de Sabrevois, along the left; while the Indians marched on the front, flanks, and rear. They passed deserted houses and farms belonging to Dutch settlers from the Hudson; for the Hoosac, in this part of its course, was in the province of New York.[1] They did not stop to burn barns and houses, but they killed poultry, hogs, a cow, and a horse, to supply themselves with meat. Before night they had passed the New York line, and they made their camp in or near the valley where Williamstown and Williams College now stand. Here they were joined by the Sieurs Beaubassin and La Force, who had gone forward, with eight Indians, to reconnoitre. Beaubassin had watched Fort Massachusetts from a distance, and had seen a man go up into the watch-tower, but could discover no other sign of alarm. Apparently, the fugitive Dutch farmers had not taken pains to warn the English garrison of the coming danger, for there was a coolness between the neighbors.

Before breaking up camp in the morning, Rigaud called the Indian chiefs together and said to them: "My children, the time is near when we must get other meat than fresh pork, and we will all eat it together." "Meat," in Indian parlance, meant prisoners; and as these were valuable by reason of the ransoms paid for them, and as the Indians had suspected that the French meant to keep them

[1] These Dutch settlements on the Hoosac were made under what was called the "Hoosac Patent," granted by Governor Dongan of New York in 1688. The settlements were not begun till nearly forty years after the grant was made. For evidence on this point I am indebted to Professor A. L. Perry, of Williams College.

all, they were well pleased with this figurative assurance of Rigaud that they should have their share.[1]

The chaplain said mass, and the party marched in a brisk rain up the Williamstown valley, till after advancing about ten miles they encamped again. Fort Massachusetts was only three or four miles distant. Rigaud held a talk with the Abenaki chiefs who had acted as guides, and it was agreed that the party should stop in the woods near the fort, make scaling-ladders, battering-rams to burst the gates, and other things needful for a grand assault, to take place before daylight; but their plan came to nought through the impetuosity of the young Indians and Canadians, who were so excited at the first glimpse of the watch-tower of the fort that they dashed forward, as Rigaud says, "like lions." Hence one might fairly expect to see the fort assaulted at once; but by the maxims of forest war this would have been reprehensible rashness, and nothing of the kind was attempted. The assailants spread to right and left, squatted behind stumps, and opened a distant and harmless fire, accompanied with unearthly yells and howlings.

Fort Massachusetts was a wooden enclosure formed, like the fort at Number Four, of beams laid one upon another, and interlocked at the

1 "Mes enfans, leur dis-je, le temps approche où il faut faire d'autre viande que le porc frais; au reste, nous la mangerons tous ensemble; ce mot les flatta dans la crainte qu'ils avoient qu'après la prise du fort nous ne nous réservâmes tous les prisonniers." *Journal de Rigaud.*

angles. This wooden wall seems to have rested, not immediately upon the ground, but upon a foundation of stone, designated by Mr. Norton, the chaplain, as the "underpinning," — a name usually given in New England to foundations of the kind. At the northwest corner was a blockhouse,[1] crowned with the watch-tower, the sight of which had prematurely kindled the martial fire of the Canadians and Indians. This wooden structure, at the apex of the blockhouse, served as a lookout, and also supplied means of throwing water to extinguish fire-arrows shot upon the roof. There were other buildings in the enclosure, especially a large log-house on the south side, which seems to have overlooked the outer wall, and was no doubt loopholed for musketry. On the east side there was a well, furnished probably with one of those long well-sweeps universal in primitive New England. The garrison, when complete, consisted of fifty-one men under Captain Ephraim Williams, who has left his name to Williamstown and Williams College, of the latter of which he was the founder. He was born at Newton, near Boston; was a man vigorous in body and mind; better acquainted with the world than most of his countrymen, having followed the seas in his youth, and visited England, Spain, and Holland; frank and agreeable in manners, well fitted for such a command, and respected

[1] The term "blockhouse" was loosely used, and was even sometimes applied to an entire fort when constructed of hewn logs, and not of palisades. The true blockhouse of the New England frontier was a solid wooden structure about twenty feet high, with a projecting upper story and loopholes above and below.

and loved by his men.[1] When the proposed invasion of Canada was preparing, he and some of his men went to take part in it, and had not yet returned. The fort was left in charge of a sergeant, John Hawks, of Deerfield, with men too few for the extent of the works, and a supply of ammunition nearly exhausted. Canada being then put on the defensive, the frontier forts were thought safe for a time. On the Saturday before Rigaud's arrival, Hawks had sent Thomas Williams, the surgeon, brother of the absent captain, to Deerfield, with a detachment of fourteen men, to get a supply of powder and lead. This detachment reduced the entire force, including Hawks himself and Norton, the chaplain, to twenty-two men, half of whom were disabled with dysentery, from which few of the rest were wholly free.[2] There were also in the fort three women and five children.[3]

[1] See the notice of Williams in *Mass. Hist. Coll.*, VIII. 47. He was killed in the bloody skirmish that preceded the Battle of Lake George in 1755. *Montcalm and Wolfe*, chap. ix.

[2] "Lord's Day and Monday . . . the sickness was very distressing. . . . Eleven of our men were sick, and scarcely one of us in perfect health; almost every man was troubled with the griping and flux." Norton, *The Redeemed Captive*.

[3] Rigaud erroneously makes the garrison a little larger. "La garnison se trouva de 24 hommes, entre lesquels il y avoit un ministre, 3 femmes, et 5 enfans." The names and residence of all the men in the fort when the attack began are preserved. Hawks made his report to the provincial government under the title "*An Account of the Company in his Majesty's Service under the command of Serg^t John Hawks . . . at Fort Massachusetts, Aug.* 20 [31, new style], 1746." The roll is attested on oath "Before William Williams, *Just. Pacis.*" The number of men is 22, including Hawks and Norton. Each man brought his own gun. I am indebted to the kindness of Professor A. L. Perry for a copy of Hawks's report, which is addressed to "the Honble. Spencer Phipps, Esq., Lieut. Govr and Commander in Chief [and] the Honble his Majesty's Council and House of Representatives in General Court assembled."

The site of Fort Massachusetts is now a meadow by the banks of the Hoosac. Then it was a rough clearing, encumbered with the stumps and refuse of the primeval forest, whose living hosts stood grimly around it, and spread, untouched by the axe, up the sides of the neighboring Saddleback Mountain. The position of the fort was bad, being commanded by high ground, from which, as the chaplain tells us, "the enemy could shoot over the north side into the middle of the parade," — for which serious defect, John Stoddard, of Northampton, legist, capitalist, colonel of militia, and "Superintendent of Defence," was probably answerable. These frontier forts were, however, often placed on low ground with a view to an abundant supply of water, fire being the most dreaded enemy in Indian warfare.[1]

Sergeant Hawks, the provisional commander, was, according to tradition, a tall man with sunburnt features, erect, spare, very sinewy and strong, and of a bold and resolute temper. He had need to be so, for counting every man in the fort, lay and clerical, sick and well, he was beset by more than thirty times his own number; or, counting only his effective men, by more than sixty times, — and this at the lowest report of the attacking force. As there was nothing but a log fence between him and his enemy, it was clear

[1] When I visited the place as a college student, no trace of the fort was to be seen except a hollow, which may have been the remains of a cellar, and a thriving growth of horse-radish, — a relic of the garrison garden. My friend Dr. D. D. Slade has given an interesting account of the spot in the *Magazine of American History* for October, 1888.

that they could hew or burn a way through it, or climb over it with no surprising effort of valor. Rigaud, as we have seen, had planned a general assault under cover of night, but had been thwarted by the precipitancy of the young Indians and Canadians. These now showed no inclination to depart from the cautious maxims of forest warfare. They made a terrific noise, but when they came within gunshot of the fort, it was by darting from stump to stump with a quick, zigzag movement that made them more difficult to hit than birds on the wing. The best moment for a shot was when they reached a stump, and stopped for an instant to duck and hide behind it. By seizing this fleeting opportunity, Hawks himself put a bullet into the breast of an Abenaki chief from St. Francis, — "which ended his days," says the chaplain. In view of the nimbleness of the assailants, a charge of buckshot was found more to the purpose than a bullet. Besides the slain Abenaki, Rigaud reports sixteen Indians and Frenchmen wounded,[1] — which, under the circumstances, was good execution for ten farmers and a minister; for Chaplain Norton loaded and fired with the rest. Rigaud himself was one of the wounded, having been hit in the arm and sent to the rear, as he stood giving orders on the rocky hill about forty rods from the fort. Probably it was a chance shot, since, though rifles were invented long before, they were not yet in general use, and the yeoman garrison were armed with nothing but their

1 "L'Ennemi me tua un abenakis et me blessa 16 hommes, tant Iroquois qu'Abenaquis, nipissings et françois." *Journal de Rigaud.*

own smooth-bore hunting-pieces, not to be trusted at long range. The supply of ammunition had sunk so low that Hawks was forced to give the discouraging order not to fire except when necessary to keep the enemy in check, or when the chance of hitting him should be unusually good. Such of the sick men as were strong enough aided the defence by casting bullets and buckshot.

The outrageous noise lasted till towards nine in the evening, when the assailants greeted the fort with a general war-whoop, and repeated it three or four times; then a line of sentinels was placed around it to prevent messengers from carrying the alarm to Albany or Deerfield. The evening was dark and cloudy. The lights of a camp could be seen by the river towards the southeast, and those of another near the swamp towards the west. There was a sound of axes, as if the enemy were making scaling-ladders for a night assault; but it was found that they were cutting fagots to burn the wall. Hawks ordered every tub and bucket to be filled with water, in preparation for the crisis. Two men, John Aldrich and Jonathan Bridgman, had been wounded, thus farther reducing the strength of the defenders. The chaplain says: "Of those that were in health, some were ordered to keep the watch, and some lay down and endeavored to get some rest, lying down in our clothes with our arms by us. . . . We got little or no rest; the enemy frequently raised us by their hideous outcries, as though they were about to attack us. The latter part of the night I kept the watch."

Rigaud spent the night in preparing for a decisive attack, "being resolved to open trenches two hours before sunrise, and push them to the foot of the palisade, so as to place fagots against it, set them on fire, and deliver the fort a prey to the fury of the flames."[1] It began to rain, and he determined to wait till morning. That the commander of seven hundred French and Indians should resort to such elaborate devices to subdue a sergeant, seven militia-men, and a minister, — for this was now the effective strength of the besieged, — was no small compliment to the spirit of the defence.

The firing was renewed in the morning, but there was no attempt to open trenches by daylight. Two men were sent up into the watch-tower, and about eleven o'clock one of them, Thomas Knowlton, was shot through the head. The number of effectives was thus reduced to eight, including the chaplain. Up to this time the French and English witnesses are in tolerable accord; but now there is conflict of evidence. Rigaud says that when he was about to carry his plan of attack into execution, he saw a white flag hung out, and sent the elder De Muy, with Montigny and D'Auteuil, to hear what the English commandant — whose humble rank he nowhere mentions — had to say. On the other

[1] "Je passay la nuit à conduire l'ouvrage auquel j'avois destiné le jour précédent, résolu à faire ouvrir la tranchée deux heures avant le lever du soleil, et de la pousser jusqu'au pied de la palissade, pour y placer les fascines, y appliquer l'artifice, et livrer le fort en proye à la fureur du feu." *Journal de Rigaud.* He mistakes in calling the log wall of the fort a palisade.

hand, Norton, the chaplain, says that about noon the French "desired to parley," and that "we agreed to it." He says farther that the sergeant, with himself and one or two others, met Rigaud outside the gate, and that the French commander promised "good quarter" to the besieged if they would surrender, with the alternative of an assault if they would not. This account is sustained by Hawks, who says that at twelve o'clock an Indian came forward with a flag of truce, and that he, Hawks, with two or three others, went to meet Rigaud, who then offered honorable terms of capitulation.[1] The sergeant promised an answer within two hours; and going back to the fort with his companions, examined their means of defence. He found that they had left but three or four pounds of gunpowder, and about as much lead. Hawks called a council of his effective men. Norton prayed for divine aid and guidance, and then they fell to considering the situation. "Had we all been in health, or had there been only those eight of us that were in health, I believe every man would willingly have stood it out to the last. For my part, I should," writes the manful chaplain. But besides the sick and wounded, there were three women and five children, who, if the fort were taken by assault, would no doubt be butchered by the Indians, but who might be saved

[1] *Journal of Sergeant Hawks*, cited by William L. Stone, *Life and Times of Sir William Johnson*, I. 227. What seems conclusive is that the French permitted Norton to nail to a post of the fort a short account of its capture, in which it is plainly stated that the first advances were made by Rigaud.

by a capitulation. Hawks therefore resolved to make the best terms he could. He had defended his post against prodigious odds for twenty-eight hours. Rigaud promised that all in the fort should be treated with humanity as prisoners of war, and exchanged at the first opportunity. He also promised that none of them should be given to the Indians, though he had lately assured his savage allies that they should have their share of the prisoners.

At three o'clock the principal French officers were admitted into the fort, and the French flag was raised over it. The Indians and Canadians were excluded; on which some of the Indians pulled out several of the stones that formed the foundation of the wall, crawled through, opened the gate, and let in the whole crew. They raised a yell when they saw the blood of Thomas Knowlton trickling from the watch-tower where he had been shot, then rushed up to where the corpse lay, brought it down, scalped it, and cut off the head and arms. The fort was then plundered, set on fire, and burned to the ground.

The prisoners were led to the French camp; and here the chaplain was presently accosted by one Doty, Rigaud's interpreter, who begged him to persuade some of the prisoners to go with the Indians. Norton replied that it had been agreed that they should all remain with the French; and that to give up any of them to the Indians would be a breach of the capitulation. Doty then appealed to the men themselves, who all insisted on

being left with the French, according to the terms stipulated. Some of them, however, were given to the Indians, who, after Rigaud's promise to them, could have been pacified in no other way. His fault was in making a stipulation that he could not keep. Hawks and Norton, with all the women and children, remained in the French camp.

Hearing that men were expected from Deerfield to take the places of the sick, Rigaud sent sixty Indians to cut them off. They lay in wait for the English reinforcement, which consisted of nineteen men, gave them a close fire, shot down fifteen of them, and captured the rest.[1] This or another party of Rigaud's Indians pushed as far as Deerfield and tried to waylay the farmers as they went to their work on a Monday morning. The Indians hid in a growth of alder-bushes along the edge of a meadow where men were making hay, accompanied by some children. One Ebenezer Hawks, shooting partridges, came so near the ambushed warriors that they could not resist the temptation of killing and scalping him. This alarmed the haymakers and the children, who ran for their lives towards a mill on a brook that entered Deerfield River, fiercely pursued by about fifty Indians, who caught and scalped a boy named Amsden. Three men, Allen, Sadler, and Gillet, got under the bank of the river and fired on the pursuers. Allen and Gillet were soon killed, but Sadler escaped

[1] One French account says that the Indians failed to meet the English party. *N. Y. Col. Docs.*, X. 35.

unhurt to an island. Three children of Allen — Eunice, Samuel, and Caleb — were also chased by the Indians, who knocked down Eunice with a tomahawk, but were in too much haste to stop and scalp her, and she lived to a good old age. Her brother Samuel was caught and dragged off, but Caleb ran into a field of tall maize, and escaped.

The firing was heard in the village, and a few armed men, under Lieutenant Clesson, hastened to the rescue; but when they reached the spot the Indians were gone, carrying the boy Samuel Allen with them, and leaving two of their own number dead. Clesson, with such men as he had, followed their trail up Deerfield River, but could not overtake the light-footed savages.

Meanwhile, the prisoners at Fort Massachusetts spent the first night, well guarded, in the French and Indian camps. In the morning, Norton, accompanied by a Frenchman and several Indians, was permitted to nail to one of the charred posts of the fort a note to tell what had happened to him and his companions.[1] The victors then marched back as they had come, along the Hoosac road. They moved slowly, encumbered as they were by the sick and wounded. Rigaud gave the Indians presents, to induce them to treat their prisoners with humanity. Norton was in charge of De Muy,

[1] The note was as follows: "August 20 [31, new style], 1746. These are to inform you that yesterday, about 9 of the clock, we were besieged by, as they say, seven hundred French and Indians. They have wounded two men and killed one Knowlton. The General de Vaudreuil desired capitulations, and we were so distressed that we complied with his terms. We are the French's prisoners, and have it under the general's hand that every man, woman, and child shall be exchanged for French prisoners."

and after walking four miles sat down with him to rest in Williamstown valley. There was a yell from the Indians in the rear. "I trembled," writes Norton, "thinking they had murdered some of our people, but was filled with admiration when I saw all our prisoners come up with us, and John Aldrich carried on the back of his Indian master." Aldrich had been shot in the foot, and could not walk. "We set out again, and had gone but a little way before we came up with Josiah Reed." Reed was extremely ill, and could go no farther. Norton thought that the Indians would kill him, instead of which one of them carried him on his back. They were said to have killed him soon after, but there is good reason to think that he died of disease. "I saw John Perry's wife," pursues the chaplain; "she complained that she was almost ready to give out." The Indians threatened her, but Hawks spoke in her behalf to Rigaud, who remonstrated with them, and they afterwards treated her well. The wife of another soldier, John Smead, was near her time, and had lingered behind. The French showed her great kindness. "Some of them made a seat for her to sit upon, and brought her to the camp, where, about ten o'clock, she was graciously delivered of a daughter, and was remarkably well. . . . Friday: this morning I baptized John Smead's child. He called its name *Captivity*." The French made a litter of poles, spread over it a deer-skin and a bear-skin, on which they placed the mother and child, and so carried them forward. Three days

after, there was a heavy rain, and the mother was completely drenched, but suffered no harm, though "Miriam, the wife of Moses Scott, hereby catched a grievous cold." John Perry was relieved of his pack, so that he might help his wife and carry her when her strength failed. Several horses were found at the farms along the way, and the sick Benjamin Simons and the wounded John Aldrich were allowed to use two of them. Rarely, indeed, in these dismal border-raids were prisoners treated so humanely; and the credit seems chiefly due to the efforts of Rigaud and his officers. The hardships of the march were shared by the victors, some of whom were sorely wounded; and four Indians died within a few days.

"I divided my army between the two sides of the Kaskékouké" (Hoosac), says Rigaud, "and ordered them to do what I had not permitted to be done before we reached Fort Massachusetts. Every house was set on fire, and numbers of domestic animals of all sorts were killed. French and Indians vied with each other in pillage, and I made them enter the [valleys of all the] little streams that flow into the Kaskékouké and lay waste everything there. . . . Wherever we went we made the same havoc, laid waste both sides of the river, through twelve leagues of fertile country, burned houses, barns, stables, and even a meeting-house, — in all, above two hundred establishments, — killed all the cattle, and ruined all the crops. Such, Monseigneur, was the damage I did our enemies during the eight or nine days I

was in their country."[1] As the Dutch settlers had escaped, there was no resistance.

The French and their allies left the Hoosac at the point where they had reached it, and retraced their steps northward through the forest, where there was an old Indian trail. Recrossing the Batten Kill, or "River of Saratoga," and some branches of Wood Creek, they reached the place where they had left their canoes, and found them safe. Rigaud says: "I gave leave to the Indians, at their request, to continue their fighting and ravaging, in small parties, towards Albany, Schenectady, Deerfield, Saratoga, or wherever they pleased, and I even gave them a few officers and cadets to lead them." These small ventures were more or less successful, and produced, in due time, a good return of scalps.

The main body, now afloat again, sailed and paddled northward till they reached Crown Point. Rigaud rejoiced at finding a haven of refuge, for his wounded arm was greatly inflamed: "and it was time I should reach a place of repose." He and his men encamped by the fort and remained there for some time. An epidemic, apparently like that at Fort Massachusetts, had broken out among them, and great numbers were seriously ill.

Norton was lodged in a French house on the east side of the lake, at what is now called Chimney Point; and one day his guardian, De Muy, either thinking to impress him with the strength of the place, or with an amusing confidence in the minister's incapacity for making inconvenient military

[1] *Journal de Rigaud.*

observations, invited him to visit the fort. He accepted the invitation, crossed over with the courteous officer, and reports the ramparts to have been twenty feet thick, about twenty feet high, and mounted with above twenty cannon. The octagonal tower which overlooked the ramparts, and answered in some sort to the donjon of a feudal castle, was a bomb-proof structure in vaulted masonry, of the slaty black limestone of the neighborhood, three stories in height, and armed with nine or ten cannon, besides a great number of patereroes, — a kind of pivot-gun much like a swivel.[1]

In due time the prisoners reached Montreal, whence they were sent to Quebec; and in the course of the next year those who remained alive were exchanged and returned to New England.[2] Mrs. Smead and her infant daughter "Captivity" died in Canada, and, by a singular fatality, her husband had scarcely returned home when he was waylaid and killed by Indians. Fort Massachusetts was soon rebuilt by the province, and held its own thenceforth till the war was over. Sergeant Hawks became a lieutenant-colonel, and took a creditable part in the last French war.

For two years after the incursion of Rigaud the New England borders were scourged with partisan warfare, bloody, monotonous, and futile, with no

[1] Kalm also describes the fort and its tower. Little trace of either now remains. Amherst demolished them in 1759, when he built the larger fort, of which the ruins still stand on the higher ground behind the site of its predecessor.

[2] Of the twenty-two men in the fort when attacked, one, Knowlton, was killed by a bullet; one, Reed, died just after the surrender; ten died in Canada, and ten returned home. *Report of Sergeant Hawks.*

event that needs recording, and no result beyond a momentary check to the progress of settlement. At length, in July, 1748, news came that the chief contending powers in Europe had come to terms of agreement, and in the next October the Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle was signed. Both nations were tired of the weary and barren conflict, with its enormous cost and its vast entail of debt. It was agreed that conquests should be mutually restored. The chief conquest of England was Louisbourg, with the island of Cape Breton, — won for her by the farmers and fishermen of New England. When the preliminaries of peace were under discussion, Louis XV. had demanded the restitution of the lost fortress; and George II. is said to have replied that it was not his to give, having been captured by the people of Boston.[1] But his sense of justice was forced to yield to diplomatic necessity, for Louisbourg was the indispensable price of peace. To the indignation of the Northern provinces, it was restored to its former owners. "The British ministers," says Smollett, "gave up the important island of Cape Breton in exchange for a petty factory in the East Indies" (Madras), and the King deigned to send two English noblemen to the French court as security for the bargain.

Peace returned to the tormented borders; the settlements advanced again, and the colonists found a short breathing space against the great conclusive struggle of the Seven Years' War.

[1] *N. Y. Col. Docs.*, X. 147.

APPENDIX.

APPENDIX.

A.

CHAPTER XVII. ENGLAND HAS NO RIGHTFUL TITLES TO NORTH AMERICA, EXCEPT THOSE WHICH MAY BE GRANTED HER BY FRANCE.

Second Memoire concernant les limites des Colonies presenté en 1720, *par Bobé prêtre de la congregation de la Mission. à Versailles.* Archives Nationales.

(*Extracts, printed literatim.*)

"L'année Dernier 1719 je presenté un Memoire Concernant les prétensions reciproques de la grande bretagne et de la france par Raport aux Colonies des deux Nations dans L'Amerique, et au Reglement des limites des dites Colonies.

"Je ne repete pas ce que j'ay dit dans ce memoire, je prie seulement que l'on pese bien tout ce que j'y dis pour Aneantir les prétensions des Anglois, et pour les Convaincre, s'ils veullent être de bonne foy, qu'elles sont des plus mal fondées, trés Exorbitantes, et mêmes injustes, qu'ayant usurpé sur La france presque tout ce qu'ils possedent en Amerique, ils deveroient luy rendre au lieu de luy demander, et qu'ils deveroient estimer Comme un tres grand avantage pour Eux, la Compensation que j'y propose pour finir cette affaire, laqu'elle, sans cette Compensation, renaitra toujours jusqu'a ce qu'enfin la france soit rentrée en paisible possession de tout ce qui luy appartient légitimement, et dont on ne L'a depoüilleé que par la force et La malheureuse Conjoncture des tems, qui sans doute tôt ou tard luy seront plus favorables.

"Il Est surprenant que les Anglois entendus Comme ils sont par Raport à leurs Interests, ne fassent pas attention qu'il Leurs est infiniment plus Avantageux de s'assurer, par un traité raisonnable, la tranquille et perpetuelle possession des payis ou ils etoient établis avant la paix D'utrecht, que de vouloir profiter des Conjonctures pour oster aux françois des payis qu'ils ne Cederont jamais de bon Coeur, et dont ils se rempareront quand ils trouveront l'occasion favorable pour Cela, se persuadant qu'il leur sera alors permis de reprendre par force, ce que par force on leurs à pris, et ce qu'ils ont été obligé de Ceder a Utrecht; et meme de reprendre au moins une partie des payis que l'angleterre à usurpez sur la france, qui ne les à jamais cedez par aucun traité que je scache. . . .

"Jean Verazan par ordre de françois 1er fit La decouverte de tous les payis et Costes qui sont Entre le 33e et le 47e Degre de latitude, et y fit deux voyages dont le dernier fut en 1523 et par ordre et au nom du dit Roy francois 1er il prit possession de toute cette Coste et de tous ces payis, bien long tems avant que les Anglois y Eussent Eté.

"L'an 1562 Les françois s'établirent dans La Caroline. Champlain à La fin de la relation de ses voyages fait un chapitre exprez Dans lequel il prouve.

"1°. Que La france a pris possession de toutes les Costes et payis depuis la floride inclusivement jusqu'au fleuve St Laurent inclusivem^{t}, avant tout autre prince chrêtien.

2°. Que nos roys ont eu, dez le Commancement des decouvertes des lieutenans generaux Dans ces payis et Costes.

3°. Que Les françois les ont habitez avant les Anglois.

4°. Que Les prétensions des Anglois sont Mal fondées.

"La Lecture De ce chapitre fait voir que Champlain prouve invinciblement tous ces chefs, et de maniere que les Anglois n'ont rien de bon à y repondre, de sorte que s'ils veullent être de bonne foy, ils doivent Convenir que tous ces payis appartiennent Légitimement à la france qu'ils s'en sont emparez et qu'ils les Retiennent Contre toute justice. . . .

"Il Est A Remarquer que quoyque par le traité de S^{t}

germain l'angleterre dut restituer tout ce qu'elle Avoit occupé dans la Nouvelle france, et par Consequent toute la Coste depuis baston jusqu'a la virginie inclusivement (car alors les Anglois ne s'etoient pas encore emparez de la Caroline) laquelle Coste est Certainement partie de la Nouvelle france, les Anglois ne l'ont pas Cependant restituée et la gardent encore a present Contre la teneur du traité de St Germain, quoy que la france ne L'ait point Cedée a L'angleterre ni par le dit traité ni par Aucun Autre que je scache.

"Cecy Merite La plus serieuse attention de la france, et qu'elle fasse Entendre serieusement aux Anglois que par le traité de S^t^ germain ils se sont obligez de luy rendre toutte cette Coste, qui incontestablement est partie de la Nouvelle france, Comme je L'ay prouvé cy devant et encore plus au long dans mon 1^r^ memoire et Comme le prouvent Verazan, Champlain, Denis, et toutes les plus anciennes Cartes de l'amerique septentrionale. . . .

"Or Le Commun Consentement de toute l'Europe est de depeindre la Nouvelle france S'étendant au moins au 35e et 36e degrez de latitude Ainsy qu'il appert par les mappemondes imprimées en Espagne, Italie, hollande, flandres, allemagne Et Angleterre même, Sinon depuis que les Anglois se sont Emparez des Costes de la Nouvelle france, ou est L'Acadie, Etechemains L'almouchicois, et la grande riviere de S^t^ l'aurens, ou ils ont imposé a leur fantaisie des Noms de nouvelle Angleterre, Ecosse, et autres, mais il est mal aisé de pouvoir Effacer une chose qui est Connué De toute la Chretienteé D'ou je Conclus,

"1°. Quavant L'Usurpation faite par les Anglois, toute Cette Coste jusqu'au 35e Degre s'appelloit Nouvelle france, laquelle Comprenoit outre plusieurs autres provinces, l'Etechemains, L'almouchicois, et L'acadie. . . .

"Les Anglois Doivent remettre à La france le Port Royal, et La france doit insister vigoureusement sur cette restitution, et ordonner aux françois de Port Royal, Des Mines, et de Beaubassin, et autres lieux De reconaitre sa Majesté tres Chretiene pour leur Souverain, et leur deffendre d'obeir a aucun autre; de plus Commander a tous ces

lieux et payis, et a toute la partie Septentrionale de la Peninsule, ainsi qu'aux payis des Almouchicois et des Etechemains [*Maine, New Hampshire, and Massachusetts*], de Reconaitre le gouverneur de l'isle Royale pour leur Gouverneur.

"Il Est même apropos De Comprendre Dans le Brevet de gouverneur de L'isle Royale tous ces payis jusqu'au Cap Cod. . . .

"Que La france ne doit point souffrir que les Anglois s'etablissent Dans les payis qu'elle n'a pas Cedez.

"Qu'elle Doit incessament s'en remettre en possession, y Envoyer quantite D'habitans, et s'y fortifier de maniere qu'on puisse Arrêter les Anglois que depuis long tems tachent de s'emparer de l'amerique francoise dont ils Conaissent L'importance, et dont ils feroient un meilleur usage que celuy que les francois en font. . . .

"Si les Anglois disent que les payis qui sont entre les rivieres de quinibequi [*Kennebec*] et de Ste Croix font partie de la Nouvelle Angleterre.

Je leurs Repons

"1°. Qu'ils scavent bien le Contraire, que Ces payis ont toujours fait partie de la Nouvelle france, que Les francois les ont toujours possedez et habitez, que Monsr De St Castin gentilhomme francois a toujours eu, et a encore son habitation entre la Riviere de Quinibequi et celle de Pentagoet [*Penobscot*] (que même depuis les usurpations des anglois et leurs etablissements, dans leur Prétenduë Nouvelle Angleterre) les francois ont toujours prétendu que la Nouvelle france s'etend qusqu'au Cap Cod et qu'il en est fait mention dans toutes les patentes de gouverneurs francois.

"2° Que De L'aveu même des Anglois, la Nouvelle Angleterre a une tres petite Etenduë du Costé de L'est, il est facile de le prouver par eux mêmes.

"J'ay Lu une description de la Nouvelle Angleterre et des autres Colonies Angloises, Composée par un Anglois, traduite en francois, imprimée à Paris en 1674 par Loüis

Billaine, voicy les propres termes de Cet autheur Anglois, La Nouvelle Angleterre est au Septentrion de Marylande, au raport du Capitaine Smith, elle a prez de 25 Lieuës de Coste de mer.

" Ainsi selon les Anglois qui sont de Bonne foy, la Nouvelle Angleterre, qui n'a que prez de 25 lieuës de Coste de mer, ne scauroit s'etendre jusqu'e á La Riviere de Quinebequi. C'est tout au plus si elle s'etend jusqu'a deux ou trois lieuës à l'est De Baston.

" Il Semble même que les Anglois ont basti Baston, et en ont fait une ville Considerable à l'extremeté de leur pretenduë Nouvelle Angleterre.

" 1° Pour être a portée et en Etat de s'emparer sur les francois de tout ce qui est à L'est de Baston.

" 2° Pour être en Etat d'Empecher les francois de s'etablir sur toute Cette Coste jusqu à La Karoline inclusivement, laquelle Coste etant de Notorieté publique de la Nouvelle france, à eté usurpez sur La france a qui elle appartenoit alors, et luy appartient Encore, ne L'ayant jamais cedeé. C'est ce que je vais prouver.

" Apres Avoir Invinciblement Convaincu les Anglois que tout ce qui est a L'est de quinibequi a Toujours appartenu et appartient encore a La france, excepté L'Acadie selon ses Ancienes limites, qu'elle a Cedée par force a L'Angleterre par La paix d'utrecht.

" Il faut Que Presentement je prouve que toute La Coste depuis la Riviere quinibequi jusqu' à La Caroline inclusivement appartient par toutes sortes de droits à La france. Sur qui les Anglois L'ont usurpeé, voicy une partie de mes preuves.

" Les françois ont decouvert tous ces payis Avant les Anglois, et en ont pris possession avant Eux. Les Roys de france ont nommé ces payis Caroline et Nouvelle france avant que les Anglois leurs eussent donné des Noms á leur mode pour faire oublier les Noms que les francois Leurs avoient imposez. Et que ces payis Appartenoient à La france.

" Les Roys de france ont Donné des lettres patentes à leurs sujets pour posseder et habiter ces payis, avant que

Jacques 1r et Charles 1r Roys d'Angleterre en eussent donne à Leurs sujets.

"Pour Convaincre les Anglois de ces veritées il faut Lire avec attention ce qu'en ont Ecrit Jean verazan, Champlain, Laet, Denis.

"Les traitez faits Entre La france et L'Angleterre, et Le memoire que j'ay presenté L'anneé Dernier 1719.

"On y Trouvera tant de Choses, lesquelles il seroit trop long de Copier icy, qui prouvent que ces payis ont toujours appartenu de droit a La france, et que les Anglois s'en sont emparez par force, que La france ne les a jamais Cedez à l'angleterre par aucun traité, que je scache.

"Et Partant que La france Conserve toujours son droit sur tous ces payis, et qu'elle a droit de les redemander à l'Angleterre. Comme elle les redemande présentement, ou Bien un Equivalent.

"L'Equivalent que la france demande et dont elle veut bien se Contenter, C'est la restitution de tout ce qu'elle a Cedéé par force à L'Angleterre par Le traité D'utrecht.

"Il Est De l'honeur et de l'interest de l'angleterre d'accorder à la france cette Equivalent.

"1° Parceque n'y ayant point D'honeur à profiter des Malheurs D'un Roy pour Luy faire Ceder par force les payis qui luy appartiennent, il est de l'honeur de L'Angleterre de rendre a la france, ce qu'elle a eté Contrainte de luy ceder, et qu'elle ne possede qu'a ce mauvais tiltre.

"2° Il est aussi Contre la justice et l'honeur de l'angleterre de posseder sans aucun Tiltre, et Contre toute justice les payis qui sont depuis la Riviere de quinibequi jusqu'à la Caroline inclusivement.

"3° Il N'est pas moins de l'honeur et de l'interest de l'angleterre de profiter du moyen que la france veut bien luy presenter, pour sassurer a perpetuite toute Cette Coste, et pour la posseder justemt par la Cession que la france en fera, et de tous ses droits sur ces payis moyennant L'Equivalent proposé.

"4° Parceque L'Angleterre doit Craindre que la france, dont elle ne Doit mepriser ni le Ressentiment ni la puissance, ne trouve une Conjoncture favorable pour faire valoir

ses pretensions et ses droits, et pour Rentrer en possession de tout ce que L'Angleterre Luy a usurpée, et de tout ce qu'elle l'a obligé par force de luy Ceder.

"5° Quand on veut trop avoir, souvent on n'a Rien, et meme on perd ce que L'on Avoit. Il est donc de la sagesse Et de l'interest de l'Angleterre de ne pas pousser trop loin ses demandes, et de Convenir avec La france de sorte qu'elle puisse posseder Avec justice et tranquillement des payis que la france Aura toujours droit de reprendre jusqu'a ce qu'elle en ait fait une Cession libre et volontaire, et qu'il paroisse que L'Angleterre En faveur de Cette Cession luy ait donné un Equivalent.

"La france s'offre donc pour vivre en paix avec l'Angleterre de luy Ceder tous ses droits sur toute la Coste qui est entre la riviere de quinibequi dans la Nouvelle france jusqu'a la Riviere Jourdain, dans la Caroline, de sorte que ces deux rivieres servent de limites aux francois et aux Anglois.

"La france Demande pour Equivalent de la Cession de tant de payis, si grands, si beaux, et si a sa biensceance que l'Angleterre luy rende Et restituë tout ce qu'elle luy à cedé par le traité Dutrecht.

"Si La france ne peut pas engager L'Angleterre à convenir de Cet Equivalent. Elle pouroit (mais Ce ne doit être qu'a L'extremité) Ceder Encore à l'Angleterre la Caroline francoise, C'est a dire, ce qui est au sud de la Riviere Jourdain, Ou bien Ce qui est Entre la Riviere quinibequi, et Celle de Pentagoet. Ou bien leur offrir une somme D'argent.

"Il Semble que L'Angleterre doive estimer Comme un grand Avantage pour Elle, que La france veuille bien Convenir de Cet Equivalent, qui Assure Aux Anglois et leur rend legitime La possession de Cette grande etenduë de Costes qu'ils ont usurpez sur La france, qui ne les a jamais Cedez, qui ne les Cedera jamais, et sur lesqu'elles elle Conservera toujours ses legitimes droit et pretensions, jusqu'a ce qu'elle les ait Cédeés a L'angleterre moyennant un Equivalent raisonnable tel qu'est la Restitution de tout ce que La France luy a Cedé par force a Utrecht.

LIMITES.

"Suposeé L'acceptation de Cet Equivalent par L'une et l'autre Nation.

"La france toujours genereuse Consentira pour vivre en paix avec les Anglois, qu'une ligne tirée depuis l'embouchure de la Riviere de quinibequi, ou bien, depuis l'embouchure de la Riviere de Pentagoet, qui ira tout droit passer á egale distance entre Corlard [*Schenectady*] et les lacs de Champlain et du Saint Sacrement, et joindre la ligne par laqu'elle le sieur de L'isle geographe termine les terres Angloises, jusqu'a la Riviere Jourdain, ou bien jusqu'a La Caroline inclusivem^t^. La france dis-je Consentira que cette ligne serve De borne et limites aux terres des deux Nations, de sorte que tous les payis et terres qui sont entre Cette ligne et la mer appartiendront à L'Angleterre, et que tout ce qui sera au dela de cette ligne appartiendra a La france.

"Dans Le fond il est avantageux a la france de faire incessament regler les limites, tant pour Empecher les Anglois d'empieter toujours de plus en plus sous pretexte de limites Non regleés, que parcequ'il est assuré que si le droit de la france est bien soutenu le réglement lui sera Avantageux, aussi bien que l'equivalent que j'ay proposé.

"Mais il pouroit arriver que les Anglois qui ont demandé le Reglement des limites, voyant qu'il ne doit pas leur etre favorable s'il est fait selon la justice, pourroient bien eux mêmes l'eloigner, afin de pouvoir toujours empieter sur les francois sous pretexte de limites non regleés, et de se mettre toujours en possession des payis Appartenans à la france.

"En ce Cas et aussi au Cas que les Anglois ne veullent pas restituer a la france leur Nouvelle Angleterre et autres payis jusqu'a la Caroline inclusivement qu'ils luy out usurpez, ou bien leur rendre L'Acadie &^c^ pour l'equivalent Dont j'ay parlé.

"1° Il faut que la france mette incessament quantité d'habitans dans le payis qui est entre la riviere de quinibequi et Celle de Ste Croix, lequel payis qui selon les Anglois N'est point en Litige, ni partie de la pretenduë Nouvelle Ecosse,

même, selon l'etenduë imaginaire que luy á donnée leur Roy Jacques 1[r] qui ne la fait Commancer qu'a La riviere Ste Croix, et Celle de quinibequi N'ayant jamais eté Cedé ni par le traite D'utrecht ni par Aucun autre que je seache, et ce payis Ayant toujours appartenu a La france, et eté par elle possedez et habité, M[r] de St Castin gentilhomme francois ayant son habitation entre la riviere de Pentagoet et Celle de quinibequi comme je l'ay Deja dit.

"2° On peut même faire entendre a L'Angleterre que Le Roy donnera Ce payis a la Compagnie des Indes qui seaura bien le deffendre et le faire valoir.

"Que Le Roy donnera aussi a la Compagnie des Indes la Caroline francoise, Comme depandance et province de la loüisiane, a Condition qu'elle y mettera des habitans, et y fera bâtir de bons forts, et une bonne Citadelle pour soutenir et deffendre ce beau payis Contre les Anglois.

"Il Est Certain que si le Roy fait entendre serieusement qu'il est resolu de donner à la Compagnie des Indes non seulement La Caroline francoise, et le payis qui est entre les Rivieres de quinibequi et de Ste Croix, mais aussi de luy Ceder et abandonner tous ses droits sur tous les payis que les Anglois ont usurpez sur la france.

"Il Est Certain Dis je, que les Anglois, Crainte D'Avoir affaire avec une Compagnie si puissante, se resoudront au Reglement des limites, tel que je l'ay proposé, et à rendre a la france toute la Nouvelle Ecosse ou Acadie selon ses Ancienes limites, Enfin tout ce que la france leur à Cedez a Utrecht, moyennant une somme D'Argent, ou bien L'equivalent que j'ay Aussi proposé.

"Je finis Ce memoire en priant de faire une tres serieuse attention aux Exorbitantes prétensions des Anglois et a tout ce qu'ils ont fait Et font encore pour se rendre maitres de la pesche la Moluë, et de L'Amerique francoise.

"En Effet il est tres important que quand on traitera du reglement des limites, La france attaque les Anglois au lieu d'etre sur La defensive, C'est a dire, qu'elle doit demander aux Anglois tout ce qu'ils ont usurpez sur Elle, et le demander vigoureusement.

"C'est peut être le meilleur moyen de les mettre a la

Raison, il est même apropos qu'elle les presse de finir Cette affaire, Dont sans doute La Conclusion luy sera Avantageuse, si on luy rend justice."

II.

DEMANDES DE LA FRANCE (1723).

Archives du Ministère des Affaires Etrangères.

(*Literatim.*)

"Pour tous les Raisons deduites cy devant La france demande a Langleterre.

"1° Qu'Elle laisse jouir Tranquillement la france de Tous les pays qui sont a L'Est de la riviere Quinibequi ou de Celle de St Georges excepté de la seulle ville de Port Royal avec sa banlieüe et de L'accadie selon ses anciennes Limites, C'Est a dire La partie Meridionale de la Peninsule depuis le Cap fourchu jusqua Camseau Exclusivement, Que la france a cedée par la traite d'Utrecht, Tout le reste qui est a L'Est de Quinibequi [*Kennebec*], appartenant a La France en tout souveraineté depuis L'an 1524. Laquélle ne la jamais cedé ny par le Traitté d'Utrecht ny par aucun autre traitté.

"2° Que les Anglois Laissent Vivre Tranquillement sous la domination du Roy les nations Sauvages qui sont dans Les payis a L'Est de Quinibequi et qu'ils Ninquietent point les Missionnaires qui demeureront Chés les d. Nations Ny les françois qui Iront Chés Elles.

"3° Que Les Anglois restituent a la france ce qu'ils ont occupé a L'Est de Quinibequi et qu'ils ne Trouvent pas mauvais que les françois prennent detruisent ou gardent les forts Postes et habitations, que les Anglois ont Etablis, ou Etabliront dans tous les Pays a L'Est de Quinibiqui, ou de la Rivierre St Georges Car quand même il ne Seroist pas sure que Ces d. Païs appartiennent a La France, il suffit qu'ils sont Contesté pour rendre injuste et Violente L'occupation qu'En feroient les Anglois avant que la Contestation fut finie.

"4° Que Les Anglois restituent tout ce qu'ils Occupent

dans la Nouvelle france depuis Le 30e degré jusqua Quinibequi ou jusqua La Rivierre St georges Comme Elle y est obligeé par Le traitté de St germain En Laye En 1632. La france ne luy ayant jamais cedé par aucun Traitté aucune partie de toute La Nouvelle france, sinon La Ville de Port Royal avec sa Banlieüe et lacadie selon ses anciennes Limittes.

"Si les Anglois disent que la France ne s'est point opposeé aux occupations qu'ils ont fait dans la Nouvelle france

"Je Leur repons que la france sy est toujours opposeé et qu'elle s'Est Toujours Maintenuë dans la souveraineté de toute la Nouvelle france, soit en donnant tout ses Pays enconcession, soit en y envoyant des gouverneurs généraux, soit en Nommant Vice Roys de la Nouvelle france Les plus grands Seigneurs du Roÿaume, Tels Ont esté M. Le Comte de Soissons, M. Le Prince de Condé, M. de Montmorency, M. Le Duc de Vantadour, M. Le Cardinal de Richelieu etc. qui des les premiers tems ont este successivement Viceroys de la Nouvelle france et Terres Circonvoisines, par la Lecture de leurs patentes On verra que Nos Roys se sont Toujours Conservé la Souveraineté des pays qui sont Entre le 30e et Le 50e degré, et qu'ils Nont jamais Consenty que les Anglois y fissent aucun Etablissement et que sy-ils y en ont fait çá esté Malgré la france, que avoit trop d'affaires en Europe pour pouvoir les Empecher, Se reservant Toujours ses droits et la Volonté de les faire Valoir quand Elle en Trouveroit une occasion favorable, ce qui pourroit bien arriver un jour, alors on Verroit que L'on ne s'Empare pas Impunement et par Violence, des Domaines d'un Roy de france et qu'il est assés puissant pour se remettre en pocession Tost ou tard de ce qu'on a Usurpé sur luy, C'est a quoy les Anglois deveroient faire attention, et ce qui devroit les obliger de ne pas mepriser Ny maltraitter La France Comme Ils font.

"La france s'Est encore opposeé aux Usurpations des Anglois Les ayant obligé par le traitté de St Germain En 1632, de restituer a la france Tout ce qu'ils avoient jusqual'ors occupe dans la Nouvelle france, Ils Nont pas cepen-

dant Encore fait cette restitution, Mais on leur demande présentement qu'ils la fassent incessammant N'Etant pas juste qu'ils retiennent plus Longtems ce qui ne leur appartient pas, et qu'ils ont promis solennellement de restituer a la france.

"Mais disent Les Anglois Nous sommes Etablis dans La Nouvelle france depuis la Caroline Inclusivement jusqua Quinibequi depuis 1585, jusqua presant 1723. Nous y avons mis quantiteé d'habitans et bastis plusieurs grandes villes. Navons Nous pas prescrit Contre La france par une sy Longue procession."

REPONSE.

"Non parce que La france sy est Toujours opposeé par les Lettres pattentes qu'Elle a donneés aux Concésionnaires Generaux, aux Lieutenants generaux et aux Viceroys de la Nouvelle france.

"Non parce que La france obligea en 1632, par Le traitté de St Germain, Langleterre de luy restituer tous les lieux occupés dans la Nouvelle france par les Anglois, Et que le traitté de Breda en 1667, celuy de Neutralité en 1686, et celuy d'Utrecht en 1713, ne disent rien d'ou on puisse Inferer que la france ait cedé a Langleterre aucune partie de la Nouvelle france, sinon la province de la Cadie selon ses anciennes Limittes, et la seule ville de Port Royal avec ses dépendances ou Banlieüe. Je dis encore que Cette longue possession des anglois, ces Villes baties et ce grand Nombre d'habitans mis par eux dans ces pays Nanéantissent point le droit de la france pour les redemander. . . . .

"Il y avoit Environ 150 ans que les françois avoient abandonné les postes qu'ils avoient alors sur la Coste du Bresil les Portuguais sy Etablirent aussitost y Mirent quantité d'habitans et y batirent de grandes Villes. Ils ne Croyoient pas cependant que pour cela la france fut dechüe de ses droits de proprieté et de souveraineté sur ces pays abandonnés par Elle depuis 150 ans, puisqua Utrecht en 1713 Le Roy de Portugal demanda au Roy qu'il luy abandonnat ses droits sur ces pays, ce qui Le Roy fit en Consideration du Portugal.

"Les Anglois possedoient depuis longues annoés La Jamaique yavoient quantité d'habitans, de forts et de riches Villes, persuadés cependant que les droits de l'Espagne subsisteroient Tant quelle Ny auroit pas renoncé en leur faveur. Ils demanderent a Utrecht Cette renonciation au Roy d'Espagne et il la leur accorda.

"Si les Anglois avoient demandé a la france une Cession de tous ces droits sur les pays occupés par Eux dans la Nouvelle france Il y a apparance que le Roy leur auroit fait cession a des Conditions raisonnables. Ils nont pas demandés cette cession, ou sy ils lont demandeé, elle ne leur a pas esté accordeé les droits de la france subsistent donc Toujours et Elle pretend presentement que les Anglois qui en usent sy mal avec Elle, luy restituënt Tout ce quelle a usurpé dans la Nouvelle france depuis le 30e jusquau 50e degré."

"Mais disent les Anglois Commant pouvoir restituer un sy vaste pays ou nous avons une Infinité d'habitans et un trés grand nombre de belles et riches villes? Une Telle restitution N'Est pas practicable."

Response.

"Javouë qu'il est bien difficile de sy resoudre même aux personnes qui font profession d'aimer L'Equité et La Justice.

"Mais Le Roy aime trop la nation Angloise, a trop de Consideration pour Elle, desire trop luy faire plaisir, et est trop généreux pour exiger d'Elle une Telle restitution Voulant luy donner Un Exemple de la moderation dont il souhaite que Langleterre use a son Egard.

"Il se désistera Volontiers de tous ces droits et consentira que Toute la Coste jusqua 20 Lieuës dans l'Enfoncement des Terres Depuis le 32e degré jusqua la Rivierre de Quinibequi demeure en toute proprieté et souveraineté a perpetuité a Langleterre a condition quelle Sobligera par un traitté solennel et décisif de ne jamais passer ces limites. Que la france ne sera jamais Inquieté par Langleterre dans la Jouissance en proprieté et souveraineté de Ce qui est au

dela de ces 20 lieuës dans lenfoncement des terres et de Tous les pays qui sont a L'Est de la rivierre de Quinibequi, qui de Ce Costé la servira de Limites aux deux Nations, et que Langleterre rendra a la france Le port Royal et la Cadie avec leurs dependances. Enfin Tout ce que la france luy a Cedé par le traité d'Utrecht sans en rien Excepter.

"Cet offre du Roy doit estre agreable a Langleterre et luy faire plaisir, parceque sy elle l'accepte elle possedera a juste Titre cette grande partie de la Nouvelle france, qu'Elle possedera Toujours injustement sy Elle Naccepte pas un offre sy raisonnable que Luy fait Le Roy qui sans cette acceptation Ne renoncera jamais a ses droits de souveraineté sur une sy grande et sy belle partie de la Nouvelle France, droits que les anglois doivent Craindre qu'il Ne fasse Valoir Tost ou tard, Car si puissante que soit Langleterre, Ils ne doivent pas croire que la france ne luy cede rien en puissance ny en quoy que ce soit, et qu'on ne la meprise et maltraitte pas Impunement.

"Sy Les Anglois ont quelques autres titres et quelques autres raysons a alleguer en leur faveur, sy on me veut faire L'honneur de me les Communiquer, Je moffre d'y repondre d'une maniere a les obliger d' avouër qu'ils ont tort, sils sont de bonne foy et si ils aiment La justice et la paix.

ADDITION.

"On vient de me faire voire une carte de la nouvelle france presenté au Roy par les Anglois sur la quelle est tracé par une ligne tout ce qu'ils pretendent en vertu du traitté d'Utrecht.

"Ils y etendent sy loin leurs pretentions dans Les terres, qu'il y a tout lieu de Croire que cette Ligne na pas eté traceé, Ny Cette carte presenteé par ordre et au scû du Sage et judicieux ministre dangleterre, mais par quelqu'Un que donne a penser qu'il veut broüiller L'angleterre avec La france.

"Ce qui donne encore plus de lieu a avoir de luy cette penseé C'est que le traitté d'Utrecht ayant determiné les Limites des deux Nations pour la pesche, par desairs de

vent, quoyque par toutes les nations les airs de vent se tracent en Ligne droite, il les a tracé en Ceintre a L'Est de Lisle de Sable, en quoy il semble avoir Intention de se mocquer de la france et de L'Irriter.

"La prise d'un vaisseau françois dans Le passage de Canceau, La Construction d'un fort a Canceau, Le nom d'albanie donné a la partye de la Nouvelle France qui est entre quinibequi et la ville de Port Royal pays qui n'a point esté Cedé par le traitté d'Utrecht, Les forts Construits, et Les Concessions donnés, Les Nations sauvages, et Les missionnaires maltraités dans ce pays appartenant a la france, ou du moins pretendu et Contesté par Elle.

"Tout cela pourroit bien Venir de quelque Anglois qui voudroit broüiller les deux Nations. C'est aux Anglois pacifiques a le punir et a la france a sopposer a de telles entreprises jusqu ce que les Limites soient regleés d'Une Maniere Equitable.

"Collationné et figuré sur une Copie de Mémoire ou notte en papier non Signeé ni dattée estant au Secrétariat du Chateau St Louis de Quebec ou elle est resteé Par Le Notaire Royal en la prevosté de Quebec y resident soussigné ce jourdhuy Vingt cinq Juillet mil sept cent cinquante.

DU LAURENT.

"François Bigot, Conseiller du Roy en ses Conseils, Intendant de justice, Police, finances et de la marine en la Nouvelle france.

"Certifions a tousqu'il appartiendra que Mr Dulaurent qui a signé la Collation de L'autre part Est notaire Royal en la prevosté de Quebec Et que foy doit Estre ajouteé a sa signature En la d[e] qualité; En temoin de quoy nous avons signeé et fait Contresigner ces presentes par nôtre secretaire et a Icelles fait apposer le Cachet de nos armes. fait en nôtre hotel a Quebec Le p[er] Aoust, mil sept cent Cinquante.

BIGOT

(Cachet)

PAR MONSEIGNEUR

DESCHENAUX."

Endorsed. "Envoyé par Mr Bigot Intend[t] du Canada avec sa lettre au Mis de Puyzieulx du 1er aoust 1750. No 25, 1723."

B.

CHAPTERS XIX., XX., XXI.

THE SIEGE OF LOUISBOURG AS DESCRIBED BY FRENCH WITNESSES.

Lettre d'un Habitant de Louisbourg contenant une Relation exacte et circonstanciée de la Prise de l'Isle Royale par les Anglois. À Québec, chez Guillaume le Sincère, à l'Image de la Vérité. MDCCXLV. [*Extraits.*]

[*Literatim.*]

". . . Le mauvais succès dont cette entreprise (*against Annapolis*) a été suivie, est envisagé, avec raison, comme la cause de notre perte. Les Anglois ne nous auroient peut-être point inquietés, si nous n'eussions été les premiers à les insulter. Notre qualité d'aggresseurs nous a été funeste; je l'ai oüi conter à plus d'un ennemi, & je n'y vois que trop d'apparence. Les habitans de la nouvelle Angleterre étoient interressés à vivre en paix avec nous. Ils l'eussent sans doute fait, si nous ne nous étions point avisés mal à propos de les tirer de cette sécurité où ils etoient à notre égard. Ils comptoient que de part & d'autre, on ne prendroit aucun parti dans cette cruelle guerre qui a mis l'Europe en feu, et que nous nous tiendrions comme eux sur la seule défensive. La prudence le dictoit; mais elle n'est pas toujours la régle des actions des hommes: nous l'avons plus éprouvé que qui que ce soit. . . .

". . . L'expedition de l'Acadie manquée, quoiqu'il y eût tout à parier qu'il reuissiroit par le peu de forces que les ennemis avoient pour nous résister, leur fit faire de serieuses réflexions sur notre crainte, ou notre faiblesse. Selon tous les apparences, ils en conclurent qu'ils devoient profiter d'une aussi favorable circonstance, puisque dès-lors ils travaillerent avec ardeur à l'armement qui leur était necessaire. Ils ne firent pas comme nous: ils se prêterent un secours mutuel: on arma dans tous leurs Ports, depuis l'Acadie jusqu'au bas de la Côte: on dépêcha en Angleterre, & on envoya, dit on, jusqu'à *la Jamaïque* afin d'en tirer tous les secours qu'il seroit possible. Cette entreprise fut

concertée avec prudence, et l'on travailla tout l'hiver pour être prêt au premier beau tems.

"Les préparatifs n'en pouvaient être si secrets, qu'il n'en transpirât quelque chose. Nous en avions été informés dès les premiers instans, & assez à tems pour en pouvoir donner avis à la Cour. . . .

"Nous eumes tout l'hiver à nous. c'était plus qu'il n'en falloit pour nous mettre en état de défense; mais la terreur s'étoit emparée des esprits: on tenait des conseils, dont le résultat n'avoit rien que de bizarre et de puérile; cependant le tems s'écoulait, nous perdions de precieux momens en déliberations inutiles, & en résolutions presque aussitôt détruites que prises. Quelques ouvrages demandoient qu'on les parachevât: il en falloit renforcer quelques-uns, augmenter quelques autres, pourvoir à des postes, visiter tous ceux de l'Isle, voir où la descente étoit plus facile, faire le denombrement des personnes en état de porter les armes, assigner à chacun son poste; enfin se donner tous les soins et les mouvemens ordinaires en pareil cas; rien de tout cela ne se faisoit; de sorte que nous avons été surpris, comme si l'ennemi fût venu fondre sur nous à l'improviste. Nous aurions eu même assez de tems pour nous precautionner mieux qu'on ne l'a fait, depuis le jour où nous vimes paroître les premiers Navires qui nous ont bloqués; car ils n'y sont venues que les uns après les autres, ainsi que je le dirai dans la suite. La négligence & la déraison avoient conjuré la perte de notre malheureuse Isle. . . .

"Ce fut le quatorze [Mars], que nous vimes les premiers Navires ennemis; ils n'étoient encore que deux, & nous les primes d'abord pour des Vaisseaux François; mais nous fumes bien tôt détrompés par leur manœuvre. Le nombre en augmentoit de jour à autre, il en arriva jusqu'à la fin de Mai. Ils croiserent long-tems, sans rien tenter. Le rendez-vous général étoit devant notre Isle, où ils arrivoient de tous côtez; car on avoit armé à l'Acadie, Plaisance, Baston, & dans toute l'Amerique Anglaise. Les secours d'Europe ne vinrent qu'en Juin. C'étoit moins une entreprise formée par la Nation ou par le Roi, que par les seuls habitans de la nouvelle Angleterre. Ces peuples singuliers ont des

Lois & une Police qui leur sont particulières, & leur Gouverneur tranche du Souverain. Cela est si vrai, que, quoiqu'il y eût guerre déclarée entre les deux Couronnes, il nous la déclara lui de son chef & en son nom, comme s'il avoit fallu qu'il eût autorisé son maître. Sa declaration portoit, qu'il nous déclaroit la guerre pour lui, & pour tous ses amis & alliés; il entendoit parler apparemment des Sauvages qui leur sont soumis, qu'on appelle *Indiens*, & que l'on distingue des Sauvages qui obéissent à la France. On verra que l'Amiral *Warren* n'avoit rien à commander aux troupes envoyées par le Gouverneur de Baston, & que cet Amiral n'a été que Spectateur, quoique ce soit à lui que nous nous soyons rendus. Il nous en avoit fait solliciter. Ce qui marque bien l'independance qu'il y avoit entre l'armée de terre & celle de mer que l'on nous a toujours distinguées comme si elles eussent été de differentes Nations. Quelle Monarchie s'est jamais gouvernée de la sorte ?

" La plus grande partie des Bâtimens de transport étant arrivés dans le commencement de Mai, nous les apperçûmes le onze en ordre de bataille, au nombre de quatre-vingt seize venant du côté de Canceaux & dirigeant leur route vers la Pointe plate de la Baye de *Gabarus*. Nous ne doutames plus qu'ils n'y fissent leur descente. C'est alors qu'on vit la nécessité des precautions que nous aurions dû prendre. On y envoya à la hâte un détachement de cent hommes, tirés de la garnison & des Milices, sous le commandement du sieur *Morpain*, Capitaine de Port. Mais que pouvait un aussi faible corps, contre la multitude que les ennemis debarquoient! Cela n'aboutit qu'à faire tuer une partie des nôtres. Le sieur *Morpain* trouva déjà près de deux milles hommes débarqués; il en tua quelques-uns & se retira.

" L'Ennemi s'empare de toute la campagne, & un détachement s'avance jusques auprès de la batterie Royale. Pour le coup, la frayeur nous saisit tous; on parla dès l'instant d'abandonner cette magnifique batterie, qui auroit été notre plus grande défense, si l'on eût sçu en faire usage. On tint tumultuairement divers Conseils là-dessus. Il seroit bien difficile de dire les raisons qui portoient à un aussi étrange

procédé; si ce n'est une terreur panique, que ne nous a plus quitté de tout le Siège. Il n'y avoit pas eu encore un seul coup de fusil tiré sur cette batterie, que les ennemis ne pouvoient prendre qu'en faisant leurs approches comme pour la Ville, & l'assiégeant, pour ainsi dire, dans les régles. On en a dit sourdement une raison sur laquelle je ne suis point en état de décider; je l'ai pourtant entendu assurer par une personne qui était dans la batterie; mais mon poste étant en Ville, il y avoit long-tems que je n'étois allé à la batterie Royale: C'est que ce qui détermina à un abandon si criminel, est qu'il y avoit deux brêches qui n'avoient point été réparées. Si cela est, le crime est encore plus grand, parce que nous avions eu plus de loisir qu'il n'en falloit, pour mettre ordre à tout.

"Quoiqu'il en soit, la résolution fut prise de renoncer à ce puissant boulevard, malgré les représentations de quelques gens sages, qui gémissoient de voir commettre une si lourde faute. Ils ne purent se faire écouter. Inutilement remontrèrent-ils que ce seroit témoigner notre foiblesse aux ennemis, qui ne manqueroient point de profiter d'une aussi grande étourderie, & qui tourneroient cette même batterie contre nous; que pour faire bonne contenance & ne point réchauffer le courage à l'ennemi, en lui donnant dès le premier jour, une si grande espérance de réussir, il falloit se maintenir dans ce poste important le plus que l'on pourroit: qu'il étoit évident qu'on s'y conserveroit plus de quinze jours, & que ce délai pouvoit être employé à retirer tous les canons dans la Ville. On répondit que le Conseil l'avoit résolu autrement; ainsi donc par ordre du Conseil, on abandonna le 13 sans avoir essuyé le moindre feu, une batterie de trente pièces de canon, qui avoit couté au Roi des sommes immenses. Cet abandon se fit avec tant de précipitation, qu'on ne se donna pas le temps d'encloüer les canons de la manière que cela se pratique; aussi les ennemis s'en servirent-ils dès le lendemain. Cependant on se flatoit du contraire; je fus sur le point de gager qu'ils ne tarderoient guères á nous en battre. On étoit si peu à soi, qu'avant de se retirer de la batterie, le feu prit à un baril de poudre, qui pensa faire sauter plusieurs personnes, & brûla la robe

d'un Religieux Récolet. Ce n'étoit pas de ce moment que l'imprudence caracterisoit nos actions, il y avoit long-tems qu'elle s'étoit refugiée parmi nous.

" Ce que j'avois prévu arriva. Dès le quatorze les ennemis nous saluèrent avec nos propres Canons, dont ils firent un feu épouvantable. Nous leur répondimes de dessus les murs ; mais nous ne pouvions leur rendre le mal qu'ils nous faisoient, rasant nos maisons, & foudroyant tout ce qui étoit à leur portée.

" Tandis que les Anglois nous chauffoient de la batterie Royale, ils établissoient une Plate-forme de Mortiers sur la hauteur de Rabasse proche le Barachois du côté de l'Ouest, qui tirerent le seize jour où a commencé le bombardement. Ils avoient des Mortiers dans toutes les batteries qu'ils éleverent. Les bombes nous ont beaucoup incommodé. . . .

" Les ennemis paroissoient avoir envie de pousser vigoureusement le Siège. Ils établirent une batterie auprès de la Plaine de *Brissonnet*, qui commença à tirer le dix-sept, & travaillerent encore à une autre, pour battre directement la Porte Dauphine, entre les maisons du nommé *la Roche* & *Lescenne*, Canonier. Ils ne s'en tinrent point à ces batteries, quoiqu'elles nous battissent en brêche ; mais ils en dresserent de nouvelles pour soutenir les premières. La Plaine marécageuse du bord de la Mer à la Pointe blanche, les incommodoit fort, & empêchoit qu'ils ne poussassent leurs travaux comme ils l'auroient souhaité : pour y rémédier, ils pratiquerent divers boyaux, afin de couper cette Plaine ; étant venus à bout de la dessécher, ils y firent deux batteries qui ne tirerent que quelques jours après. Il y en avoit une au dessus de l'habitation de *Martissance*, composée de sept pièces de canon, prises en partie de la Batterie Royale & de la Pointe plate ou s'etait fait le débarquement. On la destinoit à miner le Bastion Dauphin ; ces deux dernières batteries ont presque rasé la Porte Dauphine.

" Le dix-huit nous vîmes paroître un Navire, avec Pavillon Français, qui cherchoit à donner dans le Port. Il fut reconnu pour être effectivement de notre Nation, & afin de favoriser son entrée, nous fimes un feu continuel sur la Bat-

terie Royale. Les Anglais ne pouvant resister à la vivacité de notre feu, qui ne discontinuoit point, ne purent empêcher ce Navire d'entrer, qu'il leur eut été facile sans cela de couler à fond. Ce petit refraichissement nous fit plaisir; c'étoit un Navire Basque: il nous en étoit venu un autre dans le courant d'Avril.

"Nous n'eumes pas le même bonheur pour un Navire de Granville, qui se présenta aussi pour entrer, quelques jours après; mais qui ayant été poursuivi, fut contraient de s'echouer, & se battit long-tems. Celui qui le commandoit, nomme *Daguenet*, étoit un brave homme, lequel ne se rendit qu'à la dernière extrêmité, & après avoir été accablé par le nombre. Il avoit transporté tous les Canons d'un même côté, & en fit un feu si terrible, que les ennemis n'eurent pas bon marché de lui. Il fallut armer presque toutes leurs Chaloupes pour le prendre. Nous avons sçu de ce Capitaine, qu'il avoit rencontré *le Vigilant*, & que c'étoit de ce malheureux Vaisseau, qu'il avoit apris que l'Isle Royale étoit bloquée. Cette circonstance importe au récit que je vais faire.

"Vous êtes persuadés, en France, que la prise de ce Vaisseau de guerre a occasionné la notre, cela est vraie en quelque sorte, mais nous eussions pu nous soutenir sans lui si nous n'avions pas entassé fautes sur fautes, ainsi que vous avez dû vous en aperçevoir jusqu'à présent. Il est vrai que, graces à nos imprudences, lors que ce puissant secours nous arrivoit, nous commencions à être sans espérance. S'il fût entré, comme il le pouvoit, nous serions encore dans nos biens, & les Anglais eussent été forcés de se retirer.

"*Le Vigilant* parut le vingt-huit ou le vingt-neuf de Mai, à environ une lieue et demie de distance de *Santarge* [*sic*]. Le vent était pour lors Nord-Est, & par conséquent bon pour entrer. Il laissoit la Flotte Anglaise à deux lieues & demi sous le vent. Rien ne pouvoit donc l'empêcher d'entrer; & c'est par la plus grande de toutes les fatalités qu'il est devenu la proye de nos Vainqueurs. Témoins de sa manœuvre, il n'étoit personne de nous qui ne donnât des malédictions à une manœuvre si mal concertée & si imprudente.

"Le Vaisseau, commandé par M. *de la Maisonfort*, au lieu de suivre sa route, ou d'envoyer sa chaloupe à terre pour prendre langue, ainsi que le requéroit la prudence, s'amusa à poursuivre un Corsaire monté en Senault qu'il rencontra malheureusement sous la terre. Ce Corsaire, que commandoit un nommé *Brousse* (Rous) manœuvre d'une autre manière que le Vaisseau Français. Il se battit toujours en retraite, forçant de voiles et attirant son ennemi vers l'Escadre Angloise; ce qui lui réussit; car le Vigilant se trouva tellement engagé, qu'il ne lui fut plus possible de se sauver, quand on eut vu le danger. Deux Frégates l'attaquerent d'abord: M. de la Maisonfort leur répondit par un feu très vif, qui en mit bien-tôt une hors de combat; elle fut démâtée de son grand mât, désemparée de toutes les manœuvres, et contrainte de se retirer. Mais il vint cinq autres Frégates qui chaufferent le Vigilant de toutes parts; le combat que nous voyons à découvert, dura depuis cinq heures du soir jusqu'à dix. Enfin il fallut céder à la force, & se rendre. Les ennemis ont beaucoup perdu dans ce combat, & le commandant Français eut quatre-vingts hommes tués ou blessés; le Vaisseau n'a été que fort peu endommagé.

"On doit dire, à la gloire de M. de la Maisonfort, qu'il a fait preuve d'une extrême valeur dans ce combat; mais il auroit mieux valu qu'il eût suivi sa destination; c'étoit tout ce que les intérêts du Roi exigeoient. Le Ministre ne l'envoyoit pas pour donner la chasse à aucun Vaisseau ennemi; chargé de munitions de guerre & de bouche, son Vaisseau étoit uniquement destiné à ravitailler notre malheureuse Place, qui n'auroit jamais été en effet emportée, si nous eussions pû recevoir un si grand secours; mais nous étions des victimes dévouées à la colère du Ciel, qui a voulu faire servir contre nous jusqu'à nos propres forces. Nous avons sçu des Anglais, depuis notre reddition, qu'ils commençoient à manquer de munitions de guerre, & que la poudre étoit encore plus rare dans leur armée que parmi nous. Ils avoient même tenu quelques Conseils pour lever le Siége. La poudre trouvée dans le Vigilant fit bientôt évanouir cette idée; nous nous apperçumes que leur feu avoit depuis beaucoup augmenté.

"Je sçai que le Commandant de cet infortuné Vaisseau dira, pour se justifier, qu'il étoit important pour lui d'enlever le Corsaire, afin de se regler sur les nouvelles qu'il en auroit appris. Mais cela ne l'excuse point : il sçavoit que Louisbourg étoit bloqué, c'en étoit assez ; qu'avoit-il besoin d'en sçavoir davantage ? S'il craignoit que les Anglais n'eussent été maîtres de la Place, il étoit aisé de s'en instruire, en envoyant son canot ou sa chaloupe, & sacrifiant quelques hommes pour sa sûreté ; la batterie Royale ne devoit point l'inquiéter, nous en aurions agi comme avec le Navire Basque, dont nous facilitâmes l'entrée par un feu excessif. La perte d'un secours si considerable ralentit le courage de ceux qui avoient le plus conservé de fermeté ; il n'étoit pas difficile de juger que nous serions contraints d'implorer la clémence des Anglais, & plusieurs personnes furent d'avis qu'il falloit dès-lors demander à capituler. Nous avons cependant tenu un mois au-delà ; c'est plus qu'on n'auroit pu exiger dans l'abbatement où venoit de nous jetter un si triste spectacle.

"L'Ennemi s'occupa à nous canoner & à nous bombarder toute le reste du mois, sans faire des progrès bien sensibles, & qui lui pussent donner de l'espoir. Comme il ne nous attaquoit point dans les formes ; qu'il n'avoit pratiqué aucuns retranchemens pour se couvrir, il n'osoit s'aprocher de trop près ; tous nos coups portoient ; au lieu que la plûpart des siens étoient perdus : aussi ne tirons-nous que lorsque nous le jugions nécessaire. Il tiroit, lui, plus de cinq à six cens coups de canon par jour, contre nous vingt ; à la verité, le peu de poudre que nous avions, obligeoit à n'en user que sobrement. La mousqueterie étoit peu d'usage.

"J'ai oublié de dire que, dès les premiers jours du siége, les ennemis nous avoient fait sommer de nous rendre ; mais nous répondîmes selon ce que le devoir nous prescrivoit ; l'Officier, deputé pour nous en faire la proposition, voyant que nous rejettions ses offres, proposa de faire sortir les Dames, avec assurance qu'elles ne seroient point insultées, et qu'on les feroit garder dans les maisons qui subsistoient encore en petit nombre ; car l'ennemi, en débarquant, avoit

presque tout brûlé ou détruit dans la campagne. Nous remerçiâmes cet officier, parceque nos femmes & nos enfans étoient sûrement dans les logemens que nous leur avions faits. On avoit mis sur les casemates de longues piéces de bois, placées en biais, qui, en amortissant le coup de la bombe, la rejettent, & empêchent l'effet de son poids. C'est là dessous que nous les avions enterrés.

"Au commencement de Juin les Assiégeans parurent reprendre une nouvelle vigueur; n'étant pas contens du peu de succès qu'ils avoient eu jusques-là, ils s'attacherent à d'autres entreprises, & voulurent essayer de nous attaquer par le côté de la mer. Pour réussir, ils tenterent de nous surprendre la batterie de l'entrée: un Détachement d'environ cinq cens hommes s'y étant transporté pendant la nuit du six au sept, fut taillé en pièces par le sieur *Daillebout*, Capitaine de Compagnie, qui y commandoit, & qui tira sur eux à mitraille; plus de trois cens resterent sur la place, & il n'y eut de sauvés que ceux qui demandoient quartier, les blessés furent transférés dans nos hôpitaux. Nous fîmes en cette occasion cent dix-neuf prisonniers, & n'eûmes que trois hommes de tués ou blessés; mais nous perdîmes un Canonier, qui fut fort regretté. . . .

"Pour sur croit d'infortune, il arrive aux Anglois le 15 une Escadre de six Vaisseaux de guerre, venant de Londres. Ces Vaisseaux croiserent devant la Ville, avec les Frégattes sans tirer un seul coup. Mais nous avons sçu depuis que, si nous eussions tarder à capituler, tous les Vaisseaux se seroient embossés, et nous auroient fait essuyer le feu le plus vif. Leurs dispositions n'ont point eté ignorée, je rapporterai l'ordre qu'ils devoient tenir.

"Les ennemis ne s'étoient encore point avisés de tirer à boulets rouges; ils le firent le dix-huit & le dix-neuf, avec un succès qui auroit eté plus grand, sans le prompt secours qui y fut apporté. Le feu prit à trois ou quatre maisons, mais on l'eut bientôt éteint. La promptitude en ces sortes d'occasions, est la seul ressource que l'on puisse avoir.

"L'Arrivée de l'Escadre étoit, sans doute, l'objet de ce nouveau salut de la part de l'Armée de terre; son Général qui vouloit avoir l'honneur de notre conquête, étant bien

aisé de nous forcer à nous soumettre avant que l'Escadre se fût mise en devoir de nous y contraindre.

"L'Amiral de son côté songeoit à se procurer l'honneur de nous reduire. Un Officier vint pour cet effet, le vingt-un, nous proposer de sa part, que si nous avions à nous rendre, il seroit plus convenable de le faire à lui, qui auroit des égards que nous ne trouverions peut être pas dans le Commandant de terre. Tout cela marquoit peu d'intelligence entre les deux Généraux, & verifie assés la remarque que j'ai ci-devant faite: on n'eut jamais dit en effet que ces troupes fussent de la même Nation & sous l'obéissance du même Prince. Les Anglais sont les seuls peuples capables de ces bizarreries, qui font cependant partie de cette précieuse liberté dont ils se montrent si jaloux.

"Nous répondîmes à l'Officier, par qui l'Amiral Warren nous avoit fait donner cet avis, que nous n'avions point de réponse à lui faire, & que quand nous en serions à cette extrémité, nous verrions le parti qu'il conviendroit d'embrasser. Cette faufaronade eût fait rire quiconque auroit été témoin de notre embarras en particulier; il ne pouvoit être plus grand: cet Officier dût s'en apperçevoir, malgré la bonne contenance que nous affections. Il est difficile que le visage ne décéle les mouvements du cœur. Les Conseils étoient plus frequens que jamais, mais non plus salutaires; on s'assembloit sans trop sçavoir pourquoi, aussi ne sçavoit-on que résoudre. J'ai souvent ri de ces assemblées, où il ne se passoit rien que de ridicule, & qui n'annonçat le trouble & l'indécision. Le soin de notre défense n'étoit plus ce qui occupoit. Si les Anglois eussent sçu profiter de notre épouvante il y auroit eu longtems qu'ils nous auroient emportés, l'épée en main. Mais il faut convenir à leur louange, qu'ils avoient autant de peur que nous. Cela m'a plusieurs fois rappellé la fable du Liévre & des Grenouilles.

"Le but de nos frequens Conseils étoit de dresser des articles de capitulation. On y employa jusqu'au vingt sept, que le sieur Lopinot, Officier, sortit pour les porter au Commandant de terre. L'on se flatoit de les lui faire mieux goûter qu'à l'Amiral. Mais ils étoient si extraordinaires, que malgré l'envie que ce Général avoit de nous voir rendre à

lui, il se donna à peine la patience de les écouter. Je me souviens que nous demandions par un article, cinq piéces de canon, & deux mortiers de fonte. De pareilles propositions ne quadroient guéres avec notre situation.

"Afin de réussir d'un côté ou d'autre, on envoya proposer les mêmes conditions à l'Amiral. Cette négociation avoit été confiée au sieur *Bonaventure*, Capitaine de Compagnie, qui s'intrigua beaucoup auprès de M. Warren, & qui, quoique la plûpart de nos articles fussent rejettez, en obtint pourtant d'assés honorables. On arrêta donc la Capitulation telle que les nouvelles publiques l'ont raportée. Elle nous fut annoncée par deux coups de canon tirés à bord de l'Amiral, ainsi qu'on en avoit donné l'ordre au Sieur *Bonaventure*. A cette nouvelle, nous reprimes un peu de tranquillité: car nous avions sujet d'apprehender le sort le plus triste. Nous craignons à tout moment, que les ennemis, sortant de leur aveuglement, ne se présentassent pour nous enlever d'assaut. Tout les y convioit; il y avoit deux bréches de la longueur d'environ cinquante pieds chacune, l'une à la porte Dauphine, & l'autre à l'Eperon, qui est vis-à-vis. Ils nous ont dit depuis que la resolution en avoit été prise, & l'exécution renvoyée au lendemain. Les Navires devoient les favoriser, & s'embosser de la maniere suivante.

"Quatre Vaisseaux & quatre Frégattes étoient destinés pour le bastion Dauphin: un egal nombre de Vaisseaux & de Frégattes, parmi lesquels étoit le Vigilant, devoit attaquer la piéce de la Grave: & trois autres Vaisseaux & autant de Frégattes avoient ordre de s'attacher à l'Isle de l'entree. Nous n'eussions jamais pû repondre au feu de tous ces Vaisseaux & défendre en même tems nos brêches; de façon qu'il auroit fallu succomber, quelques efforts que nous eussions pû faire, & nous voir réduits à recourir à la clémence d'un vainqueur, de la générosité duquel il y avoit à se défier. L'Armée de terre n'étoit composée que de gens ramassés, sans subordination ni discipline, qui nous auroit fait éprouver tout ce que l'insolence & la rage ont de plus furieux. La capitulation n'a point empêché qu'ils ne nous ayent bien fait du mal.

"C'est donc par une protection visible de la Providence,

que nous avons prévenu une journée qui nous auroit été si funeste. Ce qui nous y a le plus déterminé, est le peu de poudre qui nous restoit : je puis assurer que nous n'en avions pas pour faire trois décharges. C'est ici le point critique & sur lequel on cherche le plus à en imposer au public mal instruit : on voudroit lui persuader qu'il nous en restoit encore vingt milliers. Fausseté insigne ! Je n'ai aucune interêt à déguiser la vérité ; on doit d'autant plus m'en croire, que je ne prétends pas par-là justifier entierement nos Officiers. S'ils n'ont pas capitulé trop tôt ils avoient commis assez d'autres fautes, pour ne les pas laver du blâme qu'ils ont encouru. Il est constant que nous n'avions plus que trent-sept barils de poudre, à cent livres chacun ; voilà ce qui est veritable, & non pas tout ce qu'on raconte de contraire. Nous n'en trouvions même d'abord que trente-cinq ; mais les recherches qu'on fit nous en procurerent deux autres, cachés apparemment par les Canoniers, qu'on sçait être partout accoutumés à ce larcin."

II.

"Lettre de Monsieur Du Chambon au Ministre, à Rochefort, le 2 Septembre, 1745.

Archives de la Marine.

"Monseigneur,

"J'ai l'honneur de vous rendre compte de l'attaque et reddition de Louisbourg, ainsy que vous me l'avez ordonné par votre lettre du 20 de ce mois.

"Nous eûmes connaissance d'un battiment le quatorze mars dernier parmy les glaces qui étaient détachées du golfe ; ce battiment parut à 3 ou 4 lieues devant le port et drivait vers la partie du sud-ouest, et il nous disparut l'après-midi.

"Le 19 du d. nous vîmes encore en dehors les glaces un senaux qui couroit le long de la banquise qui était etendue depuis Escartary jusques au St Esprit, plusieurs chasseurs et soldats, hivernant dans le bois, m'informèrent qu'ils avaient vu, les uns deux battiments qui avoient viré de bord à Menadou, et d'autres qu'ils avoient entendu du canon du

côté du St Esprit, ce qui fit que j'ordonnai aux habitans des ports de l'isle, qui étaient à portée de la ville, de se renger aux signaux qui leur seroient faits.

"Je fis en outre rassembler les habitans de la ville et port de Louisbourg, je formai de ceux de la ville quatre compagnies, et je donnai ordre à ceux du port de se renger à la batterie Royale, et à celle de l'isle de l'entrée, au signaux que je leur fit donner.

"Le 9 avril nous aperçûmes à l'éclaircy de la brume, et parmi les glaces vers la Pointe Blanche, quatre battimens, le premier ayant tiré quelques coups de canon, l'islot lui répondit d'un coup, et le battiment l'ayant rendu sur le champ, cela nous confirma dans l'idée que c'étoient des François qui cherchoient à forcer les glaces pour entrer dans le port. D'ailleurs ils profitoient des éclaircis pour s'y enfourner vers le port, et cela nous assuroit pour ainsi dire, que ce n'étoit pas des corsaires, mais bien des François.

"Etant dans le doute si c'étoit des basttiments François ou Anglois, j'envoyai ordre à Monsieur Benoit, officier commandant au port Toulouse, de dettacher quelqu'un de confiance à Canceau, pour apprendre s'il y avoit des basttiments, et si on y travailloit, ou s'il y avoit apparance de quelque entreprise sur l'isle Royale.

"Monsieur Benoit dettacha le nommé Jacob Coste, habitant, avec un soldat de la garnison et un Sauvage, pour faire quelques prisonniers au dit lieu. Ces trois envoyés mirent pied à terre à la Grande Terre du costé de Canceau; ils eurent le bonheur de faire quatre prisonniers anglois; et revenant avec eux, les prisonniers se rendirent maitres de nos trois François, un soir qu'ils étaient endormis, et nous n'avons pu apprendre aucune nouvelle ni des envoyés ni de l'ennemy.

"Je fus informé, le 22, par deux hommes, venus par terre du port de Toulouse, qu'on entendait tirer du canon à Canceau, et qu'ils travailloient au rétablissement de cette isle, et un troisième arrivé le soir, m'assura avoir été témoin d'un grand combat sur le navire *St-Esprit*, qu'il avoit vu venir du large trois vaisseaux sur quatre qui étoient pour lors à cette coste, et que le feu ayant commencé après

la Jonction de ces bastimens, il avoit duré bien avant dans la nuit, ce qui nous engageoit à nous flatter que nous avions des vaisseaux sur la coste.

" Le 30 du d. nous vîmes sept vaisseaux parmy les glaces, dont il y avoit quatre vaisseaux, deux corvettes et un brigantin, et ils se sont tenus ce jour vers les isles à Dion, sans pavillon, ni flamme.

"Ces battiments continuèrent à se faire voir pendant quelques jours, depuis la Pointe Blanche jusques à Port de Noue, sous pavillon blanc, et les glaces s'étant écartées de la coste, nous apperçûmes, le 7 mai, un navire qui faisait route pour le port; il y entra heureusement; ce navire venoit de St Jean de Luz, commandé par le Sieur Janson Dufoure; il nous apprit qu'il avoit été poursuivi la veille par trois vaisseaux, qu'une frégatte de 24 canons l'avoit joint, et qu'il s'estoit sauvé, après un combat de trois volées de canon et de mousquetterie.

" Le 8 à la pointe du jour, nous eûmes connaissance de tous les vaisseaux au vent du port dans la partie du sud-ouest, ce qui nous occasionna une alerte, les signaux ayant été faits, les habitans de Lorembec et de la Baleine, qui étoient les plus proches de la ville, s'y rangèrent aux postes qui leur étoient destinés, ainsi que les habitans de la ville et du port, le même jour ces vaisseaux prirent à notre vue deux caboteurs frettés par le Roy et qui venoient du port de Toulouse chargés de bois de corde pour le chauffage des troupes et des corps de garde, ils prirent aussy une chaloupe qui venoit des Isles Madame chargée de gibier.

" Comme nous doutions toujours si ces vaisseaux étoient anglois ou françois jusqu'à ce jour, les glaces empêchant l'entrée du port depuis qu'ils avoient paru ensemble, j'avois eu la précaution d'arrêter, conjointement avec monsieur Bigot, deux battiments pour les faire partir en cas de nécessité pour la France, pour porter les nouvelles à Sa Grandeur de la situation où se trouvoit la colonie, et sitôt que nous fûmes confirmés par le prise de ces caboteurs que c'étoit des vaisseaux anglois et qu'il y en avoit d'autres à Canceau, au rapport des équipages qui s'étoient sauvés, nous fîmes partir à la faveur de la brume et de la nuit obscure du 10 mai,

La Société, capitaine Subtil, avec nos lettres pour Monseigneur, pour lui apprendre l'état de la colonie avec les circonstances de vaisseaux qui bloquèrent le port; quand à l'autre bâtiment qui avoit été fretté, nous avons été obligé de la faire couler, après la descente faite par l'ennemy, étant impossible de la faire sortir.

"Les vaisseaux ennemis qui étoient au devant du port, se servant de la chaloupe qu'ils avoient prise chargée de gibier pour descendre et mettre pied à terre à Gabarrus, à notre vue, je fis partir, le 9, un détachement de 20 soldats sous le commandement du sieur de Lavallière pour aller par terre à Gabarrus, et un autre de 39 hommes d'habitans, sous le commandement du sieur Daccarrette dans un charroye pour s'emparer de cette chaloupe, mais ces deux détachements ne purent joindre cette chaloupe; celui de terre y resta deux jours et ne rentra en ville que le onze du soir, et celui du sieur Daccarrette rentra le 12 au matin, ayant été obligé d'abandonner le charroye à fourché où il avoit été à la sortie de Gabarrus.

"Le 11, à trois ou quatre heures du matin, nous eûmes connoissance de dessus les remparts de la ville, d'environ 100 voiles qui parurent du côté de fourché, derrière les isles à Dion, les vents étant de la partie de nord-ouest, ces battiments s'approchoient à vue d'œil, je ne doute pas que ce ne fussent des bastiments de transport, je fis tirer les signaux qui avoient été ordonnés, plusieurs habitans et particuliers n'ont pu s'y rendre, et entr'autres ceux des havres éloignés, la campagne étant investie de l'ennemy, et même plusieurs ont été faits prisonniers voulant se rendre en ville.

"Je fis aussy commander un détachement pour s'opposer à la descente de l'ennemy, et ce détachement au nombre de 80 hommes et 30 soldats, le surplus habitans, partit sous le commandement de Monsieur Morpain et du Sieur Mesilac, il se transporta au-dessous de la Pointe Blanche, â l'endroit où l'ennemy avoit commencé à faire sa descente, il le fit rembarquer dans les voitures, mais pendant le temps qu'il étoit en cet endroit à repousser l'ennemy, celuicy fit faire une autre descente plus considérable de troupes

de débarquement à l'anse de la Cormorandière, entre la Pointe-Plate et Gabarrus.

"Il s'y transporta avec ses troupes, sitôt qu'il en eût connoissance, mais l'ennemy avoit mis pied à terre et s'étoit emparé des lieux les plus propres qu'il jugea pour sa défense, cela n'empêcha pas ce détachement d'aller l'attaquer, mais l'ennemy étant beaucoup plus supérieur en nombre, il fut contraint de se retirer dans le bois; nous avons eu à cette occasion 4 ou 5 soldats tués ou faits prisonniers, ainsy que 4 ou 5 habitans ou particuliers du nombre desquels fut Monsieur Laboularderie; nous eûmes encore 3 ou 4 blessés qui rentrèrent en ville.

"Depuis la retraite de ce détachement l'ennemy acheva son débarquement au nombre de 4 à 500 hommes, ainsy que des planches et autres matériaux, au rapport de ceux du détachement qui rentrèrent les derniers en ville.

"L'ennemy ayant avancé dans la campagne, se fit voir en grand nombre, mais sans ordre, à la portée du canon de la pointe Dauphine et du bastion du Roy.

"Les montagnes qui commandent cette porte étoient couvertes de monde: à deux heures après-midi les canons, qui étoient sur la Barbette, tirèrent sur plusieurs pelotons qui paroissoient défiler du côté du fond de la baye, nous nous aperçûmes aussy qu'ils défiloient en quantité le long du bois vers la batterie royale, je fis fermer les portes et je fis pourvoir sur le champ à la sûreté de la ville et placer environ 1100 hommes qui s'y sont trouvés pour la défendre.

"Sur le soir, monsieur Thiery, capitaine de compagnie qui commandoit à la batterie royale, m'écrivit une lettre par laquelle il me marquoit le mauvois état de son poste, que cela pourroit donner de grande facilités à l'ennemy s'il s'en emparoit, qu'il croyoit pour le bien du service qu'il seroit à propos de travailler à le faire sauter après avoir encloué les canons.

"Je fis à cette occasion assembler le conseil de guerre, monsieur Verrier, ingénieur en chef, ayant aussi été appelé, fit son rapport que cette batterie avoit ses épaulements du costé de la terre démolis dès l'année dernière, que les chemins couverts n'étoient pas palissadés, et qu'il étoit

hors d'état de résister à une attaque par terre de trois à quatre mille homme avec 400 hommes qu'il y avoit dedans pour la défense.

"Sur ce rapport le conseil de guerre décida unanimement qu'il convenoit pour la sûreté de la ville, manquant de monde pour la défendre, de l'abandonner après en avoir encloué les canons et enlevé le plus de munitions de guerre et de bouche qu'on pourroit.

"Je ne dois pas oublier de vous informer que le même conseil de guerre vouloit faire sauter cette batterie; mais que monsieur Verrier, s'y étant opposé fortement, on la laissa subsister.

"J'envoyai l'ordre en conséquence à monsieur Thiery pour abandonner la dite batterie, après qu'il auroit encloué les canons, et enlevé le plus de munitions de guerre et de bouche qu'il pourroit; cet officier travailla le soir à faire enclouer tous les canons; il fit transporter partie des vivres et des munitions et se retira à la ville avec sa troupe vers minuit.

"La dite batterie n'ayant pas été entiérement évacuée ce soir, je fis partir le lendemain les Sieurs St. Etienne, lieutenant, et Souvigny, enseigne, avec une vingtaine d'hommes pour parachever la dite évacuation, ce qu'ils firent à l'exception de tous les boulets de canon et bombes qui y sont restés, n'ayant pas pu les emporter.

"Ayant jugé nécessaire conjointement avec monsieur Bigot de faire couler tous les bastiments qui étoient armés dans le port, pour empêcher l'ennemy de s'en emparer, je commandai, le 12, le sieur Verger, enseigne, avec 5 soldats et des matelots pour faire couler ceux qui etoient vis-à-vis la ville, et le sieur Bellemont, enseigne, avec la même opération au fond de la baye, et retirer l'huile de la tour de la lanterne, ce qu'ils exécutèrent.

"Le 13, je fis sortir toutes les compagnies de milice avec des haches et des engins pour démolir les maisons qui étoient à la porte Dauphine jusqu'au Barruchois, et pour enlever le bois en ville pour le chauffage de la garnison, n'en ayant pas, et pour faire brûler toutes celles qu'on ne pourroit pas démolir, afin d'empêcher l'ennemy de s'y loger.

"Je fis soutenir ces travailleurs par 80 soldats François et Suisses commandé par monsieur Deganne, capitaine, et Rasser, officier Suisse.

"Comme ils finissaient et qu'ils étoient au moment de se retirer en ville, il parut au Barruchois et dans les vallons des hauteurs plusieurs pelotons de l'armée ennemie, il y eût même quelques coups de fusils de tirés par ceux qui étoient les plus près; nous n'eûmes personne de tué ni de blessé, et nos gens virent tomber deux hommes de l'ennemy.

"L'ennemy s'est emparé de la batterie Royale, le 13, et le lendemain il tira sur la ville plusieurs coups de canon de deux qu'il avoit désencloué.

"Le même jour l'ennemy commença aussi à nous tirer plusieurs bombes de 12 pouches, pesant 180 l. et de 9 pouces d'une batterie de quatre mortiers qu'il avoient estably sur la hauteur derrière les plaines, vis-à-vis le bastion du Roy.

"Cette batterie de mortiers n'a pas cessé de tirer de distance en distance, ainsi que douze mortiers à grenades royales que l'ennemy y avoit placés, et deux autres canons qu'ils ont désencloués à la batterie royale, mais ce feu n'a fait aucun progrès jusqu'au 18, et n'a tué ni blessé personne.

"Le 16, je fis partir un exprès en chaloupe pour porter une lettre à monsieur Marin, officier de Canada, qui commandoit un détachement de Canadiens et des Sauvages à l'Acadie, avec ordre de partir pour se rendre en toute diligence à Louisbourg, avec son détachement; c'étoit une course de 20 à 25 jours au plus, s'il avoit été aux mines, ainsi que l'on m'avoit assuré; mais ce detachement étoit parti pour le port Royal lorsque l'exprès y arriva.

"Cet exprès fut obligé d'y aller: il lui remit la lettre dont il étoit chargé, il tint conseil, plusieurs de son party ne voulurent pas le suivre, mais lui s'étant mis en chemin avec ceux de bonne volonté qui voulurent le suivre, il eût toutes les peines imaginables, à ce qu'on m'a assuré, de trouver des voitures dans toute l'Acadie, propres pour son transport.

"Ils s'y embarquèrent environ 3 à 400 dans un bateau de 25 tonneaux et dans environ une centaine de canots.

Comme ils étoient dans la baie à doubler une pointe, ils furent attaqués par un bateau corsaire de 14 canons et autant de pierriers; cet officier soutint l'attaque avec vigueur, et dans le temps qu'il étoit au moment d'aborder le corsaire pour l'enlever, un autre corsaire de la même force vint au secours de son camarade, ce qui obligea le dit Sieur Marin d'abandonner la partie et de faire côte.

"Cette rencontre lui a fait perdre plusieurs jours et il n'a pu se rendre sur les terres de l'Isle Royale qu'au commencement de juillet, après que Louisbourg a été rendu; si ce détachement s'étoit rendu quinze ou vingt jours avant la reddition de la ville, je suis plus que persuadé que l'ennemy auroit été contraint de lever le siège de terre, par la terreur qu'il avoit de ce détachement qu'il pensoit être au nombre de plus de 2500.

"Je dois aussi informer Sa Grandeur que ce détachement a tué et pris, comme il se retiroit du passage de Fronsac, pour aller à l'Acadie, après notre départ, treize hommes d'un corsaire anglois qui étoit à leur passage pour les empêcher de passer, ces hommes ayant été avec leurs canots pour faire de l'eau, ils sont tombés entre les mains de ceux de ce détachement.

"Le 18, messieurs les généraux anglois me sommèrent de rendre la ville, forteresses et terres en dépendant, avec l'artillerie, les armes et les munitions de guerre qui en dépendent sous l'obéissance de la Grande Bretagne, en conséquence de quoy, promettoient de traiter humainement tous les sujets du Roy mon maître qui y étoient dedans, que leurs biens leur seroient assurés, et qu'ils auraient la liberté de se transporter avec leurs effets dans quelque partie de la domination du Roy de France, en Europe, qu'ils jugeroit à propos.

"Je répondis sur le champ à cette sommation que le Roy mon maître m'ayant confié la défense de la place, je ne pouvois qu'après la plus rigoureuse attaque écouter une semblable proposition, et que je n'avois d'autre réponse à faire à cette demande que par les bouches des canons.

"L'ennemy commença à établir, le 19, une batterie de sept pièces de canon dans les plaines et derrière un petit

étang, vis-à-vis la face du bastion du Roy, laquelle batterie n'a pas cessé de tirer des boulets de 12, 18 et 24 depuis ce jour jusqu'à la reddition de la place, sur le casernes, le mur du bastion du Roy et sur la ville; cette batterie étoit, Monseigneur, la plus dangereuse de l'ennemy pour détruire le monde; tous les boulets enfiloient toutes les rues jusqu'à la porte Maurepas et au mur crénelé; personne ne pouvoit rester dans la ville, soit dans les maisons ou dans les rues.

"Aussy pour éteindre le feu de l'ennemy, je fis établir deux pièces de canon de 18 sur le cavalier du dit Bastion du Roy: on fit pour cet effet deux coffres en planches qu'on remplit de fascines et de terres qui formoient deux embrasures par le moyen desquelles les canonniers et ceux qui servirent ces canons étoient à l'abry du feu de l'ennemy.

"Je fis aussy percer en même temps deux embrasures au mur du parapet de la face droite du dit bastion; on y mit deux autre canons de 24.

"Ces quatre canons ont été si bien servis que le feu de l'ennemy de la dite batterie de la plaine a été éteint, puisqu'ils ne tiroient lors de la reddition de la place qu'un canon, et qu'ils ont eu les autres démontés à la dite batterie, ainsy que ceux de nos gens qui ont été voir cette batterie, après la reddition de la place, m'en ont rendu compte.

"Le matin du 20, je fis assembler messieurs les capitaines des compagnies pour prendre un party s'il convenoit de faire des sorties sur l'ennemy. Il fut résolu que la ville étoit entièrement dénuée de monde, qu'il étoit préjudiciable d'en faire, qu'à peine on pourroit garder les remparts avec les 1300 hommes qu'il y avoit dans la ville y compris les deux cent de la batterie royale.

"Je fis masquer la porte Dauphine en pierre de taille, fascines et terre de l'épaisseur d'environ dix-huit pieds, ainsi que les deux corps de garde qui sont joints. Sans cet ouvrage l'ennemy auroit pu entrer en ville dés le lendemain qu'il auroit tiré de la batterie de Francœur; cette porte n'etoit pas plus forte que celle d'une porte cochère, les murs de la dite porte et des corps de garde n'avoient que trois pieds ou environ d'épaisseur. La dite porte n'étoit pas non

plus flanquée et n'avoit pour toute défense que quelques créneaux aux corps de garde, desquels on ne pouvoit plus se servir sitôt qu'on étoit obligé de garnir les dits corps de garde de pierres, de terre.

"J'ordonnai qu'on fit des embrasures de gazon et de terre, n'ayant pas le temps d'en faire de pierre, aux quatre canons qui étoient sur la batterie du bastion Dauphin, sur le corps de garde des soldats, joignant la porte du dit bastion, afin d'empêcher l'ennemy en ses travaux sur les hauteurs qui étoient devant la dite porte; lesquelles embrasures furent faites.

"Tous les flancs des bastions de la ville furent aussy garnis des canons des corsaires et autres qui se sont trouvés en ville.

"L'ennemy ayant calfeutré une goelette qui étoit échouée au fond de la baye depuis l'année dernière, il l'a remplit de bois, goudron et autres matières combustibles, et à la faveur d'une nuit obscure et d'un vent frais du nord-nord-est qu'il fit le 24, il nous l'envoya en brûlot sur la ville.

"Tout le monde passoit toutes les nuits sur les remparts, nous attendions de pied ferme l'ennemy, plustôt que des artifices de cette nature, et ce brûlot ayant été s'échouer au dehors de la ville vis-à-vis du terrain du Sr Ste Marie ne fit pas l'effet que l'ennemy s'attendoit.

"L'ennemy s'étant emparé de la hauteur de Francœur qui est à la queue du glacis de la porte Dauphine, il a commencé à ouvrir des boyaux et former deux batteries malgré le feu continuel de nos canons de la barbette et du bastion Dauphin et du flanc droit du bastion du Roy et de la mousqueterie, et ces deux batteries n'ont point cessé de tirer depuis le 29 jusqu'à la reddition de la place des boulets de 18, 24, 36 et 42, pour battre en brèche la porte Dauphine et la flanc droit du bastion du Roy.

"L'ennemy, faisant plusieurs mouvements au fond de la baye et à la hauteur de la Lanterne, monsieur Vallé, lieutenant de la Compagnie des Canonniers, vint m'avertir que l'ennemy pourroit faire ces mouvements à l'occasion de plusieurs canons de dix-huit et de vingt-quatre qui avoient été mis au carénage pour servir de corps de garde depuis

environ dix ans. Que parmy ces canons il y en avoit plusieurs en état de servir, qu'il avoit informé les Gouverneurs de cy-devant plusieurs fois que l'ennemy pourroit les transporter à la tour, établir une batterie pour battre l'isle de l'entree et les vaisseaux qui voudroient entrer.

"Sur un avis aussy important, et l'ennemy ayant aboré pavillon à la tour de la Lanterne, je fis faire un détachement de cinq cent jeunes gens du pays et autres de la milice et des flibustiers, sous les ordres du Sieur de Beaubassin, pour aller voir si cela étoit vrai, tâcher de suprendre l'ennemy ou empêcher de faire leurs travaux en cet endroit.

"Ce détachement partit en trois chaloupes le 27 may avec chacun douze jours de vivres et les munitions de guerre nécessaires qui leur furent fournies des magasins du Roy; il mit pied à terre au grand Lorembec.

"Le lendemain, faisant son approche à la tour, il fut découvert par l'ennemy qui étoit au nombre d'environ 300.

"Ils se tirèrent quelques volées de mousqueterye, et se séparèrent, ce détachement ne voyant pas son avantage et plusieurs ayant lâché le pied, il fut contraint de se retirer dans le bois, pour brûler s'il lui étoit possible les magasins qu'il y avoit, on l'avoit assuré que cela étoit aisé, que l'ennemy dormoit avec sécurité en cet endroit.

"Koller qui étoit second du dit Sieur de Beaubassin, venant de St. Pierre par terre, quelques jours auparavant, avait été dans une des barraques du dit camp et avoit emporté une chaudière sans être découvert, ce détachement, dis-je, étoit à un demi quart de lieue à l'habitation du dit Koller, il avoit envoyé des découvreurs en attendant la nuit, mais ils eurent le malheur dêtre découverts par une douzaine d'Anglois qui se trouvèrent aux environs, ce qui fit que l'ennemy détacha un party considérable qui fut pour les attaquer. Le sieur de Beaubassin fut encore obligé de se retirer après quelques coups tirés de part et d'autre: l'ennemy, depuis lors cherchoit partout ce détachement, et plusieurs de ceux-ci ayant été obligés de jeter leurs vivres pour se sauver, ils étoient sans vivres pour passer leur douze jours, et plusieurs qui étoient des havres voisins l'avoient abandonné et s'étoient retirés chez eux; il se trouvoit

par conséquent sans vivres et trop faibles pour résister à l'ennemy.

"Il fut donc obligé d'aller au petit Lorembec pour prendre des chaloupes afin de rentrer dans la ville; il se trouva en ce havre environ 40 Sauvages de la colonie qui avoient détruit, il y avoit deux ou trois jours, 18 à 20 Anglois qu'ils avoient trouvés qui pillaient ce havre.

"Comme ils étaient à même d'embarquer dans les chaloupes, il leur tomba un détachement de 2 à 300 Anglois. Les Sauvages se joignèrent à ce détachement et ces deux corps faisaient environ 120 hommes qui tinrent pied ferme à l'ennemy.

"Le feu commença de part et d'autre vers les deux heures et dura pendant plus de quatre, les Anglois avoient même été repoussés deux fois et ils auroient été défaits si dès le commencement de l'action, ceux-ci n'avoient pas envoyé avertir de leurs gens qui étoient à la batterie royale et à la tour et s'il ne leur étoit pas venu à l'entrée de la nuit un party considérable qui commença à vouloir l'entourer.

"Notre détachement voyant qu'il n'y avoit pas moyen de résister et manquant de munitions, plusieurs ayant tiré jusqu'à leur dernier coup, il se retira dans les bois, l'ennemy, supérieur comme il étoit, les poursuivit une partie de la nuit, notre detachement fut contraint de se retirer à Miré et de passer la rivière.

"Nous avons eu en cette occasion deux hommes de tués et environ 20 de blessés ou prisonniers. Monsieur de Beaubassin fut du nombre des blessés, il reçut une balle au gras de la jambre et après une heure et demie de combat, ne pouvant résister à sa blessure, il se retira. Le sieur Koller continua le combat jusqu'à la fin.

"Le dit sieur de Beaubassin, s'étant rendu en ville quelques jours après sixième dans une pirogue, m'informa de ce qui s'étoit passé à l'occasion de son détachement, que le surplus étoit refugié à Miré où il l'avait laissé sous la conduite de Koller, qu'il lui manquoit des vivres et des munitions de guerre ainsy qu'aux Sauvages.

"Sur ce rapport je fis partir une chaloupe avec 20 quarts de farine et autres vivres et des munitions, tant pour ce

détachement, celui de monsieur Marin que j'attendois tous les jours, que pour les Sauvages.

"On trouva Koller avec ses gens, monsieur Marin n'y étoit pas et les Sauvages s'étoient retirés à leur village.

"Koller rentra en ville le 14 juin en chaloupe avec ceux de son détachement et les quelques autres qu'il trouva à Miré, il eût bien de la peine à passer la nuit parmy bâtiments de l'ennemy qui croisoient depuis Gabarrus jusqu'à Escatary.

"Nous avons appris depuis la reddition de la place, par des personnes de probité, que l'ennemy avoit eu au moins 150 homme de tués, et 90 de blessés au choc du petit Lorembec.

"Les canons de la porte Dauphin et ceux du flanc droit du Bastion du Roy, ne joignant pas bien la batterie que l'ennemy avoit fait sur les hauteurs de Francœur à la porte Dauphine, on perça trois embrâsures à la courtine de la grave pour battre à revers la batterie de l'ennemy de la hauteur de Francœur. Ces trois embrâsures où on avoit placé du canon de 36 furent ouvertes les 30 mai, et firent un effet merveilleux; le premier jour on leur démonta un de leurs canons, et leurs embrâsures furent toutes labourées, cela n'empêcha pas le feu continuel de l'ennemy, et quant à la batterie ce que nous défaisions le jour, ils le refaisoit la nuit.

"Le même jour, sur les trois heurs, nous eûmes connoissance d'un gros vaisseau qui donnoit chasse à un senau et ensuite qui se battoit avec le dit senau et une frégatte à environ 4 lieues du fort vers le sud-est, en même tems trois vaisseaux ennemis, qui étoient en passe vers le Cap Noir et la pointe Blanche, courrurent dessus; le gros vaisseau après s'être battu longtems prit la chasse sans doute quand il eut connoissance des trois qui courroient sur lui, et nous avons entendu tirer du canon jusque vers les 9 à 10 heures du soir, nous avons appris depuis que ce vaisseau étoit le *Vigilant*.

"J'ordonnai qu'on tirât de la poudrière du Bastion Dauphin les poudres qui y étoient et les fis transporter sous la poterne de la courtine qui est entre le Bastion du Roy et celui de la Reine.

"Comme l'ennemy avait coupé par les boulets de la batterie de Francœur, les chaines du pont levi de la porte Dauphine, j'ordonnay aussy de couper le pont de la dite porte.

"Le canon de l'ennemy de la batterie de Francœur qui battoit le flanc droit du bastion du Roy, faisant beaucoup de progrès et entr'autres aux embrasures, je fis commencer à faire percer le mur de la face du bastion Dauphin de deux embrasures, pour y mettre deux canons, cet ouvrage malgré la mousqueterie que l'ennemy tiroit toujours, fut mis en état et notre canon a tiré et fut servi autant qu'on pouvoit désirer sur celui de l'ennemy.

"L'ennemy a aussi étably une batterie de cinq canons sur les hauteurs des Mortissans et a commencé à tirer le 2 juin des boulets de 36 et 42, en brèche sur le bastion Dauphin et sur l'éperon. La guérite a été jetée à bas, et une partie de l'angle saillant, le même jour. Cette batterie a déboulé l'épéron de la porte Dauphine en ses embrasures, lesquelles ont été racommodées plusieurs fois, autant bien qu'on pouvoit, à pierre sèche, avec des pierres de taille et des sacs de terre.

"Le même jour l'escadre ennemye s'augmenta par l'arrivée d'un vaisseau d'environ 40 à 50 canons, et nous vismes aussy, parmy cette escadre, un vaisseau désemparé, qu'on nous a dit depuis être celui que nous avions vu se battre le 30 may.

"Le 5 l'ennemy a envoyé vers les deux heures du matin de la batterie royale, un brulot qui s'est échoué à la calle Frédéric où il a brûlé sur une göelette, il n'a pas fait d'autre mal, quoiqu'il fut chargé de matières combustibles et de bombes qui firent leur effet; toutes les batteries de l'ennemy ne cessèrent point de tirer, pendant ce temps nos gens étoient comme de coutume tout le long des remparts et du quay, à essuyer ce feu avec intrépidité.

"La nuit du 6 au 7 nous eumes une alarme générale de l'isle de l'entrée; l'ennemy, voulant enlever cette batterie, s'embarqua au nombre de 1000 sur 35 barques, 800 autres venant derrière devoient les soutenir. La nuit étoit très obscure et faisoit une petite brume.

"Ces premiers furent mettre pied à terre, les uns à la

Pointe à Peletier, les autres vis-à-vis le corps des casernes, et le surplus au débarquement de la dite isle; l'ennemy en debarquant commença à crier *hourrah* par trois fois; ils attachèrent même environ 12 échelles aux embrasures afin de les escalader, mais Monsieur D'Aillebout, qui commandoit à cette batterie, les reçut à merveille; le canon et la mousqueterie de ceux de l'isle fut servi au mieux, toutes les barques, furent toutes brisées ou coulées à fond; le feu fut continuel depuis environ minuit jusqu'à trois heures du matin.

"Le dit S D'Aillebout ainsy que les Srs Duchambon, son Lieutenant, et Eurry de la Perrelle, son enseigne, étoient les premiers à monter sur les embrasures et faire feu sur les ennemis pour montrer à leurs soldats l'exemple, et aux autres qui étoient avec eux à la dite batterie.

"Les soldats firent même plusieurs fois descendre leurs officiers des embrasures, leur alléguant qu'ils ne devoient point ainsi s'exposer, qu'ils n'avoient qu'à les commander et qu'ils en viendroient à bout; à la fin l'ennemy fut contraint de demander quartier. Les huit cents qui devoient soutenir les premiers n'osèrent pas s'approcher et s'en furent: on fit 119 prisonniers, plusieurs blessés sont morts la même journée, et l'ennemy a eu plus de 250 de tués, noyés ou de blessés, ne s'étant sauvés, au rapport de nos prisonniers qui étoient à la batterie royale, que dans deux barges qui pouvoient contenir environ 30 hommes, parmy lesquels il y avoit plusieurs de blessés.

"L'ennemy pouvant attaquer la ville avec des barges par le quay, j'ordonnay une estacade de mâts qui prenoit depuis l'eperon du bastion Dauphin jusques à la pièce de grave, et cette estacade a été parachevée le 11 juin. L'ennemy qui s'étoit aperçu de cet ouvrage, n'a pas cessé de tirer des canons de ses batteries, sur les travaillants, mais inutilement.

"Les ennemis ayant toujours continué leurs travaux à la tour de la Lanterne, malgré le feu continuel de bombes et de canons de la batterie de l'isle de L'entrée, il fut décidé qu'il étoit nécessaire de blinder les casernes et la boulangerie de la dite isle, et le bois manquant pour cet

ouvrage le magasin du Sieur Dacarrette fut démoli pour cela.

"Le feu continuel des batteries de l'ennemy ayant démoly les embrasures du flanc droit du bastion du Roy, où nous avions six canons de dix-huit et de vingt-quatre qui tiroient continuellement, et ces canons ne pouvant pas être servis, j'ordonnay qu'on fit aussy des contremerlons et des embrasures en bois, à quoi on y travailla avec toute la diligence possible, et ces embrasures étant parachevées le 19 juin, le canon tira toujours; mais ces mêmes embrasures n'ont pas laissé d'être démantibulées aussy par le canon de l'ennemy.

"Depuis que la batterie de martissan a été établie, elle n'a pas cessé de tirer en brèche sur la porte Dauphin et sur l'éperon. L'éperon a été tout démantibulé et racommodée plusieurs fois, ainsy que je l'ai dit ci-devant; les embrasures qui battent le long du quay ont aussy été démantelées, par cette batterie et celle de Francœur, et personne ne pouvoit rester derrière le mur du quay qui a été tout criblé, les boulets de 24, 36 et 42 le perçant d'outre en outre.

"Le 18, messieurs les généraux anglois m'envoyèrent un officier avec pavillon, portant une lettre de monsieur Warren chef de l'escadre et une autre de Monsieur de la Maisonfort, capitaine de vaisseau. Par la première ce général se plaignait des cruautés que nos François et Sauvages avoient exerceés sur ceux de sa nation, et que si, à l'avenir, pareille chose arrivoit, il ne pourroit pas empêcher ses gens d'en agir de même.

"Monsieur de la Maisonfort m'apprenoit sa prise, le 30 mai, et qu'il avoit tout lieu d'être satisfait du traitement qu'on lui faisoit, ainsy qu'à ses officiers et matelots, et de punir sévèrement, etc.

"Je répondis à celle de monsieur Warren qu'il n'y avoit point de François parmy les Sauvages qui avoient usé ainsi qu'il disoit de cruauté, comme de fait il n'y en avoit pas, qu'il devoit être persuadé que je négligeray rien pour arrêter le cours des cruautés des Sauvages autant qu'il me seroit possible de communiquer avec eux, etc.

"A celle de monsieur de la Maisonfort, que je ferai défendre aux Sauvages, lorsque je pourrai avoir communication avec eux, d'en user mieux [*sic*] par la suite, qu'il n'y avoit aucun des François avec eux lorsqu'ils ont usé de cruautés, etc., et l'officier porteur de ces lettres partit sur le champ.

"Le 21, la batterie que les ennemis ont établie à la tour de la Lanterne de 7 canons et un mortier a commencé à tirer sur celle de l'isle de L'entrée avec des boulets de 18 et un mortier de 12 pouces, pesant 180 l. et le feu de la dite batterie n'a pas cessé de tirer jusqu'à la reddition de la place, malgré le feu continuel de celle de l'isle.

"Les batteries de l'ennemy faisant un progrès considérable, malgré notre feu des canons du bastion du Roy, bastion Dauphin, de la pièce de la grave, et de la mousqueterie à la brèche de la porte Dauphine et aux corps de garde joignants, j'ordonnai à Monsieur Verrier, ingénieur, de faire un retranchement dans le bastion Dauphin pour défendre l'assaut que l'ennemy pourrait donner par la brèche. Cet ouvrage qui prenoit depuis le quay jusqu'au parapet de la face du bastion Dauphin, fut mis en état le 24 après bien des travaux de nuit.

"Il se fit le même jour une jonction de 4 vaisseaux, dont deux de 60, un de 50 et l'autre de 40 canons, avec ceux qui bloquoient le port. Ces vaisseaux sitôt qu'ils eurent tiré les signaux de reconnaissance s'assemblèrent et après s'être parlés, ils furent vers la baye de Gabarrus.

"Le lendemain les vaisseaux ennemis au nombre de 13 mouillèrent en ligne vers la Pointe Blanche à environ 2 lieues du port de Louisbourg. L'ennemy fit faire en même temps et le lendemain trois piles de bois pour des signaux sur les hauteurs qui sont à l'ouest du port de Louisbourg.

"Je ne puis pas m'empêcher d'informer Sa Grandeur et de lui dire avec vérité que toutes les batteries de l'ennemy soit de mortier ou de canon n'ont pas cessé de tirer depuis les jours qu'ils les ont établis, de même que la mousqueterie, sans discontinuer, de la batterie de Francœur; que toutes les maisons de la ville ont toutes été écrasées, criblées et mises hors d'état d'être logées; que

le flanc du bastion du Roy a été tout démoli, ainsy que les embrasures en bois qu'on y avoit remplacées; qu'ils ont fait brèche à la porte Dauphine, le corps de garde joignant, et qu'il étoit praticable au moyen des fascines qu'ils avoient transporté pendant deux jours à la batterie de Francœur; que l'eperon joignant le corps de garde de l'officier de la porte Dauphine étoit tout demantelé, ainsi que les embrasures du quai, malgré le feu continuel de tous les canons, mortiers et mousqueterie que nous tirions de la ville et qui étoient servis avec toute la vigueur et l'activité qu'on pouvoit espérer en pareille occasion.

"La preuve en est assez évidente, Monseigneur, puisque de 67 milliers de poudre que nous avions au commencement du siège, il nous n'en restoit, le 27 juin, que 47 barils en ville, laquelle quantité m'étoit absolument nécessaire pour pouvoir capituler; nous avons aussi tiré toutes les bombes de 12 pouces que nous avions et presque toutes celles de 9 pouces.

"Je dois rendre justice à tous les officiers de la garnison, aux soldats et aux habitans qui ont défendu la place, ils ont tous en général supporté la fatigue de ce siège avec une intrépidité sans égale, pendant les 116 [?] jours qu'il a duré.

"Passant toutes les nuits au chemin couvert de la porte Dauphine, depuis que l'ennemy avoit commencé à battre en brèche cet endroit, à soutenir les travaillants qui otoient les décombres sur les remparts aux portes qui leur étoient destinées, sans se reposer aucune nuit et pour le jour n'ayant pas un seul endroit pour sommeiller sans courir risque d'être emporté par les canons de l'ennemy qui commandoient toute la ville.

"Aussy tout le monde étoit fatigué de travail et d'insomnie, et de 1300 que nous étions au commencement du siège, 50 ont été tués, 95 blessés hors d'état de rendre service, plusieurs étoient tombés malades par la fatigue, aussy les remparts qui n'étoient au commencement du siège garnis que de 5 à 5 pieds, se trouvoient presque tous dégarnis le 26 de juin lorsque les habitans de la ville me présentèrent leur requête tendant à ce que les forces de l'ennemy soit de terre et de mer, augmentant tous les jours, sans qu'ils nous

parvint aucun secours ni apparence d'en avoir d'assez fort pour forcer l'ennemy, il me plût capituler avec les généraux afin de leur conserver le peu qu'il leur restoit.

"Cette requête, Monseigneur, me toucha jusqu'au plus vif de mon âme. D'un côté je voyois une place telle que Louisbourg et qui a coûte bien des sommes au Roi, au moment d'être enlevée par la force de l'ennemy qui avoit une brèche assez practicable pour cela et des vaisseaux en ligne qui s'installoient depuis deux jours.

"D'autre côté, il me paroissoit un nombre d'habitans, tous chargés de familles, au moment de périr, perdre par conséquent le fruit de leurs travaux depuis le commencement de l'etablissement de la colonie.

"Dans une conjoncture aussy délicate, je fis rendre compte à monsieur Verrier, ingénieur en chef, de l'état des fortifications de la Place, et à monsieur de Ste Marie, capitaine chargé de l'artillerie, de celui des munitions de guerre; l'un et l'autre me firent leur rapport, je fis tenir conseil de guerre qui décida unanimement que vu les forces de l'ennemy et l'état de la Place il convenoit de capituler.

"J'écrivis une lettre à le sortie du Conseil à messieurs les généraux anglois, je leur demanday une suspension d'armes, pour le temps qu'il me seroit convenable pour leur faire des articles de capitulation aux conditions desquelles je leur remettrois la Place.

"Monsieur de Laperelle, fils, qui étoit porteur de cette lettre, me rapporta le même soir leur réponse par laquelle ils me donnoient le temps jusques au lendemain à huit heures du matin, et que si pendant ce temps, je me déterminois à me rendre prisonnier de guerre, je pouvois compter que je serois traité avec toute la générosité possible.

"Je ne m'attendois pas à une telle réponse, aussy le lendemain 27, je leur envoyai par Monsieur de Bonnaventure les articles de capitulation avec une seconde lettre, par laquelle je leur mandai que les conditions faites la veille étoient trop dures, que je ne pouvois les accepter et que c'étoit à ceux que je faisois par mes propositions que je consentirois à leur remettre la place [*sic*].

"Messieurs les généraux ne voulurent pas répondre par apostille à ces propositions, mais ils me renvoyèrent leur réponse séparée par le dit Sieur de Bonnaventure; cette réponse m'accordoit partie des articles que j'avois demandés, mais ceux qui m'étoient le plus sensible et glorieux, qui étoient ceux de sortir de la Place, avec les honneurs de la guerre, avec arme et bagage, tambour battant et drapeaux déployés, ne s'y trouvoient pas insérés, aussy je leur écrivis sur le champ deux lettres, l'une au chef d'escadre et l'autre au général de terre, que je ne pouvois consentir à laisser sortir les troupes de la place sans ces articles qui étoient des honneurs dûs à des troupes qui avoient fait leur devoir, que cela accordé je consentois aux articles.

"Messieurs les généraux m'écrivirent en réponse qu'ils accordoient cet article et monsieur Warren augmenta des conditions pour la reddition de l'Isle et de la Place.

"Les ratifications ont été signées de part et d'autre, mais messieurs les généraux Anglois bien loin d'avoir exécuté de leur part la dite capitulation, ainsy que j'ai fait du mien en tout son contenu, ils ont manqué en plusieurs articles.

"Au premier article il est dit que tous les effets mobiliers de tous les sujets du Roy de France qui étoient dans Louisbourg leur seroient laissés et qu'ils auroient la liberté de les emporter avec eux dans tels ports d'Europe de la domination de leur Roy qu'ils jugeront à propos.

"Tous les battiments qui étoient dans le port appartenant aux particuliers, faisaient partie de leurs effets mobiliers, cependant les Anglois s'en sont emparés et les ont garde pour eux.

"Tous les particuliers généralement quelconques qui ont passé en France n'ont pu emporter aucune armoire, chaise, fauteuil, table, bureau, chenets et autres meubles de cette nature, ny même aucune grosse marchandise, messieurs les généraux n'ayant point fourni des battiments pour cela nécessaires, ils n'ont pas été pillés, mais à bien examiner la chose, ne pouvant pas emporter le peu de meubles qu'ils avoient faute de battiments, ils ont éte obligés de les laisser, ce qu'ils ont laissé à Louisbourg est tout comme si on leur avait pillé, à moins que Sa Grandeur ne fasse faire raison par la cour d'Angleterre.

"Ils ont encore manqué à cet article, pendant le temps que j'étois à la colonie; ils ont fait partir à mon insu 436 matelots et particuliers pour Baston; ils étoient embarqués ainsi que les troupes sur des vaisseaux de guerre jusqu'à leur embarquement pour la France, mais un matin le vaisseau dans lequel ils étoient eut ordre de partir pour Baston, et fit voile.

"J'en fus informé, j'en portai ma plainte, mais cela n'aboutit à autre chose sinon qu'ils n'avoient pu faire autrement faute de vivres et de battiment et qu'on les feroit repasser de Baston en France.

"Ces matelots n'ont pas été les seuls, j'ai été informé que depuis mon départ, ils ont agi de même à l'égard des familles qui n'avoient pu être placées sur les bâtiments de transport qu'ils avoient destiné pour la France, si les généraux anglois avoient voulu, les bâtiments qui ont transporté ces familles à Boston les auroient transportées pour France, ils avoient des vivres en magazin beaucoup plus que pour la traversée; mais ils n'ont agi ainsi qu'afin de disperser la colonie.

"Le 2e article regarde les battiments qui étoient dans le port et ceux qu'ils devoient fournir en cas que les premiers ne fussent pas suffisants pour faire le transport.

"J'ay fait mes remarques à ceci au précédent article, c'est un des plus considérables par rapport à la valeur des choses, y ayant quantité de battiments dans le port qui étoient coulés ou échoués, et dont l'ennemy ne pouvoit en faire sortir aucun du port ny faire aucun usage tant que nos batteries auroient existé.

"Au surplus si plusieurs particuliers de la ville n'avoient pas acheté des battiments les Anglois auroient profité de tous les effets qu'ils y ont chargés, ainsi qu'ils ont fait de ceux qui n'avoient pas le moyen d'en acheter, ces familles auroient été contraintes, ainsi que celles qui se sont embarquées en payant de gros frets, de passer à Boston.

"A l'égard du dernier article des armes, tous les habitans avoient les leurs et les ont remises en dépôt sitôt la reddition de la place; ces armes étoient partie de leurs effets, les ennemis n'ont pas voulu les rendre, je m'en suis plaint, ils

m'ont fait réponse, lorsqu'ils ont envoyé les 436 matelots, qu'ils leur enverroient leurs armes, les autres habitans sont dans le même cas.

"Je crois devoir vous informer, Monseigneur, qu'ils se sont aussy emparés de tous les effets et ustensils de l'hôpital et des magasins du Roi: par la reddition de la Place ils n'ont que la ville avec les fortifications et batteries, avec toute l'artillerie armes et ustensils de guerre qui y étoient et non pas les autres effets; cependant ils s'en sont emparés, disant que c'étoit au Roy, Monsieur Bigot leur a fait ses representations qui n'ont eu aucun fruit, il vous rendra compte à ce sujet.

"Monsieur Bigot a bien voulu se charger lorsqu'il est parti de l'isle d'Aix pour vous rendre compte de ma lettre du 15 de ce mois avec tous les originaux des papiers, concernant tout ce qui s'est passé à l'occasion du siège de Louisbourg; je suis persuadé qu'ils les aura remis à sa grandeur et qu'après l'examen qu'elle en a fait, elle me rendra assez de justice que j'ay fait tout mon possible pour la défense de cette place, et que je ne l'ay rendue qu'a la dernière extrémité.

"J'oubliois d'informer monseigneur, que messieurs de la Tressillière et Souvigny, enseignes, et Lopinot, fils cadet, sont du nombre de ceux qui ont été tués pendant le siege.

"La garnison de Canceau avoit été faite prisonnière au dit lieu le 24 may de l'année dernière; elle ne devoit pas porter les armes contre le Roy pendant l'an et jour; monsieur Duquesnel donna la liberté à tous les officiers de cette garnison d'aller sur leur parole d'honneur à Baston et de passer au dit lieu le temps porté par leur capitulation.

"Le Sieur Jean Blastrick, officier, étoit du nombre, il a manqué à sa parole, puisqu'il les a prises au mois de mars dernier, c'étoit un des chefs de ceux qui ont brûlé Toulouse-Port et qui ont fait la descente à Gabarrus le 11 may.

"Il étoit colonel général de la milice de Baston, et il est entré en ville à la tête de cette milice, le lendemain de la reddition de la place."

C.

CHAPTER XXII. SHIRLEY AND THE ACADIANS.

All the following correspondence is from the Public Record Office: America and West Indies.

SHIRLEY TO NEWCASTLE, 14 DEC., 1745.

(*Extract.*)

" . . . Having lately procur'd from Fort Major Phillips of Annapolis Royal the late Lieutenant Governour Armstrong's Original Instrument mention'd in my late State of the Province of Nova Scotia to be given by him to the French Inhabitants of that Province, by virtue of which and of another of the same tenour given 'em by him in 1730, they claim an Exemption from bearing Arms in defence of his Majesty's Government, I inclose your Grace a Copy of it. Mr. Phillips in his letter inclosing this Instrument to me observes that the 'Inhabitants of Nova Scotia at the first news of Louisbourg's being surrendred were in great Consternation and at Minas in particular they appear'd in Tears in the Publick Places, where nine months before they had assisted in singing Te Deum, on a false report that Annapolis Royal was surrendred to Monsieur Duvivier.' He goes on to say that a report was spread there that Monsieur Duvivier was arriv'd at Canada with rigging for two Men of War, and the Renommée a French thirty gun Ship with two Prizes at Quebec. And all the Nova Scotia Priests were gone to Canada for Instructions; and give out that there are 2000 Canadeans at Chignecto waiting ready for another attempt against his Majesty's Garrison. To which I would beg leave to subjoin that it seems to me far from being improbable that the French will Attempt the reduction of Nova Scotia early in the Spring, by gaining which they will have a fine provision Country to assemble 8 or 10,000 fighting men and all the tribes of Indians ready to join in an attempt against Louisbourg at a few days Warning as I observ'd to your Grace in a late Letter; But if they should not attempt Louisbourg they would irresistably break up all the Eastern Settlements of this Province and I doubt

not the whole Province of New Hampshire it self, which would make 'em masters of all Mast Country and Naval Stores and of a rich Soil for Corn as well as Cattle and this would also enable 'em to make deep impressions on all the Western frontier of this Province, New York and Connecticut, and, how far they might penetrate is not Certain but so far at least as might make it very difficult to dislodge 'em and give 'em such an hold of the Continent as to make 'em think in time of pushing with the assistance of the Indians for the Mastery of it, which is richly worth contending for with all their might as it would in their hands lay the surest foundation for an Universal Monarchy by Sea and Land that ever a people had. This train of Consequences from the Enemies being Masters of Nova Scotia may seem remote, my Lord, but they are not impossible, and it may be very difficult for the French to regain Louisbourg at least without being Masters of Nova Scotia, and that seems under the present Circumstances of the Garrison where no recruits are yet Arriv'd from England and the Inhabitants of the Country Surrounding it are Enemies in their hearts no difficult acquisition and to be made with a small Train of Artillery in three weeks at farthest. I would submit it to your Grace's consideration whether the Garrison should not be reinforc'd as soon as may be. And the Inhabitants should not be forthwith put upon a good foot of Subjection and fidelity. Thus in obedience to your Grace's Direction I have troubled you with my whole sentiments concerning the Province of Nova Scotia which as I can't think it probable that the French will sleep the next year after the blow we have given 'em at Louisbourg (which, if they don't recover it soon by retaking Cape Breton or getting Nova Scotia will prove their Death wound in North America) seems to be most likely to be attack'd by 'em of any place in these parts, and I hope your Grace will excuse my Repetition of the Danger of it.

"I am with the most Dutiful Regards
"My Lord Duke,
"Your Grace's most Obed!
"and most Devoted Servant
"W. Shirley."

SHIRLEY TO NEWCASTLE, 11 FEB. 1746.

(*Extract.*)

"MY LORD DUKE.

"Since my last to your Grace I have received the Inclos'd packett from Mr. Mascarene Containing a Representation of the State of Nova Scotia from himself and his Majesty's Council of that Province with a copy of a Letter from him to me, Showing the reasons of his late Conduct towards the French Inhabitants; Your Grace will perceive that this representation is drawn up in Stronger Terms against the Inhabitants than mine; I could wish the Gentlemen had been more Explicit in what they would Recommend as the most adviseable Method of Securing his Majesty's Government within the Province and against the French Inhabitants — But as that is not done except in Short hints, And Mr. Little, to whom both Mr. Mascarene and Mr. Secretary Shirreff referr me for a Larger Account of the Sentiments of the Gentlemen of the Garrison concerning these Matters, Offers his Service to go with my dispatches to England and return directly with any Orders his Majesty may be pleased to give thereupon, I have sent him to wait upon your Grace, and it is possible that when he is upon the Spot ready to Answer any Questions, it may be of Service — Having before troubled your Grace So Largely upon this head, I will beg leave to referr to my former Letters, Mr. Little Mr. Agent Kilby and Mr. Bollan, which two last can, I believe, give Considerable Light on the affair; And shall only add that the Spring before last the Garrison was very narrowly Saved from the Enemy by the Arrival of the New England Auxiliaries, and the last Spring, by the Expedition against Cape Breton, that the preservation of it this Spring will be of the Utmost Importance to his Majesty's Service in America, and that nothing will more effectually Secure that than putting the Inhabitants upon a proper foot of Subjection, in the most Speedy Manner, to prevent their Revolt, which Cannot be done without his Majesty's Special directions for that purpose; for the procuring of which, I find Mr. Mascarene, and his whole Council have a dependance upon me;

the Language of their Several Letters being that they *Commit themselves to my Care;* and will take no step without my Advice or approbation, which has been the Case for above these last two years, And I mention to your Grace in Excuse for my being So importunate in the Affairs of another Government, which the Gentlemen of the Garrison lay me Under a Necessity of being; And I am further Urg'd to this by the late Accounts, wch Mr. Mascarene and the other Gentlemen have sent me of the Appearance of four hundred Indians well Cloathed, Arm'd, and Supply'd with Stores from Canada near St. Johns River, Seventeen French Officers being Seen among 'em, and another Body of French in the Neighbourhood of the Province, and Reports that Mr. Duvivier in the Parfaite Man of Warr, and another Ship of Force were at Qubec with Stores, and another was seen to put into St. Johns Island; That the Priests who went to Canada for Instructions are returned with Supplies and large promises to the Indians (before well dispos'd and upon the point of putting themselves under Our protection on the taking of Louisbourg) and Encouragements for the Inhabitants to depend upon a powerfull force against the Fort at Annapolis Royal this Spring. These alarms indeed have been Something Allay'd by Letters from the Deputies of Minas and other Districts to Mr. Mascarene, which for my own part I have no great dependance upon.

"But it seems plain upon the whole, that the French are making the Utmost Efforts to retain the Indians of those parts in their Interest, and gaining over the Inhabitants of Nova Scotia, So that the Taking of Speedy measures for Securing these last and gaining over the former which will depend upon that, as the preservation of Nova Scotia does upon both, is a Matter of the Highest Consequence.

"Upon this Occasion it seems necessary for me to apprise your Grace, that Mr. Mascarene and his Council have not So good an harmony Subsisting between them as could be wish'd, and that all the Officers have of late differ'd in Sentiments with him particularly upon the Behaviour of the French Inhabitants, Concerning whom he indeed has himself alter'd his Opinion in Some measure; But I

think there may be Still danger of too much tenderness towards 'em on his part, and perhaps rigour on theirs in carrying any Orders of his Majesty's into Execution; So that by their Jarring, the Execution of the Orders may possibly be Obstructed, if they are left to themselves;

"Wherefore if their Chief Governour's Age and health, and other Circumstances would have permitted him to have been Upon the Spott, and Assisted in this Service, it would I believe have been for the Advantage of it, for him to have made 'em a short Visit at least this year, And if it could have been repeated for the two or three proceeding years it would have been still more so. . . ."

Shirley to Newcastle, 10th May, 1746.

(*Extract.*)

". . . I think it my indispensable duty to suggest again to Your Grace my Fears that the Enemy will soon find an opportunity of snatching Accadie by some Sudden Stroke from his Majesty's Government unless the danger is remov'd out of the Heart of it there by a Removal of the most dangerous of the french Inhabitants from thence, & transplanting English Families there in their room, which I think very practicable from hence, having lately found means of transplanting upwards, I believe, of an hundred Families from the Province to Louisbourg towards the Settlement of it, which yet I dont esteem of such Importance to be immediately done as the Settlement of Nova Scotia with faithful Subjects.

"In the meanwhile 'till this can be happily effected & the Indians in those parts secur'd in the English Interest, I have propos'd to Mr. Warren that a Detachment of 100 Men should be sent from Louisbourg to reinforce the garrison at Annapolis Royal, since the late Miscarriage of 182 out of 302 of the Recruits designed for Annapolis in their Passage from England to the garrison there. Ninety-six of the Remainder of 'em, which came in here, I with difficulty have got recovered in his Majesty's Castle William

& at the Hospital in Boston, & sent a month ago to Annapolis where I hear they are safely arriv'd, and twenty more who are in a fair way of being serviceable, I shall send from the Hospital within three days; But the Garrison will still be weak as Mr. Mascarene has dismiss'd most of the New England Auxiliaries, and they have not, I am informed, 220 effective private Men left besides their Artificers & Workmen: I have also recommended to Mr. Warren the frequent Sending of a Ship of War to look into the Bason of Annapolis & make the Garrison there a short Visit in order to prevent a Surprise; & by his Opinion in Concurrence with Sir Willm Pepperrell's, Mr. Mascarene's & my own a Sloop has been hir'd & employ'd for about these last four Months to attend upon that garrison, & carry Intelligence between Annapolis Royal, Louisbourg & Boston concerning the State of it & the Enemy's Motions which we conceiv'd necessary to be done for its Security, and hope your Grace will not disapprove of.

"What Mr. Frontenac observed some years ago to Mr Pontchartrain concerning the french King's recovering of Accadie & making himself absolute Master of the great Bank [of Newfoundland] as in the inclos'd Extract of his Letter, seems so seasonable to be consider'd at this time, that I would beg leave to observe to your Grace upon it, that his Maj^tys^ holding the Possession of Annapolis Royal & Newfoundland (already conceded to his Crown by the Treaty of Utrecht) with his late Acquisition of Cape Breton, will put the whole Cod Fishery more in his Power than Mr Frontenac's Scheme could have put it into the French Kings, and that besides what Mr Frontenac calls a Commerce more advantageous than the Conquest of the Indies, and computes the Returns of at twenty Millions (I suppose french Livres) per annum, it would furnish his Majesty with as good a Nursery of Seamen for the Royal Navy as the Colliery in England does, not to mention the great consumption of British Manufactures which must be occasioned in carrying the Fishery on; — that the holding of Annapolis Royal in particular will be establishing to his Majesty the Mastery of the Northern Part

of this Continent against the French, Secure to him inexhaustible Nurseries of Masts, Yards, Bowsprits & other Stores for his Navy, & Timber for Ship building within his Northern Colonies independent of any foreign State to be purchased with British Manufactures & transported in British Vessels — that the Inhabitants of the Northern Colonies would in time make such an Addition of Subjects to the Crown of Great Britain as would make their number Superior to that of any Prince's upon the Continent of Europe; and in the meanwhile the Vent of Woolen & other British Manufactures, & all Kinds of European Commodities imported into the Colonies from Great Britain must increase in proportion to the Increase of their Inhabitants: by all which means the main Sources of Wealth, & a larger Extent of Power by Sea & Land than any State in Christendom at present enjoys, seems capable of being secur'd to his Maj^ty's Dominions; But which will in the End otherwise be in all human Probability the Lot of the french Dominions; And I would in particular observe to your Grace the most practicable Step the Enemy can attempt making towards their obtaining that seems clearly to be their rendring themselves Masters of Nova Scotia, the Consequences of wch would give 'em so strong an hold upon this Continent as would make it difficult to dislodge 'em & put it very much in their Power to harrass & annoy his Maj^tys Colonies both by Land & Sea, in such manner as to weaken 'em extremely, if not by degrees finally subdue 'em.

"I am with the most dutiful Regards,
"My Lord Duke,
"Your Grace's most devoted
"and obedient Servant
"W. Shirley."

Shirley to Newcastle, 31 May, 1746.

(*Extract.*)

". . . I would beg Leave to observe to your Grace, y^t the Danger to his Majesty's garrison arises chiefly

from within the heart of the government itself, the Inhabitants & neighboring Indians whose Numbers are sufficient of themselves with a small assistance from Canada & the help of a proper Train of Artillery, slipt up the Bay in small Vessells (wch would give 'em great Encouragement to take up Arms ag^t^ the garrison) to reduce it. However while the Attempt against Canada is depending, that will certainly go far towards holding the Inhabitants of Nova Scotia in suspense, till the success of it is known; & I hope by next Spring they may either be put upon a better foot of Subjection, or the most dangerous among 'em removed. . . ."

SHIRLEY TO NEWCASTLE, 18 JUNE, 1746.

(*Extract.*)

". . . I may assure your Grace y^t^ one of the principal motives I had to desire I might succeed General Phillips in his Command, was the hopes I have of it's putting it in my power to promote his Majesty's Service in his Province of Acadie, or Nova Scotia by securing the fidelity & Allegiance of the Inhabitants there to his Majesty's Government in the best manner, and thereby preventing the French from making themselves masters of it, the Acquisition of wch to them with the help of the Indians would likewise endanger the Loss of the Province of New Hampshire & the Mast Country to his Majesty with the Fishery of the Acadie or Cape Sable's Shoar, including that of Canso, to his Subjects here in present, & should not Canada be reduc'd, would enable the enemy to harrass & Diminish all his Majesty's Colonies & on the Continent, & have an inevitable Tendency to make themselves masters of the whole of it in time; not to mention the Continual Danger, wch their possession of Nova Scotia would at the same time expose Cape Breton & even Newfoundland to.

"The Considerations have induc'd me to take the Liberty of submitting it to your Grace, whether it might not be for his Majesty's Service, that before the six Regiments to be employ'd ag^t^ Canada return to England, orders may be sent

that such part of 'em as shall be thought necessary to assist in removing the most obnoxious of the French Inhabitants of Nova Scotia from thence, should be employ'd in that Service, wch would not take up much time; I am not certain whether a sufficient Strength might not be spar'd from the Garrison at Louisbourg a short time for this purpose, wch if it could, would make the Assistance of any other Troops needless.

"And I would particularly submit it to your Grace's Consideration, whether in case of any Disappoinment in the present Attempt for the reduction of Canada, the immediate removal of some at least of the French Inhabitants of Nova Scotia, & securing the province in the best manner would not be . . . adviseable and even necessary.

"If your Grace should think this deserves so much of your Attention there will be time enough for transmitting his Majesty's Commands to me upon it before the present Expedition is over.

"I am with the most Dutifull Regard.
"My Lord Duke
"Your Grace's most Devoted
"& most obedient Servant
"W. SHIRLEY."

SHIRLEY TO NEWCASTLE, 28 JULY, 1746.

(*Extract.*)

"I must acknowledge I should rather apprehend the french Fleet (if it is design'd for North America) is order'd to Canada; or else to Annapolis Royal, where the Enemy may depend that upon the Apperance of such an Armament the french Inhabitants of Nova Scotia (to the Amount of between 5 & 6000 fighting men) and a considerable Number of Indians & some Canadeans, would immediately join 'em, and they would have a most convenient Country to rendezvous in within a very few days sail of Chappeaurouge Bay at Cape Breton, and be not far from Canada, than that they should attempt to enter Louisbourg Harbour with their Ships; and I am the more inclin'd to this Opinion from

the Accounts I have receiv'd lately from Mr Mascarene, and the Officers of the Garrison at Annapolis Royal which inform me that the french Inhabitants at Menis & Schiegneto (in Nova Scotia) have cut off all communication with the garrison for these last five Weeks, and have stop'd the Messengers sent from thence by Mr Mascarene for Intelligence; being in Expectation of an Armament from France; And indeed it seems probable that this will for ever be the Case; and that the Province of Nova Scotia will never be out of Danger, whilst the french Inhabitants are suffer'd to remain in Nova Scotia upon their present Foot of Subjection."

SHIRLEY TO NEWCASTLE, 15 AUG., 1746.

(*Extract.*)

"I shall finish my troubleing your Grace upon the Affairs of Nova Scotia with this Letter after having once more Submitted it to your Grace's Consideration as a proper Scheme for better securing the Subjection of the French Inhabitants and Indians there; that the Governour & Council or such other Person or Persons as his Majesty shall think fitt to join with 'em, should have a special authority and directions from his Majesty, forthwith to Apprehend & Examine a convenient number of such of the Inhabitants, as shall be by them judg'd to be most obnoxious & Dangerous to his Majesty's Government, & upon finding 'em guilty of holding any treasonable Correspondence with the Enemy &c to dispose of them & their Estates in such manner, as his Majesty shall order by his Commissions and to promise his Majesty's Gracious Pardon & a general Indemnity to the Rest for what is past upon their taking the Oaths of Allegiance to his Majesty; And to Cause either two strong Blockhouses (or small Forts) capable of holding 100 Men each to be Built, one in Menis & the other in Schiegnecto, which may be Garrison'd out of Phillip's Regiment when Compleated, or else that at least one Blockhouse (or small Fort) should be Built at

Menis capable of holding 150 men; and a trading house be kept at the Fort at Menis or some other part of the Province well Stock'd with all proper Supplies for the Indians to be sold or barter'd to 'em for Furrs &c at the most reasonable Rates, and some presents annually distributed to 'em: by which means and removing the Romish Priests out of the Province, & introducing Protestant English Schools, and French Protestant Ministers, and due encouragement given to such of the Inhabitants, as shall Conform to the Protestant Religion, and send their Children to the English Schools, the present Inhabitants might probably at least be kept in Subjection to his Majesty's Government, and from treasonable Correspondencies with the Canadians; and the next Generation in a great measure become true Protestant Subjects; and the Indians there soon Reclaim'd to an entire dependance upon & subjection to his Majesty; which might also have an happy Influence upon some of the Tribes now in the French Interest.

"Your Grace will be pleas'd to Excuse all
"Incorrectness in this rough Sketch.
"I am with the most Dutifull Regard,
"My Lord Duke,
"Your Grace's most Devoted &
"Most Obedient Servant
"W. Shirley."

Shirley to Mascarene, Boston, Septr 16, 1746.

"Sir,

"Having been inform'd that the french Inhabitants of Nova Scotia entertain some Jealousy of a Design in the English Government to remove them with their Families from their Settlements, & transport them to France or elsewhere; I desire (if you think it may be for his Majesty's Service) that you would be pleas'd to signify to 'em, that it is probable if his Majesty had declar'd such Intention I might have heard of the same, but that I am perfectly unaquainted with any such Design, and am perswaded there is no just Ground for this Jealousy; And be pleas'd

to assure 'em that I shall use my best Endeavours by a proper Representation of their Case to be laid before his Majesty, to obtain the Continuance of his Royal Favour & Protection to such of them, as shall behave dutifully, & refuse to hold any Correspondence with his Enemies; and I doubt not but that all such of 'em will be protected by his Majesty in the Possession of their Estates & Settlements in Nova Scotia.

"And I desire you would also be pleas'd to inform them that it is expected from his Maj^tys^ french Subjects in that Province, who have for so long time enjoyed the same Privileges with his natural born Subjects there, & have been under a much easier Government than any of the french King's Subjects are in the neighbouring Province of Canada & other Parts of the french King's Dominions, that their Interest as well as their Duty and Gratitude should bind them to a strict Fidelity & Obedience to his Majesty and His Government; But on the contrary if any of the Inhabitants of the said Province shall join with the Enemy (especially those that have been sent from Canada to seduce them from their Duty to his Majesty & Attachment to the English Interest) they must expect to be treated in the same manner as his Majesty's English Subjects would be under the like Provocations.

"I am with great regard
"Sir,
"Your most obedient
"humble servant
"W. Shirley."

Shirley to Newcastle, Boston, September 19, 1746.

"My Lord Duke,

"I express'd some hopes in my last but one to your Grace, that I should not be oblig'd to add to my former Accounts of the imminent danger, his Majesty's Province of Nova Scotia was in of being surpriz'd by the Enemy; But find my self under a Necessity of doing it from the Advices which I have since receiv'd from Mr Mascarene, and the

Intelligence contain'd in three Declarations upon Oath, Copies of all which are inclos'd.

"Upon the Receipt of Mr Mascarene's Letter, the Contents of which are confirm'd to me by other authentick Accounts, it appear'd to me that there was no room to doubt but that a considerable Body of French and Indians from Canada was assembled in Nova Scotia, with Expectations of a Reinforcement from France; and if they fail'd of that this Year a Design of at least wintering in Minas or some other Part of the Country, by which means they would have an Opportunity of fortifying themselves in it, transporting their great artillery (which there was then the utmost reason to believe they had landed either at Bay Verte or Chebucto Harbour) to Annapolis, and work upon the French Inhabitants already ripe for a Revolt to join 'em in attacking his Majesty's Garrison there so early in the Spring that it would be extremely difficult if not impracticable to relieve it by any Succours either from Louisbourg or the Colonies on the Continent. Whereupon I immediately sent Mr Mascarene an Assurance that I would send him as soon as possible 300 of the new Levies from this Province, 200 of 'em (which seems to be as many as the Garrison can hold at present besides the Troops already there) for the Reinforcement of it, and 100 of 'em to be employ'd in two Sloops up the Bay in the manner Mr Mascarene proposes in his Letter to me, and that I would do the utmost in my Power to make the number up 2000 soon afterwards, in order to dislodge the Enemy, & prevent 'em from wintering in the Province; And in the mean time upon my advising with Rear Admiral Warren (who is still here) he immediately sent his Majesty's Ship Chester a 50 Gun Ship to Annapolis Royal for the further Countenance & Protection of the Garrison there.

"Some Days after this I receiv'd Information that a Fleet of upwards of 30 Sail were discover'd about 15 Leagues to the Westward of Chibucto Harbour, which lies upon the Cape Sable Shoar (the Coast of Accadie or Nova Scotia) about 150 Leagues to the Eastward of Boston, and about 60 Leagues Westward of Louisbourg, & about 80 distant

from Annapolis Royal according to Champions inclos'd Deposition, which was confirm'd by another of the same Tenour made by one Thornton sent me from Piscataqua, upon which I dispatched an arm'd Brigantine with orders to look into Chibucto Harbour, & if the Master should discover any thing to proceed directly to Louisbourg, & give Vice Admiral Townsend & Govern[r] Knowles Intelligence of it, & to send me Advice of it Express by some fishing Vessel taken up at Sea; But the Brigantine return'd in less than 24 hours with one Stanwood a Fisherman on board, whose Vessel fell in with the Fleet on the 9th day of Sept[r] about 10 Leagues to the Westward of Chibucto, the particulars of which are contain'd in his inclos'd Deposition; and the day after Stanwood's falling in with this Fleet, Haskell another Master of a fishing Vessel discover'd it standing a right course for Chibucto about 8 Leagues to the Westw[d] of it, & was chas'd by one of 'em according to the inclos'd Deposition; which Series of Intelligence, as no Vessel has arriv'd here yet from this Fleet (which must in all probability have happen'd had it come from England) compar'd with the Accounts in the English News Papers of the Brest Fleet's sailing, & the Intelligence gain'd from a french Prize lately taken by one of M[r] Townsend's Squadron near the Mouth of S[t] Lawrence, that she came out with the Brest Squadron & sail'd in Company with it eight days; the Account we had of two large french Ships being seen to go into Chibucto Harbour about two Months ago; the behavior of the French in Nova Scotia, & their declar'd Expectations of a large French Armament about this time, seems to make it very probable that these Ships may be part of the Brest Squadron, & that they have an immediate design upon Nova Scotia at least. — Hereupon I sent an Express Boat to Louisbourg to apprize Admiral Townsend & M[r] Knowles of it, & another to Annapolis Royal to give M[r] Mascarene Advice of it, & to let him know that I was embarking 300 Men for the Reinforcement of the Garrison under his Command (which is done & part of 'em sail'd) with a Promise of farther Succours, and to apprize him that from the publick Accounts in the English Prints

we had reason to depend upon the speedy Arrival of Lieut^t General St Clair with the British Troops under his Command, & a Squadron of his Majesty's Ships with 'em at Louisbourg; And as I have reason to think that an Apprehension generally prevails among the french Inhabitants of Nova Scotia, that they shall all of 'em soon be remov'd from their Settlements there without Distinction, which may have a bad Influence upon 'em in favour of the Enemy at this critical Time. I have wrote Mr Mascarene a Letter (a copy of which I inclose to your Grace) which is translated into French, & printed, in order to be dispers'd among the french Inhabitants, if Mr Mascarene (to whose Discretion I have submitted it either to make Use of or suppress the printed Copies) shall be of Opinion that the Publication of it among 'em may be for his Majesty's Service.

"If the Fleet discover'd on the Cape Sable Coast should be Part of that from Brest, doubtless their visit to Nova Scotia has been encourag'd by the general Disposition of the Inhabitants, & the strength they will add to 'em for the Reduction of that Province, & afterwards for an Attempt upon Louisbourg (if they should think it adviseable to to make one) as also for the defence of Canada. Should they succeed in an immediate Attempt upon Nova Scotia (which I should not be surpriz'd at) & General St Clair with the Squadron expected from England should arrive in time for that purpose, I should propose attempting the immediate recovery of it out of the Enemy's hands this Year; For their holding that Province till they can fortify it and farther strengthen themselves there must be attended with very bad Consequences to his Majesty's Service, worse than may be immediately apprehended, & create no inconsiderable Perplexities; at least it seems a clear point to me, that if the French should hold the Possession of Nova Scotia in Addition to Canada, the fate of Affairs in his Majesty's Northern Colonies will be suddenly alter'd in a surprizing manner & it will then soon be discern'd that the Mastery of the Northern Parts of this Continent, together with the Sources of Wealth & Power depending upon it, will be in a very fair way of being finally transfer'd to the Enemy.

"Upwards of two Months ago upon receiving Intelligence of the Appearance of two large French Ships being seen to go into Chibucto Harbour, Mr Warren & I sent Mr Townsend notice of it; But as we had not learn'd whether any Vessell had been sent from Louisbourg to look into that Harbour, I sent an arm'd Brigantine to make Discoveries there, which was hinder'd from proceeding thither as is before mention'd; & I have now sent a Schooner thither with a Person who has undertaken to go into it in a Whale boat high enough to make an exact discovery of the Enemy's strength (if any of their Ships are there) & to carry the Account to Louisbourg; But it seems possible if any of 'em have been there, that after landing some Troops and Stores at Chibucto, & getting what Intelligence they can from the Nova Scotians, their Ships may be gone to Canada; for which Place we have been inform'd that sixteen french Vessels, some of 'em Ships of War, had some time ago pass'd up the River of St Laurence; & since that six other Vessels with Stores; so that it is very probable that Quebec is much better prepar'd to receive a Visit from his Majesty's Land & Sea Forces now than it was a little time ago."

SHIRLEY TO NEWCASTLE, 23 OCT. 1746.

(*Extract.*)

"It is agreed by all the Prisoners that the French have not fortify'd at Chebucto, nor sent any Troops from thence by Land to join the Canadeans; as also that Mr Destonnel the chief D'escadre & Commandant upon the Death of the Duke D'Anville, who was of Opinion, to return to France after the Admiral's Death without attempting any thing, upon being over rul'd in a Council of War & having his Flagg struck, fell upon his Sword, & dy'd of his Wound as all of 'em say, except Sanders.

"It seems very observable from Sander's Declaration how ready a Disposition the Nova Scotians show'd to afford Refreshmts & Pilots to the Enemy, & that they had signified to the french Ministry their readiness to join with any force

they should send for the Reduction of his Majesty's Garrison at Annapolis Royal. Also from the number of Engineers the French had with 'em that their Scheme was to hold & fortify Annapolis, for wch Purpose it seems to be that the 50 brass Cannon were brought, rather than for raising Batteries against the Fort: and that from the Number of their small Arms, which they had with 'em to arm the Nova Scotians (doubtless) as well as the Indians, they had a dependance upon being join'd by them. Likewise the Apprehensions which prevail among the Nova Scotians that they are at present rather Neutrals than Subjects to the Crown of Great Britain. And I think it is not to be doubted now but that the principal Part of the french Scheme was the Reduction of Nova Scotia in the first Place.

"Upon the whole the sickly State of the French Fleet, wch is extremely ill mann'd, the hurry & Uneasiness they discover'd upon seeing the Contents of the Packets which fell into their hands, & precipitate departure from Chebucto, with their detaining the Flag of Truce & English Prisoners 'till they were got 30 Leagues from Chebucto, & then dismissing 'em with a Notion that their Fleet was going up the Bay of Fundy to Annapolis (instead of carrying 'em up there with 'em to prevent that's being known to us) makes it seem probable that the Enemy is making the best of their way to France or the West Indies, & was afraid of even Mr Townsend's following 'em.

"I am with the most dutiful Regard
"My Lord Duke,
"Your Grace's most Devoted
"and most Obedient Servant
"W. Shirley."

Shirley to Newcastle, Boston, 21 Nov. 1746.

(*Extracts.*)

"My Lord Duke,

"I am afraid your Grace will think, from my incessant Representations of the State of Nova Scotia, that I imagine that Province should be the sole Object of your Attention:

Nothing could induce me to be so importunate with your Grace upon this Subject, but the fullest perswasion of the very great Importance of that Place to the Crown, & the British Subject, of the immediate bad Consequences of the Loss of it to his majesty's Service, & the imminent danger of its being lost, unless something is forthwith done for the effectual Security of it.

"The inclos'd Extract from Mr Mascarene's Letter & Copy of Lieut^t^ Colonel Gorham's will disclose in a great Measure to your Grace their Apprehensions, & the Condition of the Province: The number of the Enemy, are increas'd at Menis; they have again stop't all Communication between the Inhabitants & the Garrison, & are likely to keep footing there this Winter; and particularly from Col^o^ Gorham's Letter your Grace will perceive what Pains the Canadeans and Malecontents among the Inhabitants take to prevent my Letter lately dispers'd among 'em, in order to setle the Minds of the Inhabitants, (a Copy of which I have before sent your Grace) from having its proper Influence; & how the Nova Scotians are alarm'd at the Rumour of a design to remove 'em from their Settlements; And it appears to me by what I farther learn from Captain Fotheringham to whom Mr Mascarene refers me in his Letter, that unless something vigorous, as that Letter intimates, is done by the Middle of April at farthest, the greatest Part of the Province at least will be in the hands of the Canadeans, and it will be too late then to attempt to reclaim the Inhabitants.

. . . . . .

"For the securing Nova Scotia from its present dangers I would further humbly propose it as my Opinion to be consider'd by your Grace, that if his Majesty should be pleas'd as soon as possibly might be after the Receipt of this, to cause it to be signified to the Inhabitants of Nova Scotia, that the Assurances lately given 'em by me of his Royal Protection to such of 'em as should behave dutifully and avoid all traiterous Correspondence with the Enemy at this Juncture (or to that Effect) were approv'd of by him, and should be made good to 'em, it would have

a great Tendency to remove their present Apprehensions of being sent off with their Families from their Settlements in Nova Scotia, which seems to distress & perplex 'em; & effectually to prevent 'em from being drawn over to take up Arms against his Majesty, unless it should be some of the most obnoxious of 'em; which if his Majesty would be pleas'd to send over at the same time his special directions to apprehend, and proceed against, such a Proceeding against the Delinquents and gracious Declaration towards the others, would, I dare say, have a proper Effect for securing the general Fidelity of the Inhabitants, at least so far as to keep 'em from joining with the Enemy; And least the Succours now sent to Annapolis should not be a sufficient force to dislodge the Enemy this Winter, I would farther humbly propose it for your Graces' Consideration, that his Majesty's Orders should be forthwith sent to myself and the other three Governments of New England, that in case the Canadeans should not be withdrawn out of Nova Scotia, they should immediately cause the Soldiers rais'd in their respective Colonies & Provinces for his Majesty's Service in the Expedition against Canada to be transported to Annapolis Royal, as their Place of Rendezvous istead of Louisbourg, & to be employed in driving the Canadeans out of Nova Scotia, and be farther subjected to such Orders as his Majesty shall be pleas'd to signify in those Directions; and if this Order was to extend to the Governour of New York, it might not be an unnecessary Caution. I am apprehensive if such Orders are not sent, that the Attention of the several Governm^{ts} to the Reduction of Crown Point might very much interfere with the Preservation of Nova Scotia, which is of infinitely more Consequence.

"These are the things which occur to me at present, & which I would submit to your Grace's Consideration, as what seems to require more immediate Dispatch; As to the danger of the french Fleet's early Return from the West Indies to Nova Scotia and what Strength of Ships may be necessary to protect that Province, Cape Breton, and the other Colonies against that Fleet, or any other french Armament which may be sent from Europe in the

Spring to visit these Parts, I leave to Admiral Warren, who now goes to England in the Chester, and with whom, pursuant to the Directions of your Grace's two Letters to me in March & April last, I have acted in Concert upon all such Occasions as requir'd my consulting him with the greatest Satisfaction and Harmony, having had the Pleasure to find my own Sentiments agreable to his in all Matters of Consequence, and a most hearty Disposition in him for his Majesty's Service, and to whom I have often talk'd over the Affairs of Nova Scotia.

. . . . . .

"I will avoid repeating what I have particularly mention'd to your Grace in late Letters concerning fortifying of Chebucto Harbour and building a Blockhouse or small Fort for 150 Men at Menis, with a Trading House there for the Indians, and a Blockhouse only at Canso for 100 Men, instead of new building and enlarging that at Annapolis Royal, and erecting a larger Fortification at Canso; which in my humble Opinion would greatly strengthen that Province, and together with the introducing of french Protestant Ministers, and English Schools, & some small Encouragement by Privileges to such as should conform to the Prtestant Religion, or send their Children to the English Schools, and Presents to the Indians with Supplies of all necessaries for 'em at the most reasonable Rates, in Exchange for their Furrs &c; the Disallowance of the publick Exercise of the Roman Catholic Religion, at least after a short Term of Years, & forbidding Romish Priests under severe Penalties to come into the Country either among the Inhabitants or Indians; and if it might be consistent with his Majesty's Pleasure, a Civil Government to be in due time introduc'd among the Inhabitants; These things, I say, my Lord together with making Examples of the most obnoxious among the Inhabitants, and his Majesty's extending his Clemency and the Continuance of his Protection to the rest upon taking the proper Oath of Allegiance, seem to me to have the most promising Aspect for making good Subjects of the present Generation of Inhabitants, at least better than they are now and good Protestants of the next

Generation of 'em; especially if there was to be a Mixture of English or other Protestants introduc'd among 'em, which the Invitation of a Civil Government to be set up among 'em would bid fair for doing: and the Trading House would create in the Indians a firm Dependance upon, and Attachment to his Majesty's Government, especially if a proper Protestant Missionary or two was supported to live among 'em at their head Quarters, as is the Method of the french Priests; by wch means they gain so great an Ascendency over them.

"Just as I had finished the last Paragraph a Letter from Governor Knowles to Admiral Warren & myself, dated the 10th Instant, was deliver'd to me, in which he informs me that 'he has given his Opinion in his Letters to your Grace, that it will be necessary to drive *all the French* (I suppose he means *Inhabitants*) out of Accadie (Nova Scotia) in the 'Spring, and that he hopes he shall have Orders to assist 'in doing it, if Admiral Warren does not go upon the Ex-'pedition to Quebeck, which he apprehends is rendred 'more difficult than it was, by such a Number of Ships 'being got safe up to Quebeck this Year, as no doubt they 'have carried all manner of warlike Stores.' And in his Letter to me of the 24th of October he says 'if his Majesty 'should be pleas'd to transport the Rebels who are Objects 'of his Mercy, & encourage other Highland Families to 'come over, he thinks the Colony of Nova Scotia would 'soon be repeopled;' which it is possible he may have also propos'd to your Grace as in his Opinion the best Method for peopling that Colony, after the present french Inhabitants are drove off.

"As the Sentiments, which I have taken the Liberty to offer to your Grace upon this Subject, happen to be something different from Mr Knowles's, I think it may not only be proper but my Duty to mention the Reasons of my preferring the Scheme for attempting to make the present french Inhabitants good Subjects to his Majesty, and keeping 'em in the Country, to that of driving 'em off & introducing some of the Rebels and other Highlanders in their Room.

"It seems very difficult to drive all the Inhabitants of Accadie out of so large a Province as that is, and which consists chiefly of Woods; It is most probable that many of the hardiest Men would retire (for some time at least) with their Cattle into the Woods, & form Parties with the Indians; and the remainder would doubtless retreat with their Families to Canada: Those, who are acquainted with the Indian Manner of Life & making War know that one hundred of 'em under Cover of the Woods can confine a very large Frontier within their Garrisons, even tho' they have Companies continually scouting between one Garrison and another: this is at present the Case of this Province & the other Colonies of New England & New York, tho' the People there are us'd to the Woods, & the Skulking of the Indians behind the Bushes & in Ditches with their other Wiles, & have large numbers of the Militia constantly upon Guard for their Protection; their Cattle is continually destroy'd; if any of 'em venture out into their Fields, they are frequently kill'd & scalp'd; and sometimes not only single Families or Garrisons are surpriz'd and cut off, as has happen'd lately in this Province, but even whole Villages, as was the Case of Sarahtoga in New York a few Months ago; so that those of the french Inhabitants, who should mix with the Indians in the Woods, would have it in their Power to put his Majesty's Garrison under such Circumstances as that it could not possibly subsist longer in the Country than they could do it without fresh Provisions, Wood & other Materials & Supplies from thence; from all which they would be wholly cut off, when the Inhabitants were drove away; And as to such of the Inhabitants, who should go with their Families to Canada, it must be expected that a very large Body of the Men would return arm'd next Spring with some Canadeans to join the Indians; from all which it seems justly to be apprehended that an Attempt to drive all the french Inhabitants from their Settlements, should it succeed, would in Effect be driving 5 or 6000 Men to take up Arms against his Majesty's Government there every Year during the War; make the reclaiming of the Indians of Nova Scotia impracticable, &

render it impossible for his Majesty's Garrison there to subsist long in the Country in time of War even with the Indians only; Besides, the Addition of about 6000 fighting Men with their Families to Canada, which would greatly strengthen the French upon this Continent, and would entail upon the Posterity of those who are thus expell'd (for several Generations at least) a Desire of recovering their former Possessions in Nova Scotia, seems to be no inconsiderable Matter, but what next to the Loss of the Country itself should be avoided on the Part of his Majesty, & is I dare say an Event, which the French next to their Acquisition of this Colony would desire: It is indeed now to be wish'd that General Nicholson had upon the first Reduction of the Colony to the Obedience to the Crown of Great Britain, remov'd the french Inhabitants, when they were but a few, out of the Country, as was done at Louisbourg; and that during the Interval of Peace the Colony had been planted with Protestant Subjects; But after their having remain'd so long in the Country upon the foot of British Subjects under the Sanction of the treaty of Utrecht, and making Improvements on their Lands for one or two Generations, and being grown up into such a Number of Families, to drive 'em all off their Settlements without farther Inquiry seems to be liable to many Objections. Among others it may be doubted whether under the Circumstances of these Inhabitants it would clearly appear to be a just Usage of 'em; it is true that the Notion of their Neutrality (which seems to have been entertain'd for some time by the English as well as themselves) is ill-grounded, and does not comport with the Terms of their Allegiance to his Majesty, to which such of 'em as chose to remain in the Province are bound by the treaty of Utrecht; whereby the french King yielded up the Inhabitants as well as the Soil of Accadie, and together with their Persons transferred their Allegiance to the Crown of Great Britain; But if it is consider'd that this Notion was founded upon an Act of the late Lieut^{t} Governour Armstrong then the residing Commander in Chief of the Province, whereby he took upon himself to grant

'em by a Writing under his Hand an Exemption from bearing Arms upon any Account whatever, on their consenting to take an Oath of Allegiance to his present Majesty, which, whether it was done by him with, or without Authority, appear'd at least to them to be authentick; it may perhaps be deem'd too rigorous a Punishment for their behavior grounded on such a Mistake, to involve the innocent with the Guilty in the Loss of their Estates, and the Expulsion of their Families out of the Country; it is not improbable but that there may be many among 'em who would even prefer his Majesty's Governm[t] to a french one, & have done nothing to deserve such a Forfeiture; Some Allowances may likewise be made for their bad Situation between the Canadeans, Indians & English, the Ravages of all which they have felt by Turns in the Course of the War; during which they seem to have been continually plac'd between two fires, the force and Menaces of the Canadeans & Indians plundering 'em of whatever they wanted, & deterring 'em in the strongest manner from having any Communication with his Majesty's Garrison, on the one hand; and the Resentm[ts] of the Garrison for their withholding their Intelligence & Supplies on the other, tho' at the same time it was not in a Condition to protect 'em from the Enemy; Wherefore it seems a Matter worthy of your Grace's Consideration, whether under such doubtful Circumstances the driving all the French Inhabitants of Nova Scotia off their Settlements, and thereby very greatly strengthening the Enemy upon this Continent, not only against the Garrison in present, but finally against all the British Colonies there, and depopulating one of his Majesty's Provinces for some time (how long may be uncertain) is more eligible than treating 'em as Subjects, confining their Punishm[t] to the most guilty & dangerous among 'em, & keeping the rest in the Country, and endeavouring to make them & their Posterity useful Members of Society under his Majesty's Government: I can't omit likewise observing to your Grace, that it would be exceeding difficult to fill up the Chasm which driving off the Inhabitants would make in the Country; During the Rupture with France it would

certainly be impracticable, and I doubt whether it would not be so when Peace shall be made with France, if the Indians should continue at War with us; For what Number of Families can be propos'd to begin a Settlem^t in the Country, after the Expulsion of the French Inhabitants, with safety against the Indians, & which would be continually expos'd to be destroyed by 'em, whilst they were carrying on their Settlements; They must expect no Protection against the Indians from within the Garrison, out of the Reach of their great Guns; the Company of Rangers, which live without the Walls of the Fort, would afford more of that than a thousand Garrison Soldiers would do: Whereas if the Stock of french Inhabitants was continued in the Country, an Accommodation with the Indians would be more easily brought about and preserv'd, they would be a Cover for any Number of Families that might be introduc'd among 'em whilst they were carrying on Settlements; & secure to the Garrison its necessary Supplies of fresh Provisions, Fuel, Materials for repairing the Works, & Stores of Sorts that the Country affords.

"As to repeopling the Province with some of the late Rebels and other Highland Families, it seems much to be doubted whether it might not be too hazardous to fill that Colony, wch should be the Barrier of all his Majesty's Colonies upon this Continent, with a Set of poor, ignorant, deluded Wretches just come out of a most unnatural Rebellion; that from their Neighbourhood to Canada would be continually expos'd to the Artifices and Attempts of french Romish Priests upon 'em who it is reasonable to think would not fail to instill the same Notions into 'em in America, which seduc'd 'em from their Allegiance in Great Britain, with a Promise of more effectual Support & Protection from the French here, than they had in the Highlands; Indeed, my Lord, this seems to be a dangerous experiment, and what might produce the worst of Consequences.

"I beg leave to submit it to your Grace's Consideration, whether the most staunch Protestants, & Families the most zealously affected to his Majesty's Government, a

Number at least of such, should not rather, if possible, be transplanted there as soon as may be; I could wish four or five hundred of 'em could be induc'd to go from some Part of New England; I think from the Experience I had of the Inhabitants of this Province at least upon the late Alarm given by the french Fleet, I might safely venture to be answerable to his Majesty, that if I had suggested in my late Orders for assembling a Body of 'em under Arms in Boston from all Parts of this Province to oppose any Attempt of the Enemy, that there was a design of landing a Son of the Pretender's here, it would not have been possible to have kept any one Man, who was capable of marching hither, from appearing under Arms with the most determin'd Resolution of hazarding his Life to the utmost in defence of his Majesty's Governm^{t}; And as the late Appearances of a fondness for removing from hence to Cape Breton seem to be quite vanished at present, I should not be without hopes of some families removing from these Parts to Nova Scotia upon due Encouragement; Protestants likewise from among the Swiss Cantons, & other Northern Parts in Germany, who are generally bred up in the Exercise of arms, and make sober and industrious Settlers, might be safely trusted in Accadie; Great Numbers of 'em yearly flock into Pensilvania, whereby the Inhabitants of that Province are almost incredibly increas'd within these twenty Years; And from the behavior of the Irish coming out of the Northern Parts of Ireland hither, a Number of which is setled in the Eastern Parts of this Province, I should think they too might be safely trusted in Nova Scotia; and it is certain that these poor unhappy Highlanders (I mean such of 'em as may be design'd to be transported into the Plantations) would be more safely dispos'd of among the four Governm^{ts} of New England, or in New York & the Jerseys, where they would not be in danger either of corrupting the Inhabitants, or being again seduc'd themselves, but might make useful Subjects to his Majesty.

"I hope, my Lord, I shall be excus'd if I have gone

beyond my Line in submitting these Observations to your Grace, at a time when the fate of one of his Majesty's Northern Colonies, the most important of 'em all to the Crown in many respects, as I apprehend, and which will be in the hands of the french the Key to all the other British Colonies upon this Continent, & even to Cape Breton, And in his Majesty's Possession the Barrier of 'em against the Enemy seems to come to a Crisis."

SHIRLEY TO NEWCASTLE, BOSTON, NEW ENGLAND, 27 FEBRUARY, 1747.

"MY LORD DUKE,

"I am sorry that I am now to Acquaint your Grace with the Advices I receiv'd last night by Express from Nova Scotia giving me an Account that the Detachment of Troops under the Command of Lieu[t] Colonel Noble, which I Inform'd your Grace in my last of the 21st instant had taken possession of Minas, and had kept it near two months, was for want of a proper Security for the Men and Intelligence from the Inhabitants surpriz'd on the 31st of January last at three o'Clock in the morning by between 5 & 600 Canadeans & Indians in which Lieu[t] Col[o] Noble with four Officers more and about 80 men were killed, and three Officers and about 60 Men were wounded and taken prisoners before it was light enough for our people to get together; they however obliged the Enemy, upwards of 20 of whom were kill'd, and about 15 wounded, to allow 'em an honourable Capitulation, a Copy of which I inclose to your Grace together with the Account given of this Affair by the Officer who was Commandant of the Detachment at the time of the Capitulation, & Extracts from Lieu[t] Governour Mascarene's Letter to me upon this Subject, from whence I choose your Grace should receive the Acco[t] in the same light it has been Conveyed to me in, and which upon the best Inquiry I can make, seems to be a just one. I also Inclose to your Grace an Extract from Col. Noble's Letter to me dated two days before his death, giving me an Account of the Situation of Affairs then at Minas;

from whence your Grace will perceive that even then he was in Expectation of being Join'd by the Rhode Island Forces & the Company from this Province, which had the Misfortune to be Shipreck'd; and that, had they arriv'd at Annapolis, and the New Hampshire Companies had not return'd home without acting, the Enemy would in all probability have been drove out of Nova Scotia, and every good purpose, which I had propos'd, been answer'd before this time. As it is I shall use my best Endeavours forthwith to fit out a sufficient force by Sea to destroy Mr Ramsay's Vessels at Schiegnecto, and recover our own by Spring, & to send Mr Mascarene such a Reinforcement of Troops as may still drive the Enemy out of Nova Scotia by the same time and prevent any bad Consequences from the late Accident there, which seems necessary to be done (if possible) and I shall hope to succeed in, if the neighbouring Governments of New England will assist in, which I shall urge 'em to do.

"I likewise inclose the Answer of the Inhabitants of Minas to the French Letter which I some time ago Inform'd your Grace I sent Mr Mascarene last Fall, and a Paragraph out of one of his Letters to me upon the same matter; whereby your Grace will perceive that that Letter seems to have had an happy Effect upon the Inhabitants at a most critical Conjuncture.

"The late Secresy of the Inhabitants of Minas with regard to the Enemys Motions, and the very certain Intelligence which the Enemy gain'd of the particular Quarters of the English Officers, notwithstanding their Supplying the King's Troops with Provisions, and the Curtesy of their Behavior to 'em before this Surprize, and their professions of being sorry for it afterwards seems to shew the necessity of his Majesty's Keeping a strong Blockhouse there with a Garrison of 150 men; And the constant ill behavior of the Inhabitants of Schiegnecto seems to make another Blockhouse with a like Garrison there equally necessary, as I at first propos'd to your Grace from Louisbourg; and these two with a Fort and Garrison at Chebucto of 300 Men at least, and the continuance of a Garrison of 300 at

Annapolis Royal as it is at present, with a strong Blockhouse at Canso garrison'd with 100 Men would through the constant Correspondence that might be kept up between the several Garrisons be an effectual Security to the Province against the Enemy, and oblige the Inhabitants in a little time to contribute towards the protection & Expence of the Government, and for ever frustrate any hopes the French could Entertain of making themselves Masters of it, by their constant Endeavours to Seduce the Inhabitants from their Allegiance; all which would make Nova Scotia really His Majesty's which it seems scarcely to have been yet: And I would Submit it to your Grace's Consideration whether a Company of Rangers consisting of 100 Indians, or rather two Companies, consisting of 50 each, one to be posted at the Blockhouse at Minas, and the other in Schiegnecto would not be of the greatest Service, in Scouting thro' every part of the Province and in the Woods upon all Emergencies (for which the Regular Troops are by no means fit) and particularly in preventing the French from Introducing Men from Canada into the Province by the Bay Vert; I think the great Service which Lieu[t] Colonel Gorham's Company of Rangers has been of to the Garrison at Annapolis Royal, is a demonstration of the Usefulness of such a Corps, besides that it may be a means of bringing Indians out of the French Interest into his Majesty's Service, and go far towards reclaiming 'em in general; especially if (as I have before propos'd for your Grace's Consideration) two Trading or Truck Houses were to be maintain'd one at Minas, and the other at Chiegnecto, for supplying the Indians with all necessaries in Exchange for furrs, and proper presents were made to 'em in the manner which the French use to Keep 'em in their Interest.

"And if your Grace would allow me the Freedom to offer my Sentiments concerning what appears to me to be farther necessary for putting this important Province of Nova Scotia (I think I may justly call it the most important to the Crown of any upon this Continent) in Security, I sho'd propose one of His Majesty's Arm'd Sloops (or Snows) with a

Tender to be constantly employ'd in the Bay of Fundy for visiting all parts of it upon every occasion, as well as the several Harbours on the Cape Sable Coast; and one of his Majesty's Frigates to be employ'd for the protection of the Fishery at Canso (as was always usual in time of peace) which together with a Tender would also be of great Service in duly attending the Bay Verte, upon every Occasion, and likewise visiting the Coast of Accadie (or Cape Sables) besides protecting the Fishery.

"Since writing the last Paragraph I have heard of some other particular circumstances, which make it very suspicious that several of the Inhabitants at least of Minas knew of the Enemy's Motions, & I find that it is the general Opinion of the Officers that they did.

"I am with the most dutiful Regard,
"My Lord Duke,
"Your Grace's most devoted,
"& most humble Servant
"W. Shirley"

Shirley to Newcastle, Boston, April 29th, 1747.

(*Extract.*)

"My Lord Duke,

"Since finishing Governour Knowles's, & my joint Letter to your Grace, I have learn'd from one of the English Prisoners just Arriv'd from Schiegnecto in Exchange for one of the French Prisoners sent by me from Boston, and who was carry'd Captive from Minas, where he was taken by the Enemy in the late Surprize, that when the Canadeans went from Minas to Schiegnecto they march'd out of the Grand Prè about 500, but were reduc'd to about 350 before they reach'd Schiegnecto, by several of their party's leaving 'em at every great Village in Minas, thro' which they pass'd which makes it Evident that 150 of the Inhabitants of that District had Join'd the Canadeans in their late Attack upon the English at Grand Prè, and may Serve farther to shew your Grace the imminent Danger of all the Inhabitants of Minas's still Joining the Enemy, unless speedy measures

are taken for driving the Canadeans out of the Country, and Securing the fidelity of the Inhabitants in some better manner than it is at present; and how opportunely the forces sent last Winter from hence to Annapolis, and the Assurances I took the liberty of sending the Nova Scotians that those, who behav'd as good Subjects, sho'd have His Majesty's protection in their Estates, arriv'd there for saving the whole District of Minas from an open Revolt.

"This fluctuating State of the Inhabitants of Accadie seems, my Lord, naturally to arise from their finding a want of due protection from His Majesty's Government; and their Apprehensions that the French will soon be Masters of the Province, which their repeated Attempts every year for the Reduction of His Majesty's Fort at Annapolis Royal, and the Appearance of the late Duke D'Anville's Squadron from France upon their Coast with that View strongly Impress upon 'em, as does also the Residence of the Enemy in the Province, and the Sollicitations of their own Priests; and to this, I believe, may be added some Jealousy, which the Enemy and Priests are for ever instilling into 'em, that the English want only a safe Opportunity of driving all the French Inhabitants off their Settlements; which tho' Mr Mascarene assures me that his communicating to 'em my printed Letter promising 'em His Majesty's protection, had so far allay'd as together with the Arrival of the late Detachment of Soldiers sent from hence in the Winter for the Defence & protection of the Province, to disappoint Mr de Ramsay's Attempt upon the Inhabitants of Minas for bringing 'em to an open Revolt, and to make him retire from Minas to Schiegnecto, yet as the hopes my Letter may have made 'em entertain have not been yet Confirm'd by Assurances of His Majesty's Royal protection directly from England I cant but think, there is a most apparant danger of Nova Scotia's being soon lost, if the Expedition against Canada should not proceed this year, nor any Measures be taken, or particular Orders be sent by His Majesty for Securing the Province against the Enemy & strengthening his Government among the Inhabitants, For I perceive that the General Assembly of this Province, from

whence only the Succours & Support which His Majesty's Garrison at Annapolis Royal has hitherto received for the Protection & Defence of Nova Scotia, have been sent, are tir'd of having 'em drawn wholly from their own people, and despair of its being effectual without His Majesty's more immediate Interposition for the protection of that province; And I look upon it as a very happy Incident, that I had it in my power to send Mr Mascarene the Support, I did the last Winter, and beginning of the Spring, out of the Levies rais'd for the Expedition against Canada, which I insisted upon doing as they were in His Majesty's Pay (tho' rais'd for another Service) but should not have been able to do it (I believe) had it depended wholly upon the Consent of the Assembly, tho' generally well dispos'd for His Majesty's Service."

NEWCASTLE TO SHIRLEY, 30 MAY, 1747.

(*Extract.*)

"As you and Mr Warren have represented, That an Opinion prevailed amongst the Inhabitants of Nova Scotia, That It was intended to remove Them from their Settlements and Habitations in that Province; And as that Report may probably have been artfully spread amongst Them in order to induce Them to withdraw Themselves from their Allegiance to His Majesty, and to take Part with the Enemy; His Majesty thinks it necessary, That proper measures should be taken, to remove any such ill-grounded Suggestions; and, for that Purpose, It is the King's Pleasure, That you should declare in some publick and authentick manner to His Majesty's Subjects, Inhabitants of that Province, That there is not the least Foundation for any Apprehension of that nature; But That, on the contrary, It is His Majesty's Resolution to protect, and maintain, all such of Them as shall continue in their Duty, and Allegiance to His Majesty, in the quiet & peaceable Possession of their respective Habitations, and Settlements And That They shall continue to enjoy the free Exercise of their Religion.

"His Majesty did propose to have signed a Proclamation to the purport above mentioned and to have transmitted it to you, to have been published in Nova Scotia; But as the Advices, that have been received here, of a Body of the New England Troops, which were advanced to Menis having been surprised by a Party of the French Canadeans and their Indians, and having been either cut off, or taken Prisoners; And the great Probability there is, That this Misfortune could not have happened to that Body of Troops, without the Assistance or, at least, Connivance of the Inhabitants of Nova Scotia; make it very difficult to fix the Terms of the intended Proclamation; His Majesty thinks it more advisable to leave it to you to make such a Declaration in His Name, as you shall be of Opinion, the present Circumstances of the Province may require."

Shirley to Newcastle, 8 June, 1747.

(*Extract.*)

"I have nothing to add to my Letters, which I have lately transmitted to your Grace, except that Mr de Ramsay is still at Chiegnecto with his party in Expectation of a Reinforcement from Canada, and the Arrival of an Armament from France, and that he has not thought fit to venture again to Manis [*Mines*], but insists in his Messages to the Inhabitants there that they should look upon themselves as Subjects to the French King since the New England Troops were oblig'd to retire out of their District by Capitulation, but that this has had no Effect upon the Inhabitants, the Reinforcement, which I sent there afterwards, having taken repossession of Manis, and hoisted the King's Flagg there, and the Deputies of Manis having thereupon renew'd their Oaths of Fidelity to His Majesty at Annapolis Royal; I continue the last Reinforcement at the Garrison still for the Security of that and Manis; But it is not strong enough to drive the French from Schiegnecto, it being suspected that the Inhabitants of that District, who were ever refractory to His Majesty's Government, would not scruple to

Join the Enemy in case of an attack upon 'em; And I could not think it adviseable for me to send all the Forces, which I had rais'd for the Expedition against Canada within this Government upon another Service (as I must have done to have been strong enough to force the Enemy out of Schiegnecto after the Action at Minas) when I was in daily Expectation of receiving His Majesty's Commands concerning the prosecution of the intended expedition, and besides, the Assembly, which has been at a great Expence for the raising of the men for the service of the Expedition only, strongly insisted upon my reserving 1500 of 'em to go against Crown Point, as your Grace will perceive by the inclos'd Copy of their Answer to my Message; However the several Reinforcements, which I did send to Annapolis, have preserv'd the Garrison and province from falling into the Enemys hands the last year, and not only made the Enemy quit Manis, but still Confine 'em to Schiegnecto; and had the Rhode Island & New Hampshire Troops Join'd the Massachusetts Forces at Manis, as was propos'd, and both those Governments promis'd me they should, and one of the Massachusetts Companies had not been lost in their passage, we should have been strong enough (I am perswaded) to have drove the Enemy the last Winter quite out of the Province of Nova Scotia: As it is, I doubt not, if no Armament arrives from France, we shall be able to keep 'em out of Annapolis and Manis till I receive His Majesty's Commands, which I am in daily Expectation of, and will, I hope, Enable me to take effectual Measures for getting rid of the Enemy and Securing the Province against their Attempts for the future."

SHIRLEY TO NEWCASTLE, BOSTON, 25 JUNE, 1747.

(*Extract.*)

"MY LORD DUKE,

"Since my last to your Grace, I have Accounts from Nova Scotia, that the French have rais'd a Battery of Nine Guns on the back of Schiegnecto to oppose the landing of Forces from Bay Verte, that they were also building a Fort

& had landed Cannon & Mortars there, which they were now hawling by Land, and may use either for Fortifying that District, or transport from thence to Annapolis Royal for the Reduction of his Majesty's Garrison; There has been likewise further Accounts from thence that the Inhabitants were in Expectation of 1000 Men from Canada, which together with the Indians & People of Schiegnecto, & some of Manis, it is said, would make up M^r De Ramsay's Party 5000, who were then to proceed against Annapolis; and that three large French Ships of Force had been seen in Bay Verte, vizt two from Canada & one from France and landed Troops & Stores. These Accounts gain Credit the more easily as it seems not to be doubted, but that the French have the Reduction of Nova Scotia extremely at heart, and will be continually making some Attempt or other against it, whilst the Warr lasts; and I am sorry to find by a Message lately sent me from the Assembly desiring I would recall the Soldiers, I last sent to Annapolis, that they seem out of heart about the effectual Preservation of it from the Enemy. Should the French gain it by any sudden Stroke, I am perswaded, they would be so strong there by the Addition of all the Inhabitants to their other Forces, as well as the Numbers they would draw from Canada, & by immediate Fortifications of it, that it would require a very considerable Armament & Number of Troops to recover it from 'em; which makes me think it my Indispensable Duty to trouble your Grace with so frequent a Repetition of my Apprehensions concerning it. The enemy may indeed be now look'd upon as Masters of Scheignecto which Place it is evident they are busy in fortifying; & would have been so likewise of Manis by this time, had they not been oblig'd to withdraw their Troops from thence last Fall by the Arrival of the Detachments, I sent there."

Shirley to Newcastle, 8 July, 1747

(*Extract.*)

"I shall now take the Liberty to submit to your Grace's Consideration the most practicable Scheme, that occurs to

me at present for effectually driving & keeping the Canadeans out of Nova Scotia; vizt if Mr Knowles when the Season is too far advanc'd for the French to make an Attempt from France against Louisbourg, should detach 1000 Men out of that Garrison to be join'd by 2000 from New England at Annapolis Royal, and from thence to proceed to Schiegnecto; that Force would, I apprehend, drive the Enemy off, and easily make us Masters of all the Inhabitants of that District, who seem to have ever been so deeply engaged on the Side of the Enemy as to make 'em forfeit all pretence of right to hold their Possessions; and if the 2000 New England Men were to share among 'em that District upon Condition of their setling there with their Families in such a defensible manner as they should be directed to do, and the french Inhabitants of that District were to be transplanted into New England, and distributed among the four Governments there; That I apprehend might be a Settlement of the District of Schiegnecto strong enough to keep the Canadeans out, and to defend themselves against the Indians; and the Inhabitants of the two other Districts of Nova Scotia, vizt Menis & Annapolis, being thus lock'd up between the Settlement in Schiegnecto at one End, and his Majesty's Garrison at the other, and aw'd by the removal of the french Inhabitants of Schiegnecto from off their Lands, would be constantly held to their good behaviour, and by Intermarriages & the spreading of the English Settlement from Schiegnecto, the whole Province, or at least the greatest part of it, might in two or three Generations become English Protestants — I would add that such an Exchange of the present Inhabitants of Schiegnecto for New England Men, would make up to the four Colonies of New England the Loss of the Families propos'd to be remov'd from thence to Nova Scotia upon this Occasion, hinder Canada's being strengthened by the Expulsion of the French from their Possessions, & prevent the English Settlement at Schiegnecto from being harrass'd by their continual Attempts to recover their former Lands; And the Encouragement given to the New England Men by the propos'd Distribution of the Lands among 'em would

besides make the raising of 2000 Men for this Service much more practicable, & less expensive to the Crown.

"Upon the whole, my Lord, if the War continues, unless some measures are very suddenly taken for the better Security of Nova Scotia, there seems to be great danger that that Province will not long remain his Majesty's.

"I am with the most dutiful regard,
"My Lord Duke,
"Your Grace's most devoted and
"most Obedient Servant
"W Shirley."

Shirley to Newcastle, 24 August, 1747.

"My Lord Duke,

"The French Declaration, of which the inclos'd is a Copy, did not come to my hands till I had finished the letter, wch accompanies it: And I send it your Grace, as it may serve to shew the Views of the French with respect to Accadie, the Dependance they have upon the Dispositions of the Inhabitants, what advantage they propos'd to themselves from the New England Levies under the Command of the late Lieuten^t^ Col. Noble's quitting Menis by Capitulation, and the necessity there was of my sending the last Detachment of soldiers to Mr Mascarene to take repossession of Menis, and make the Inhabitants of it renew their oath of fidelity to his Majesty; which had its desir'd Effect.

"I am with the most Dutifull regard
"My Lord Duke,
"Your Grace's Most Devoted,
"and Most Obedient Humble Servant
"W Shirley."

Shirley to Newcastle, 20 Oct. 1747.

(*Extract.*)

"The general Inclination which, the french Inhabitants of Nova Scotia have to the french Interest, proceeds from

their Ties of Consanguinity to the French of Canada, but more especially from those of their Religion, which last seems to put 'em greatly under the Influence of their Priests, who continually receive their Directions from the Bishop of Quebeck, & are the Instruments, by which the Governour of Canada makes all his Attempts for the Reduction of the Province to the french Crown, & Keeps the Indians of Nova Scotia (commonly called the Cape Sable Indians) in their Dependence upon him; particular Instances of which may be given in the first Body of French & Indians, which attack'd the King's Garrison soon after the Declaration of the present War's being headed by a Priest of Nova Scotia; and the principal Part in giving Intelligence to the Enemy, maintaining the Correspondence between Canada and Nova Scotia, assembling Cape Sable Indians, & influencing such of the Inhabitants as had joined with or assisted the Enemy, has been manag'd by another Priest of that Province; Other Instances of this Kind might be given, as particularly the Attempt to bring the Inhabitants into Revolt soon after the late Surprize at Menis by endeavouring to influence 'em with the Authority of the Bishop of Quebeck pronouncing 'em to be free from their Oath of Allegiance to his Majesty. But I shall content myself with observing to your Grace only one piece of Policy made use of by the french Priests in Nova Scotia for preserving the whole Body of the People intirely french, and Roman Catholick's, vizt forbidding all Intermarriages with the English under Pain of Excommunication, (of which I am informed there has been one or two late Instances in actual Excommunication upon this Occasion) & which has had so general an Effect as to prevent the Settlement of any one English Family within the Province, from the first Reduction of it to the present time, tho' some have attempted to setle in the Country; & to Keep out Inter-marriages between the French & his Majesty's English Subjects, as that I never heard of any one Instance besides the before mentioned ones; And I would humbly submit it to your Grace's Consideration if the free Exercise of the Roman Catholick Religion and an

unlimited Toleration of Roman Priests in Nova Scotia should continue to have the same Effect in that Colony for the next succeeding forty years, as it has had within these last forty; the Inhabitants there are suffer'd to remain a distinct Body of French in the Neighbourhood of Canada, with the Ties of Consanguinity & Religion between *them* & the Canadeans still growing stronger, untill they double or perhaps treble their Number (the French of Canada likewise at the same time increasing their Strength & Numbers) whether it may not prove in the End cherishing a Colony of Inhabitants for the subversion of the King's Government in it, & the strengthening of the french Interest upon the Continent.

"The Treaty of Utrecht, my Lord, by which the cession of Accadie (or Nova Scotia) with its Inhabitants was made to the Crown of Great Britain does not seem to lay his Majesty under an Obligation to allow the french Inhabitants the Exercise of the Roman Catholick Religion; and as his Majesty is as yet under no Promise to do it, I should hope that Methods might be found for weakening the Ties of Consanguinity & Religion between even the present Generation of the french inhabitants of Nova Scotia & those of Canada, by beginning new ones between his Majesty's English & french subjects there, and at the same time controuling the pernicious Power of the Romish Priests over the french Inhabitants & the Indians of that Province, which may possibly be cut off or at least obstructed by his Majesty's making a Promise to continue the french Inhabitants in the free Exercise of their Religion.

"Wherefore as his Majesty has been pleas'd to refer it to my Opinion to fix the Terms of the Declaration, which he has commanded me to make in his Name to the Inhabitants of Nova Scotia; whereby it became my Duty to avoid every thing in it, which appear'd to me to have a Tendency to disserve his Government within that Province, I have taken the Liberty to suspend promissing 'em the free Exercise of the Romish Religion, tho' it is mention'd in your Grace's Letter to have been part of what

was at first propos'd to have been included in his Majesty's intended Proclamation, till I could transmit my Sentiments to your Grace, and I should have his Majesty's farther Directions upon it; & have in the mean time made a Declaration of such Points, as seem'd necessary to be ascertained to the Inhabitants for quieting their Minds, & would not admit of Delay.

"I might mention to your Grace some local Reasons for my Omitting in the Declaration what I have done, but shall not presume to trouble you with any but what I thought it my indispensable Duty to lay before your Grace.

"I am with the most dutiful Regard
"My Lord Duke,
"Your Grace's most Devoted
"and most Obedient Servant
"W Shirley."

INDEX.

INDEX.

A.

Abenakis, Indians, the, living in Maine, i. 34; active in William and Mary's War, i. 34; their treacherous peace with Governor Dudley, i. 34; attack the towns of Wells, Casco, etc., i. 40–47; troops sent by Governor Dudley for defence against them, i. 47; join in an attack on Deerfield, i. 53, 58; march with their captives away from Deerfield, i. 65–74; considered in the Treaty of Utrecht, i. 178; to be transported to Isle Royale, i. 181; burn the village of Brunswick, i. 230; conclude a treaty of peace, i. 245; join in war-parties from Montreal, ii. 232; propose an attack upon Fort Massachusetts, to Rigaud, ii. 251; they attack the fort, ii. 259; their humane treatment of the prisoners, ii. 266; their general devastation of villages in the Hoosac valley, ii. 267.

Abercrombie, Captain, sent with summons for the surrender of Port Royal, i. 147.

Acadia, Province of, embraced Nova Scotia and New Brunswick, i. 106; a governor appointed for, i. 106; its people deprived of their fishing by privateers, i. 107; they fight the Massachusetts privateers, i. 108; the conquest of, i. 149; offers made by Louis XIV. to retain, i. 178; creeds and politics at, i. 185; the population of, i. 191; neglected by England, i. 191, 192; France endeavors to repossess, i. 192; its boundaries disputed, i. 204; Governor Shirley urges the protection of, ii. 186; troops sent by Governor Shirley to protect, ii. 199.

Acadian missionaries labor against the British Government, i. 193; their political work, i. 194; complaints of English governors against them, i. 194, 195.

Acadians, their migration to Isle Royale desired, i. 182; their oath to Queen Anne, i. 183; induced to migrate, i. 187; their freedom of worship, i. 192; refuse oath of allegiance to George I., i. 198, 199; the proclamation of General Philipps concerning their oath, i. 198; their oath of allegiance to George II., i. 201; their child-like dependence, i. 202; divided in sentiment between their allegiance to the French or English, ii 188; made British subjects by the Treaty of Utrecht, ii. 190; known as "Neutral French," ii. 190; their illiteracy, social quality, population, etc., ii. 190, 191; incited to insurrection by the French, ii. 192; excited at the appearance of D'Anville's fleet, ii. 192; Governor Shirley's plan concerning them, ii. 193, 194 and *note*, 195; proposal of Governor Shirley to exclude French priests, ii. 195; and convert them to Protestantism, ii. 197; Ramesay endeavors to excite them to insurrection, ii. 198; threatened by Ramesay against intercourse with the English, ii. 217; endeavor to conciliate both French and English, ii. 218 and *note;* ordered to take arms against the English, ii. 219; their deplorable condition, ii. 220.

Adams, Mr., of Medfield, i. 221 *note*.

Adams (East Hoosac), Mass., ii. 246.

Addison, i. 142.

Aix-la-Chapelle, the Peace of, signed, ii. 270.

Akins, Mr., i. 203 *note*.

Alabama, i. 291.

Alabama River, the French propose to build forts at, ii. 70.

Albany, N.Y., i. 7, 48; the fur-trade carried on at, i. 13; a rendezvous for troops, i. 130; the fort at, neglected, ii. 226; Indian ravages in vicinity of, ii. 229.

Aldrich, John, wounded in defending Fort Massachusetts, ii. 259; on the

march as a prisoner of war from Fort Massachusetts, ii. 266.
Alexander VI., Pope, i. 294.
Alexander, Deacon Ebenezer, fortifies his house at Northfield against Indian attack, ii. 246.
Alford, John, mentioned, ii. 133.
Algonkins, Indians, join in war-parties from Montreal, ii. 232.
Allein, ——, at Port Royal, i. 113.
Allen, ——, killed at Deerfield by Indians, ii. 264.
Allen, Eunice, Samuel, and Caleb, children attacked by Indians at Deerfield, ii. 264.
Allen's River, i. 108, 123, 146.
Allison, widow, living at Deerfield, i. 56.
Allouez, Jesuit missionary at St. Louis, i. 316.
Alton Bay, meeting of an Indian war-party at, i. 92.
"Amazone," French war-ship, ii. 176.
America, the extent of territory claimed by the British provinces of, ii. 63; the claim of France to, ii. 68.
American colonies, their part in the War of the Spanish Succession, i. 1.
Amesbury, annoyed by Indians, i. 95.
Amherst, General, mentioned, ii. 125, 126, 269 *note*.
Amsden, ——, a boy killed at Deerfield by Indians, ii. 264.
Andros, Sir Edmond, mentioned, i. 101.
Androscoggin Indians, pretended peace with Governor Dudley, i. 35.
Ann, Cape, i. 234.
Annapolis, an uprising of the Acadians at, i. 184; the government at, a mockery, i. 190; neglected by England, i. 191; attacked by the French under Duvivier, ii. 80.
Annapolis River, i. 109, 122.
Anne, Queen, mentioned, i. 101, 183; receives some Mohawk chiefs, i. 142; concerning the emigrants at Acadia, i. 186.
Anne, Fort, i. 135.
Anson, Admiral of an English fleet, ii. 184.
Anticosti, Island of, i. 165.
Appleton, Colonel William, makes attack upon Port Royal, i. 122.
Archives of Massachusetts, i. 55 *note*.
"Ardent," a war-ship at Louisbourg, ii. 81.
"Argonaut," French war-ship, ii. 176.
Arickaras, Indians on the Missouri, ii. 15 *note*.
Arkansas Indians, ii. 11.
Arkansas River, ii. 5, 22.
Armstrong, Lieutenant-Colonel and Governor, at Annapolis, i. 191; mentioned, i. 193; quoted concerning the Acadian missionaries, i. 194, 195; endeavors to persuade the Acadians to allegiance, i. 200.
Arnold, Benedict, mentioned, i. 205.
Ash, Thomas, killed at siege of Louisbourg, ii. 127.
Ashuelot River, ii. 230.
Assagunticooks, join in a council to meet Governor Shute, i. 216.
Assembly, the, of Massachusetts, refuse Governor Shute means to conciliate the Indians, i. 230.
Assembly, of New York, opposition to the war-plans of Governor Clinton, ii. 223.
Assinniboin River, ii. 36.
Assinniboins, Indians of the West, ii. 30, 33, 35, 36; join La Vérendrye in his search for the Pacific, ii. 36.
Atkinson, Mr., envoy from New Hampshire to Vaudreuil, i. 243.
Augusta, Me., a stone fort built at, i. 213.
"Auguste," ship wrecked at Cape Breton, ii. 62.
Auneau, Jesuit, a member of La Vérendrye's party, ii. 33.
Austrian Succession, War of the, breaks out, ii. 78.
Avery, John, on committee to protect the settlement of Number Four, ii. 235.
Avon River, ii. 206.
Ayllon, Vasquez de, ii. 67 *note*.

B.

Bacon, Daniel, a captain in Pepperrell's army, ii. 138 *note*.
Bacouel, village of, ii. 204.
"Badine," frigate, i. 290.
Baker, ——, escapes from Indian captivity, i. 83.
Baker, Lieutenant, killed at Grand Pré, i. 118
Baker, Miss Alice C., paper on John Sheldon, by, cited, i. 85 *note*; extracts of baptism of captives in Canada, i. 86 *note*.
Bancroft, Robert Hale, ii. 107 *note*.
Bangor, i. 235.
Bank, Captain Louis, sent from London with French colonists, i. 292.
Banks, Lieutenant, secures the ransom of Elisha Plaisted from the Indians, i. 50.
Baptiste, Captain, a noted sea-rover, i. 77; released by English governor in exchange for Rev. John Williams, i. 84.

Barachois, a pond near Louisbourg, ii. 124.
Barnard, Rev. John, chaplain in expedition, to Port Royal, i. 121 *note*; attempts a plan of the fort, i. 124; takes part in a skirmish, i. 126.
Barrett, Ensign John, his personal property, i. 40.
Barron, Elias, a member of Lovewell's expedition, i. 256.
Barrot, surgeon of the colony of Louisiana, i. 297.
Bartlett, J. R., cited, i. 142 *note*.
Basin of Mines, Acadia, concerning the migration of its people, i. 189.
Bastide, ——, English engineer at Louisbourg, ii. 125.
"Bastonnais" (Bostonians), their trade with the Acadians, i. 111.
Batten Kill River, on the Hudson River, ii. 226, known as *la rivière de Saratogue*, ii. 253.
Baxter, Rev. Joseph, intended to teach the Eastern Indians, i. 216; his correspondence with Sebastien Rale, i. 220, 221; his preaching to the Norridgewocks, i. 220; his mission a failure, i. 222.
Bayagoula Indians, on the Mississippi, i. 291.
Bay Verte, a fort built at, ii. 192.
Bay of Biscay, ii. 175.
Bay of Fundy, i. 118, 199.
Bean, Lieutenant, sent to attack Norridgewock, i. 236.
Beaubassin, Sieur de, a French officer in Indian attack at Casco, i. 43, 44; quoted concerning Indian warfare, i. 98; sent to defend Lighthouse Point from the English invasion, ii. 142; joins Rigaud's war-party, ii. 254; mentioned, ii. 309.
Beaubassin (Chignecto), an Acadian settlement, attacked by Colonel Church, i. 119; Ramesay's troops quartered at, ii. 202; Ramesay in possession of, ii. 219.
Beaucour, French officer in command of a war-party, i. 91.
Beauharnois, Charles, Marquis de, governor of Canada, averse to attacking the Outagamies, i. 325; quoted, i. 328 *note*, 332 *note*; mentioned, ii. 28, 155, 156; promotes La Vérendrye's enterprise, ii. 31, 34; succeeded by Galissonière as governor, ii. 56; threatens the destruction of the trading-house at Oswego, ii. 73; quoted concerning Acadia, ii. 188.
Beauharnois, Fort, the Sioux mission at, ii. 28.
Beaujeu, ——, journal cited, ii. 187, *note*; the hero of the Monongahela, ii. 202; in Ramesay's expedition, ii. 202; assists in attack on Grand Pré, ii. 207; commands Coulon de Villiers' party after his death, ii. 211; renders valuable assistance to La Corne, ii. 212; reports the French and English losses at Grand Pré, ii. 215; account of attentions paid by the English after the capitulation at Grand Pré, ii. 216; his account of the French victory cited, ii. 217 *note*.
Beauport, the seigniory of, i. 22.
Beaurain, Chevalier de, *Mémoire* cited, ii. 8 *note*.
Becancour, an Abenaki mission, i. 208.
Bedford, Duke of, concerning the removal of the Acadians, ii. 193.
Bégon, Intendant cited, i. 196, *note*.
Belknap, ——, *History of New Hampshire* cited, i. 44 *note*, 226 *note*, 253 *note*, ii. 83 *note*, 161 *note*.
"Bell of St. Regis," the story of, i. 88, *note*.
Belleisle, Madame de, at Port Royal, i. 113.
Bellomont, Lord, mentioned, i. 4, 7; quoted concerning the Five Nations, i. 9.
Bennett, Captain, i. 194.
Berkshire, Valley of, Massachusetts settlements made in, ii. 245.
Berwick, Me., attacked by Indians, i. 46, 95.
Bienville, Le Moyne de, with Iberville, in his exploration to Louisiana, i. 291; proceeds to explore the Mississippi River, i. 292; encounters a party of French colonists, i. 292; deceives them into abandoning their project, i. 293; accusations against him at Mobile, i. 296; governor of the colony of Louisiana, i. 297; succeeded by La Mothe-Cadillac, i. 298; reappointed governor of Louisiana, i. 307; recalled to France, i. 309; again made governor of Louisiana, i. 311; resignation of, i. 312; called the father of Louisiana, i. 312; his disastrous attempt at fighting the Chickasaws, i. 312; mentioned, ii. 9; orders a fort built on Missouri River, ii. 14; sends a party to explore in New Mexico, ii. 22.
Big Horn Range of Rocky Mountains, ii. 50, 51 *note*.
Bigot, François, intendant at Canada, ii. 57; quoted, ii. 116 *note*, 140 *note*, 126; quoted concerning the siege of Louisbourg, ii. 128, 149; mentioned, ii. 287.

Billerica, joins in Lovewell's expedition, i. 250.
Biloxi, a fort built at, by Iberville, i. 292.
Bishop of Quebec, i. 187.
Blackhawk, chief of the Sacs and Foxes, i. 333.
Black Hills, ii. 8, 43.
Black Point, Me., men murdered and captured by Indians at, i. 46.
Blake, Nathan, captured by Indians at Keene, ii. 231.
Blenheim, i. 157.
Blue Earth River, ii. 6.
Board of Trade of New York, i. 6.
Bobé, Father, the claims of France to American territory as set forth by, ii. 65-68; his advice to France towards securing territory in America, ii. 70.
Bodmer, Charles, painted a group of Sacs and Foxes, Indians, i. 333 and *note*.
Boisbriant, Pierre Dugué de, commander of garrison at Mobile, i. 296; commandant at the Illinois, i. 317, ii. 15; built Fort Chartres, i. 318.
Boishébert, in Ramesay's expedition, ii. 202; a member of Ramesay's expedition, guards the roads to Grand Pré, ii. 205; assists in the attack upon Grand Pré, ii. 211.
Bollan, William, urges the claim of Massachusetts in England for reimbursement for the cost of taking Louisbourg, ii. 160; to Secretary Willard, cited, ii. 160, *note*.
Bomazeen, Captain, an Indian chief, i. 35, 50; his wife captured, i. 236.
Bonaventure, Captain, concerning Boston traders, i. 104, *note;* acting governor at Port Royal, i. 111 and *note;* charges made against him, i. 112.
Bonaventure, priest, i. 187.
Bonaventure, Madame de, at breakfast of the English officers, i. 148.
Bonavista, Newfoundland, i. 127.
Bonner, Captain, a pilot in Walker's expedition, i. 163.
Borland, an illicit trader, i. 103.
Boston, plan of the French to destroy, i. 3; plan of Le Moyne d'Iberville to destroy, i. 3; plan of Baron de Saint-Castin to attack, i. 4 *note;* accused of illicit trade with the French of Acadia, i. 103; troops encamped at, awaiting an attack on Canada, i. 138; arrival of British squadron at, i. 144; preparations for the attack on Port Royal, i. 144; warned of the designs of British ministry, i. 153; must be reduced, i. 155 and *note;* arrival of a fleet at, designed to attack Canada, i. 158 and *note;* preparations at, to join in Walker's Canada expedition, i. 161 and *note;* friends of the Indians at, i. 214; sends reinforcement to the fort at Annapolis, ii. 82; the news of the surrender of Louisbourg received in, ii. 158; arrival of the chests of money from England as payment of the cost of taking of Louisbourg, ii. 160; alarmed at the expected coming of a French fleet, ii. 173.
Boston Gazette, cited, ii. 117 *note*.
Boston News Letter, i. 149 *note*.
"Boston Packet," a war-ship, ii. 101.
Boucher, Marie, marriage of, to René Gaultier de Varennes, ii. 29.
Boucher, Pierre, governor of Three Rivers, ii. 29.
Boularderie, a French officer at Louisbourg, killed, ii. 115.
Bourbon, Fort, built by La Vérendrye, ii. 35.
Bourgmont, ——, sent by West India Company to river Missouri, ii. 15; built Fort Orléans on river Missouri, ii. 15; his journey to Comanche villages, ii. 15; makes a second visit to the Comanches, and holds a council, ii. 17; his meeting with the Comanche chiefs, ii. 19; makes a treaty of alliance with them, ii. 20; returns to Fort Orléans, ii. 21.
Bourke, Captain John G., ii. 62 *note*.
Bourne, Ed. E., *History of Wells, Me.*, cited, i. 40 *note*, ii. 99 *note*.
Bow Indians, Gens de L'Arc, visit of the brothers Le Vérendrye to them, ii. 46.
Bradley, Joseph, the house of, attacked by Indians, i. 46; his wife captured, i. 47.
Bradstreet, Colonel John, proposed the attack upon Louisbourg, ii. 83 *note;* reinforced Vaughan at Louisbourg, ii. 117.
Brandon, Arthur, his wife and children killed by Indians, i. 46.
Brattleboro', a halting-place of the Indians on their retreat from Deerfield, i. 70.
Brébeuf, a Jesuit mission priest, i. 16, 134, 207.
Brest, D'Anville's fleet at, ii. 174.
Breton, Cape, i. 170, 179; called Isle Royale, i. 179; offered to France, i. 179; mentioned, ii. 62.
Bridgman, Jonathan, wounded in the defence of Fort Massachusetts, ii. 259.
British officers, how regarded in New England, i. 122; not pleased with the colonists at Boston, i. 160.

British Provinces of America, the extent of territory claimed by them, ii. 63.
Brookfield, annoyed by Indians, i. 95.
Brooks, ——, commanded the attack upon the island battery at Louisbourg, ii. 138; attempts to haul down the French flag, ii. 139.
Brouillan, Jacques François de, governor of Acadia, proposes a treaty with New England, i. 4, 5 *note*; appointed governor of Acadia, i. 106; the charges against him, i. 110; death of, i. 110.
Brown, ——, *Cape Breton*, ii. 113 *note*.
Brown, Captain, sent to attack Norridgewock, i. 236.
Brown, John Carter, collection of portraits, i. 142 *note*.
Brulé Indians, a tribe of the Sioux, ii. 54 *note*.
Brunswick, Me., i. 210; burned in revenge by the Abenakis, i. 230.
Bruyas, ——, Jesuit, an agent among the Five Nations, i. 9.
Bruyère, Fabry de la, sent to explore in New Mexico, ii. 22.
Brymner's *Report*, etc., cited, ii. 37 *n*.
Bullard, John, killed in Indian attack at Keene, ii. 231.
Bunker Hill, battle of, ii. 108.
Burchett, ——, Secretary of the Admiralty, i. 159 *note*.
Burke, ——, i. 263.
Burlington, Vt., i. 73.
Burnet, Governor, built a trading-house at Oswego on Lake Ontario, ii. 72.
Burr, ——, his soldiers camped at Louisbourg, ii. 121.
Bute, his coming into office, i. 176.
Butler, Captain, officer in Nicholson's army, i. 170.

C.

Cabot, ——, *Memoir of Emerson* cited, ii. 97 *note*.
Cabot, John, mentioned, ii. 66.
Cabot, Sebastian, mentioned, ii. 66.
Cadenaret, an Abenaki chief, ii. 252.
"Cæsar," a war-ship, ii. 101.
Cahokia, a mission on the Mississippi, i. 317.
Callières, ——, opposes the plan of Cadillac for the Indians, i. 23; letters cited, i. 25 *note*, i. 26 *note*.
Cambridge, a rendezvous for troops, i. 144.
Canseau, fishing-station, seizure of, by the French Governor, Duquesnel, ii. 79.
Canso, Nova Scotia, attacked by Indians, i. 234.
Canterbury, Archbishop of, i. 142.
Canada, a scheme for the reduction of, i. 128–140; the possibilities of her conquest of New York, i. 263; her policy towards the Western savages and the Five Nations, i. 266; jealousy of the Louisiana colony, i. 313; endeavors to control the Western posts and secure the fur-trade, i. 315; the opposing influences exerted upon her pioneers, ii. 2; a company formed to establish a mission among the Sioux, ii. 26; a chain of French posts established from, to Louisiana, ii. 76; Governor Shirley's proposal to capture, ii. 167; the plan of the campaign, ii. 169; alarmed, prepares for defence, ii. 170, 171; the campaign a failure, ii. 172.
Captives in Canada, their experience, release, etc., i. 80–86; baptism and marriage of, i. 86.
Capuchin friars, at Port Royal, i. 114.
Carheil, ——, Jesuit missionary, mentioned, i. 15, 17; his dispute with La Mothe-Cadillac, i. 18; deprived of his converts, i. 27.
"Caribou," a French war-ship, ii. 81, 176.
Carignan, regiment of, mentioned, ii. 29.
Carolina traders, instigate the Indians against the French colonists, i. 312.
Carter, Ebenezer, ransomed from the Indians, i. 83.
Carter, Marah, murdered by Indians, i. 62.
Cartier, ——, mentioned, i. 16.
Casco (Falmouth, Me.), a council of Eastern Indians meet Governor Dudley at, i. 34; Indian attack upon the fort at, i. 42, 43; annoyed by Indians, i. 95.
Casco Bay, i. 125; a meeting of Indians at, to ratify the treaty, i. 246.
Casgrain, Abbé, cited, i. 188 *note*.
Casgrain, Rev. H. R., cited, i. 203 *note*.
Castine, town of, Maine, i. 36.
Catlin, Joseph, inhabitant of Deerfield, i. 59.
Catlin, Mrs. John, members of her family killed by Indians, i. 61; her death, i. 61.
Caughnawagas, a mission settlement of Mohawk and Oneida Indians, i. 11.
Caughnawagas, Indians, their contraband trade between New York and Canada, i. 12; join in an attack on Deerfield, i. 53, 58; they march away from Deerfield, i. 65–74; join a war-party, i. 92.

Caulfield, deputy-governor at Annapolis, i. 188; tries to induce the Acadians to swear allegiance to George I., i. 198.
Chacornacle, ——, accompanies Cadillac to Detroit, i. 25.
Chamberlain, John, said to have shot the Indian chief Paugus, i. 258 *note*.
Chambly, the French outpost, i. 74; near Montreal, i. 135; a fort built at, by the French, ii. 74.
Champigny, ——, opposes the plan of Cadillac for the Indians, i. 23.
Champlain, Lake, i. 12, 16, 73, 130, 135, ii. 245.
Chardon, missionary, his scheme concerning the Outagamies, i. 325.
Charles II., i. 129, 263.
Charlestown, N. H., ii. 244. *See* Number Four.
Charlestown Neck, Mass., ii. 108.
Charlevoix, Jesuit historian, quoted, i. 44, 136 *note*, 207; quoted concerning the siege of Port Royal, i. 149 *note*; at Kaskaskia, i. 316, his search for the Pacific Ocean, ii. 25, 26 and *note*.
Chartres, Duc de, mentioned, i. 318.
Chartres, Fort, enabled the French to control the upper Mississippi, ii. 76.
Chassin, Michel de, quoted concerning the wives sent to Louisiana, i. 307; in council at "the Illinois," i. 318.
Château Richer, a Jesuit mission near Quebec, i. 78.
Chaudière River, i. 3, 205.
"Chester," English war-ship, i. 145, 163, sent to reinforce Annapolis, ii. 182.
Chevereaux, an Acadian missionary, i. 193.
Chevry, M. de, quoted, i. 98 *note*.
Chibucto (Halifax), i. 106; arrival of Duc d'Anville at, ii. 174.
Chickasaws, Indians, attack the colonists in Louisiana, i. 310; mentioned, ii. 11.
Chignecto (Beaubassin) Acadia, concerning the migration of its people, i. 189, ii. 201.
Chimney Point, on Lake Champlain, ii. 268.
Choctaws, Indians of Mississippi, allies of the French, i. 310.
Choke-Cherry Indians, a band of the Sioux, ii 54 and *note*.
Christian, a Mohawk, in the attack on Norridgewock, i. 238.
Church, Colonel Benjamin, sent on expedition by Governor Dudley, i. 17; inhabitant of Deerfield, i. 59; his scheme of retaliation for Deerfield, i. 116; attacks Canadians at Passamaquoddy Bay, i. 118; attacks Grand Pré, i. 118; at Port Royal, i. 119.
Church, *Entertaining Passages*, cited, i. 119 *note*.
Cimarron River, ii. 22.
Clark, Fort, on the Missouri River, ii. 21.
Cleaves, Benjamin, his journal cited, ii. 161 *note*.
Clement, ——, complained of for selling liquor to the Indians, ii. 228.
Clesson, Lieutenant.
Clinton, Governor, induced the Iroquois to join in the invasion of Canada, ii. 222; his enemy, Chief-Justice James De Lancey, ii. 222; hampered in his war-plans by the Assembly of New York, ii. 223; his complaints to the Duke of Newcastle concerning the Assembly, ii. 225.
Clock, George, complained of for selling liquor to the Indians, ii. 229.
Cobb, Captain Sylvanus, sails into Chibucto harbor to spy upon the French fleet, ii. 180.
Cobequid (Truro), a missionary station, ii. 202, 204, 216.
Cobequid Bay, ii. 205.
Cockerill, Thomas, i. 132 *note*.
Coffin, an illicit trader, i. 103.
Colbert, ——, i. 2.
Cole, Isaac, killed by Indians, i. 49.
Collections of Maine Historical Society, cited, ii. 217 *note*.
Collections of New Hampshire Historical Society, ii. 244 *note*.
Collections of Nova Scotia Historical Society, cited, i. 129 *note*; i. 147 *note*.
Collections of Wisconsin Historical Society, cited, i. 332 *note*.
Colombière, in Ramesay's expedition, ii. 202; assists in the attack upon Grand Pré, ii. 211.
Colonial New York, cited, i. 142 *note*.
Colorado, ii. 22.
Colton, Mrs., great-granddaughter of John Williams, i. 87 *note*.
Comanche Indians, join Spaniards to attack the French at the Illinois, ii. 14, visit of Bourgmont to their village, ii. 17, 18, 19; make a treaty of alliance with Bourgmont, ii. 20.
Condé, Prince de, ii. 283.
Conflans, M. de, commands French ships-of-war, ii. 175; arrives at Halifax, and re-sails for France, ii. 178.
Congress of Governors, cited, i. 159 *note*.
Connecticut, called upon for troops, i.

130; assists in an attack upon Louisbourg, ii. 88; her contribution toward the siege of Louisbourg, ii. 100; reimbursed for expenses of taking Louisbourg, ii. 160; contributes men to capture Canada, ii. 169.
Connecticut River, ii. 230.
Conway, New Hampshire, i. 247.
Copps Hill, Boston, i. 159.
Corlaer. (*See* Schenectady.)
Cornbury, Lord, quoted, i. 6, 56, 320; Governor of New York, i. 56.
Corse, Elizabeth, married Jean Dumontel, i. 86.
Cortlandt, ——, i. 7.
Costebelle, governor at Placentia, i. 128; his scheme for warning Massachusetts against the designs of England, i. 150, 153; letter commanding the evacuation of Placentia, etc., i. 181.
Coulon de Villiers. (*See* Villiers, Coulon de.)
Courtemanche, a French officer, escorts ransomed prisoners from Canada, i. 83 and *note*; in Ramesay's expedition, ii. 202.
Coxe, *Description of Carolina*, quoted, i. 293 *note*.
Crafts, Benjamin, a private at Louisbourg, extract from his diary, ii. 164; death of, ii. 165.
Craggs, Secretary, i. 199 *note*.
Crawford Notch, i. 247.
Creeds and politics at Acadia, i. 185.
Crespel, Père, chaplain of Lignery's expedition, i. 327.
Cristineaux, Indians of the West, ii. 30, 33, 35, 36; join La Vérendrye in his search for the Pacific, ii. 36.
Crown Point, landing of Ramesay's troops at, i. 156; the intention of the English to seize, ii. 74; the French build a fort and take possession, ii. 75; the capture of, proposed by Governor Shirley, ii. 172.
Crozat, Antoine, the monopoly of Louisiana granted to him, i. 300; thwarted in his project, he resigns his charter, i. 304.
Cummings, William, joined in Lovewell's expedition, i. 251.
Cushnoc (Augusta), i. 213.
Cutter, Captain Ammi, left in command of defences at Canseau, ii. 110.

D.

D'Aillebout, Captain, commandant at the Island Battery at Louisbourg, ii. 138, 313.
D'Anjou, Duc, contests with France the Louisiana country, i. 295.
D'Anville, Duc, sails with his fleet for Halifax, ii. 175; meets with severe storms, ii. 176; arrival at Chibucto (Halifax), ii. 177; death of, ii. 178; the disasters to the fleet, ii. 181–183; return of the fleet to France, ii. 182.
D'Argenson, ii. 152.
D'Artaguette, quoted, i. 299.
D'Artaguette, Diron, accompanies Bienville to Louisiana as intendant, i. 297, 311.
D'Artaguette, Pierre, captured and killed by the Chickasaws, i. 318.
Daulnay, Jean, Canadian, i. 86.
Daulnay, Mrs. Jean (Freedom French), i. 86.
Dauphin Island, a French fort established at, i. 295.
Dauphin, Fort, built by La Vérendrye, ii. 35.
D'Auteuil, a member of Rigaud's war-party, ii. 261.
Davis, ——, saved the meeting-house from the Indians at Haverhill, i. 93.
Davis, Eleazer, in the fight at Lovewell's Pond, i. 256; reached the fort at Lake Ossipee, i. 257.
Deas, D., cited, ii. 178 *note*.
Debeline, General, mentioned as a commander of Canadian troops, ii. 238.
Deerfield, its site, people, etc., i. 53; the attack of Hertel de Rouville upon, planned, i. 53; fears of an Indian attack, i. 56; the end of a winter day at, i. 57; the attack upon, i. 58; after the attack, i. 62; driving the enemy out of, i. 63; the number of killed and wounded, i. 64; garrisoned against further attack, i. 66.
De Gannes, quoted, i. 149 *note*.
Degonnor, Jesuit missionary, ii. 30.
De Goutin recounts some gossip at Port Royal, i. 112.
D'Harcourt, Duc, i. 295 *note*.
De Lancey, James, Chief-Justice of New York, an enemy to Governor Clinton, ii. 222.
De la Vente, quoted, i. 303.
De Léry, his paper, *Mémoire sur la Canada*, cited, i. 136 *note*.
De l'Isle, the geographer, ii. 8 *note*.
De Muy, brothers, reinforce Fort Frédéric at Crown Point, ii. 250; the younger, a member of Rigaud's war-party, ii. 252; the elder, a member of Rigaud's war-party, ii. 261; the elder, sent to the fort to parley with Hawks, ii. 261.
De Muys, sent to succeed Bienville in Louisiana, i. 297; death of, i. 297.

Denonville, orders the occupation of Detroit, i. 20.
Denys, M. de La Ronde, sent to Boston with a mission from New France, i. 153; his mission a failure, i. 154; induced the Acadians to migrate, i. 186, 187; continues his mission to other settlements, i. 188.
"Deptford," a British frigate, i. 120.
D'Éraque, with Le Sueur on the Mississippi, ii. 7; abandoned Fort l'Huillier, ii. 8.
Deruisseau, a French scout, i. 136.
Deschenaux, M., ii. 287.
Desliettes, commandant in the Illinois country, proposes to exterminate the Outagamies, i. 325; joins Ligney's expedition against them, i. 327 *note*.
Desligneris, in Ramesay's expedition, ii. 202; assists in attack on Grand Pré, ii. 207.
"Despatch," one of Walker's warships, i. 167.
D'Estournel, vice-admiral of D'Anville's fleet, ii. 178; death of, ii. 179.
Destrahoudal, M., commander of warship "La Palme," ii. 182.
Detroit, Farmer's *History of*, cited, i. 17 *note;* motives of both French and English for the occupation of, i. 19; the city of, founded by La Mothe-Cadillac, i. 26; included in deed from the Five Nations to King William III., i. 30; an attempt at settlement by the French, i. 30; in command of Sieur Dubuisson, i. 269; arrival of the Outagamies, a hostile tribe, i. 270; some mischief done by the Indians, i. 271; arrival of friendly Indians to aid Dubuisson, i. 272, 273; its growth under the charge of La Mothe-Cadillac, i. 316.
Dieskau, Baron, mentioned, ii. 252.
Doucette, deputy-governor at Annapolis, i. 188, 194 *note*.
Douglas, ——, cited, ii. 83 *note*.
Douglas, Dr., quoted concerning the expedition against Louisbourg, ii. 104; mentioned, ii. 129; estimates the loss of men at Island Battery, ii. 140 *note;* extracts from his observations, ii. 166.
Dominique, Father, at Acadia, i. 182.
Dongan, Governor, New York, granted the "Hoosac Patent" to Dutch settlers, ii. 254.
Doolittle, *Narrative of Mischief*, etc., cited, ii. 237 *note*, 244 *note*.
Doolittle, Rev. Benjamin, his heterogeneous labors at Northfield, ii. 247; his record of Indian invasion, etc., ii. 248 and *note;* death of, ii. 248.
Dorchester, Mass., i. 121; a rendezvous for troops, i. 144.
Dorman, Ephraim, an inhabitant of Keene, surprised by the Indians, ii. 230.
Doty, ——, interpreter in Rigaud's war-party, ii. 263.
Dover, N. H., attacked by Indians, i. 91; annoyed by Indians, i. 95.
Downing, Joshua, killed by Indians, i. 49.
"Dragon," English war-ship, i. 131, 142 *note*, 145.
Drake, S. G., *Particular History*, etc., cited, ii. 249 *note*.
Dubuisson, Sieur, in command at Detroit, i. 269; surprised by a visit from the Outagamies, i. 270; asks aid of friendly Indians, i. 271; leads an attack upon the camp of the Outagamies, i. 275; grants an interview to the chief of the Outagamies, i. 278; addresses his wavering allies, i. 281; the Outagamies surrender to, i. 285; to Vaudreuil, cited, i. 287 *note;* mentioned, i. 332 *note*.
Duchambon, Governor, at Louisbourg during the siege, ii. 114; quoted, ii. 118, 119 *note;* his blunder in deserting the Grand Battery, ii. 120; quoted concerning the siege of Louisbourg, ii. 128; refuses to surrender Louisbourg, ii. 135; his account of the attack upon the Island Battery, ii. 140; offers resistance to the taking of Lighthouse Point by the English, ii. 142; receives news of the taking of the war-ship "Vigilant" by the English, ii. 143; sends a flag of truce to Pepperrell and Warren, ii. 149; agrees to Pepperrell's terms of capitulation, ii. 150; his report of the surrender mentioned, ii. 161 *note*.
Duclos, ——, intendant in Louisiana, i. 302.
Dudley, Governor Joseph, attempts a peace with Indians of Maine, i. 34; sends troops to defend against the Abenakis Indians, i. 47; quoted, i. 65 *note;* quoted concerning the ransom of prisoners, i. 82; gives leave for a raid into Canada, i. 96; urges the capture of Quebec, i. 98; to Lord ——, cited, i. 96 *note;* attempts a neutrality with Governor Vaudreuil, i. 99; portrayed, i. 100–103; sent prisoner to England, i. 101; a member of Parliament, i. 101; sent as governor of Massachusetts, i. 101; accused of illicit trade with the French, i. 103; a memorial for his recall refused, i.

105; sends Colonel Church on an expedition into Canada, i. 117; proposes an expedition against Port Royal, i. 120; appoints Colonel John March commander, i. 121; sends councillors to Colonel March, i. 125; receives the royal message for the reduction of Canada, i. 131; disappointed by the non-arrival of the British squadron, i. 140; in conference of governors concerning England's attack on Canada, i. 158.
Dudley, Paul, i. 102.
Dudley, Governor Thomas, i. 100.
Dudley, William, goes to Canada with Courtemanche, i. 83, 99; concerning the officers at Port Royal, i. 125; sent as ambassador to Vaudreuil, i. 243; interviews the Indians, i. 244.
Dugué, ——, accompanies Cadillac to Detroit, i. 25.
Dulhut, Greysolon, occupied Detroit, i. 20.
Dummer, Jeremiah, i. 103 *note*, 127 *note*.
Dummer, William, acting governor of Massachusetts, i. 231; the Legislature attempt to deprive him of his prerogative of power, i. 233; correspondence with Vaudreuil on the death of Sebastien Rale, the missionary, i. 241; sends an embassy to Vaudreuil, i. 243, 260 *note*.
Dummer, Fort, a subject of dispute between Massachusetts and New Hampshire. ii. 233.
Dumontel, Jean, i. 86.
Dumontel, Mrs. Jean (Elizabeth Corse), i. 86.
Dunstable, Mass., i. 248; attacked by Indians, i. 249; joins in Lovewell's expedition, i. 250.
Duperrier, captain of French war-ship "Northumberland," ii. 177.
Dupuy, intendant at Canada, i. 326.
Duquesnel, governor of Canada, ii. 61; seizes the fishing-station of Canseau, ii. 79; attempts the capture of Annapolis, ii. 80; death of, ii. 114.
Du Tisné, explored the Missouri River, ii. 13; visits the Pawnees, ii. 14; arrives at the village of the Osages, ii. 14; returns to the Illinois, ii. 14.
Duvivier, Captain, married to Marie Muis de Poubomcoup, i. 14; sent to seize Canseau, ii. 79; attempted attack upon Annapolis, ii. 80; proposes terms of capitulation with Mascarene, ii. 81; his attack a failure, ii. 82; asks assistance of France to renew his attack upon Annapolis, ii. 144.
Duxbury, Mass., i. 117.

E.

East Bay, on Lake Champlain, ii. 252.
Eastern Indians, called to a council by Governor Shute, i. 215; renew the treaty of Portsmouth with Governor Shute, i. 219; letter to Governor Shute cited. i. 226 *note*.
Edict of Nantes, mentioned, i. 2.
"Edgar," flag-ship of Admiral Walker, i. 165; blown up in the Thames River, i. 174.
Edward, Fort, i. 135.
Eliot, John, recaptures some fishing-vessels, i. 234.
"Eltham," a British frigate, ii. 111.
Emerson, Ralph Waldo, ii. 97 *note*.
Emery, Samuel, minister at Wells, Me., i. 39.
Endicott, Honorable William C., ii. 62 *note*.
Engelran, a Jesuit father, i. 27 *note*.
England, declares war with France, i. 2; grants aid for the reduction of Canada, i. 130; her ministry sends an expedition against Canada, i. 157; news received of the surrender of Louisbourg, ii. 157; "England has no rightful titles to North America," etc., ii. 273.
English, their motives for the occupation of Detroit, i. 19; the condition of, at Annapolis, i. 183; prevented from occupying Louisiana, i. 289; at Grand Pré, Ramesay's expedition against, ii. 201; plan of the attack, ii. 206; the attack, ii. 208–215; attempted resistance, ii. 209, 210, 212; their position becoming desperate, ii. 213; they capitulate, ii 214; the number of troops at Grand Pré during the French attack upon, ii. 215; their losses estimated, ii. 215; they march from Grand Pré to Annapolis, ii. 216.
English colonies, their individual strength, and independence of each other, ii. 64.
English colonists, how they regarded the Five Nations, ii. 221.
English ministry, plans of, concerning America, i. 157.
English Turn, at the bend of the Mississippi River, i. 292.
Erie, Lake, i. 19.
Ethier, Dr., quoted, i. 67 *note*.
Eugene, Prince, i. 115.
Exeter, infested by Indians, i. 95.
Extrait d'une Liasse de Papiers concernant le Canada, i. 227 *note*.

F.

Falmouth rebuilt, i. 213.
Falmouth, Me. *See* Casco.
"Falmouth," English war-ship, i. 145.
"Far Indians," or "Upper Nations," of what tribes they consisted, i. 11; their fur-trade with Canada, i. 11.
Farnsworth, David, forms a new settlement, ii. 234.
Farnsworth, Samuel, of Groton, forms a new settlement, Number Four, ii. 234.
Farnsworth, Stephen, forms a new settlement, ii. 234.
Farrar, Jacob, killed in the fight at Lovewell's Pond, i. 255.
Farwell, Josiah, escapes from Indians at Dunstable, i. 249; signs petition to fight Indians, i. 249; wounded by Indians, i. 253; death of, i. 257.
Featherstonhaugh, geologist, cited, ii. 8 *note*.
Félix, Père, defies the power of the governor at Port Royal, i. 114.
Ferland, *Cours d'Histoire*, i. 329 *note*; *Cours d'Histoire du Canada*, quoted, ii. 125 *note*.
Ferryland, Newfoundland, i. 127.
"Feversham," English war-ship, i. 145.
Field, Ensign, Northfield, Mass., ii. 246.
Filles de la Congrégation, at Louisbourg, i. 180.
Fisheries of Newfoundland considered in the Treaty of Utrecht, i. 178.
Fishery question, the, between New England and Acadia, i. 107.
Fish Kill River, ii. 226 *note*.
Five Nations, the, of the Iroquois, ingratitude of New York towards them, i. 7, 8; the influence of the French and English agents among them, i. 9, 10, 11; deed a part of the Northwestern country to King William III., i. 30; induced to join in the reduction of Canada, i. 133; made British subjects, i. 177; the attitude of New York towards them, i. 264; their friendship necessary to New York for her control of the fur-trade, i. 265; acted as middlemen in trade between New York and the West, i. 266; their jealousy of the French designs upon Niagara, ii. 71; finally give their consent to the building of a fort, ii. 72; allow Governor Burnet to build a trading-house, ii. 72; their attitude towards the French and English colonies, ii. 221; induced by Governor Clinton to join in the invasion of Canada, ii. 222.
Flat Point Cove, a place of landing at Louisbourg, ii. 105, 115; Pepperrell's storehouses at, ii. 142.
Flynt, Rev. Henry, cited, i. 214 *note*, 222 *note*.
Folsom, *History of Saco, etc.*, cited, i. 44 *note*.
Foster, Deacon Josiah, killed by Indians at Keene, ii. 232.
Foster, Joseph, of Beverly, a prisoner of war, ii. 181; cited, ii. 178 *note*.
Fox River, i. 265, 321, 332; ii. 27.
Fox's *History of Dunstable*, cited, i. 260 *note*.
Foxes, the, a tribe of the "Far Indians," i. 11.
France and England, their rival claims in America, ii. 66–68.
France and Spain contest the Louisiana country, i. 295.
France, the power gained by Great Britain over, i. 1; schemes for conquest in New England, i. 2, 3; sends her missionaries among the Acadians, i. 193; her claim to American territory as set forth by Father Bobé, ii. 65, 68; requires the restoration of Port Royal, Acadia, etc., ii. 69; her designs upon the English colonies in America, ii. 70; "Demandes de La France" (1723), ii. 282.
Francis, Dr. Convers, i. 220 *note*, 240 *note*.
Françoise, Marie, baptismal name of Freedom French, i. 86.
Franklin, Benjamin, quoted, ii. 88.
Franquet, journal of, cited, ii. 191 *note*.
Frederic of Prussia, began the War of the Austrian Succession, ii. 78.
Frédéric, Fort, built at Crown Point, ii. 75.
French, Freedom, captured by Indians, baptized as Marie Françoise, and married Jean Daulnay, i. 86.
French, Martha, married Jacques Roy, afterwards Jean Louis Ménard, i. 86.
French, Deacon Thomas, inhabitant of Deerfield, i. 56 and *note*; captured at Deerfield by Indians, i. 85.
French accounts of the attack on Port Royal, cited, i. 127 *note*.
French Canadians, their spirit of adventure and trade lead to the exploration of the West, ii. 1, 2, 3.
French colonies, their desire for achievement, ii. 65.
French colonists, how they regarded the Five Nations, ii. 221.
French explorers west of the Mississippi, ii. 8.
Frenchmen in America, the advantage to them of holding Detroit, i. 19; assist in Indian attacks at Wells, etc., i. 43;

their object in spurring the Abenakis to these attacks, i. 45; policy towards the Five Nations, i. 45, 52; motive for inducing the Indian warfare against New England, i. 97; incite the Abenakis against the English, i. 227; jealousy of the trading-house at Oswego, ii. 73; establish a trading-post at Toronto, ii. 73; and place armed vessels at Fort Frontenac, ii. 74; their chain of posts from Canada to Louisiana, ii. 76; they seize Canseau, ii. 79; the number of troops engaged in the attack on Grand Pré, ii. 215; losses at the attack upon Grand Pré, ii. 215.
French officer, an incident of his attack upon Deerfield, i. 61.
French pioneers in America, their desire for discovery and trade, ii. 1.
French River (Winooski or Onion), i. 73.
Freneuse, Madame de, at Port Royal, i. 110, 112.
Freshwater Cove (Anse de la Cormorandière), a landing-place near Louisbourg, ii. 115.
Frontenac, Count, mentioned, i. 15, 17, 19, 96; sends Le Sueur into the Sioux country, ii. 3.
Frontenac, Fort, armed vessels placed at, by the French, ii. 74.
Frye, Jonathan, Andover, joined in Lovewell's expedition as chaplain, i. 251; wounded, i. 254; death of, i. 257; his engagement to Susanna Rogers, i. 259; his name cherished at Fryeburg, i. 259.
Frye, General Joseph, granted the land of Fryeburg, i. 259 *note*.
Fryeburg, N. H., i. 247.
Fur-trade, the, carried on by French and English with the Indians, i. 12–14; to be controlled by a company, i. 26, 27; interest of New York in the, i. 262; of the West, the desire of Canada to control, i. 315; controlled by the French posts, ii. 76.
Fur-trade Company, complaints of the, i. 28; transfer their control to Cadillac, i. 30.

G.

Gabarus Bay (Chapeau Rouge Bay), ii. 111, 115 *note*.
Gaillard, sent by Bourgmont to the Comanche village, ii. 17.
Galissonière, succeeded Beauharnois as governor, ii. 56.
Gardner, ——, a militia officer at Haverhill, i. 94.
Garnier, Charles, a Jesuit mission priest, i. 134, 207.
Gaspé, in Ramesay's expedition, ii. 202.
Gaspé, Bay of, Walker's fleet at, i. 165.
Gaspereau River, ii. 206.
Gaudalie, *curé* of Mines, i. 201.
Gaulin, an insurgent priest at Annapolis, i. 184, 187; charged with incendiary conduct among Acadians, i. 196.
Gayarré, *Histoire de Louisiane*, cited, i. 293 *note*.
General Court of Massachusetts, offers prize for Indian scalps, i. 48; resolves upon the reduction of Canada, i. 130; vote concerning an attack upon Louisbourg, ii. 85; the arguments for and against the scheme, ii. 87, 88; at last consent to the attack, ii. 88.
George I., on throne of England, i. 198, 246.
George II., his accession to the throne, i. 200; the Acadians protest fidelity to, ii. 218; yielded Louisbourg to the French by the Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle, ii. 270.
George, Fort, built on the Androscoggin River, i. 214.
Georgetown, rebuilt, i. 213; a council of Indians held at, by Governor Shute, i. 215; another Indian council held at, i. 224; Sebastien Rale arrives with hostile Indians at, i. 225; the fort at, attacked, i. 226.
Germain, a Jesuit father, i. 27 *note*.
Gibson, James, interested in the scheme for an attack upon Louisbourg, ii. 86; his journal cited, ii. 99 *note*, 161 *note*; raised men for the siege of Louisbourg, ii. 100 *note*.
Gill, Charles, i. 89 *note*.
Gill, Samuel, taken captive by Abenaki Indians, i. 88; his descendants estimated, i. 89.
Gillet, ——, killed at Deerfield by Indians, ii. 264.
Girard, a priest at Cobequid, ii. 202, 203.
Goddard, Captain, saves Walker's fleet from shipwreck, i. 165.
Godolphin, minister, i. 157.
Goldthwait, Captain Benjamin, in command of the English detachment at Grand Pré, ii. 207 *note*; attempts a defence against the French attack upon Grand Pré, ii. 212; proposes to capitulate to La Corne, ii. 214; mentioned, ii. 217 *note*.
Gorham, ——, his regiment posted at Lighthouse Point, Louisbourg, ii. 142.

Goutin, M. de, a magistrate at Port Royal, quoted concerning affairs at Port Royal, i. 110.
Grand Battery at Louisbourg, besieged, ii. 119, 120.
Grand Pré, the attack of Colonel Church upon, i. 118; the Acadian village, ii. 199; the plan of attack upon, by Ramesay's officers, ii. 206, 207; the attack and its results, ii. 208–215; the French successes at, ii. 210, 211; affairs becoming desperate for the English, ii. 213; they decide to capitulate, ii. 214; the French and English losses, ii. 215; deserted by the English, ii. 216.
Gratiot, Fort, i. 20.
Gravier, Jesuit missionary at St. Louis, i. 316.
Gray, Deacon John, quoted, ii. 98 *note*.
Great Britain gains power from the War of the Spanish Succession, i. 1.
Great Butte des Morts, i. 332.
Great Carrying-Place, i. 135.
Green Bay, Wis., mentioned, i. 88, ii. 27; groups of Indians near, i. 265; a fort built at, by the French, ii. 76.
Green Dragon Tavern, a dinner at, i. 145.
Green Hill, a battery planted at, for the attack upon Louisbourg, ii. 122.
Green Mountains, i. 73.
Grey Lock, a noted Indian chief, i. 235.
Gridley, Colonel, plants a battery at Lighthouse Point, Louisbourg, ii. 141; his effective work at Lighthouse Point, ii. 147; mentioned, ii. 161 *note*.
Grignon, Augustus, *Recollections*, cited, i. 332 *note*.
Groton, attacked by Indians, i. 95; joins in Lovewell's expedition, i. 250.
Guignas, Father, a missionary to the Sioux Indians, ii. 27.
Guillaume le Sincère, ii. 161 *note*.
Gulf of Mexico, i. 130.

H.

Habitant de Louisbourg, concerning the attack upon Louisbourg, ii. 113, 114; quoted, ii. 152, 155.
Hadley, Mass., i. 54; the inhabitants go to the rescue of Deerfield, i. 62.
Hagar, a servant of Rev. —— Rolfe, i. 93.
Halifax, settlement of English at, i. 197.
Hale, Captain ——, hurt by bursting of a gun at Louisbourg, ii. 129 *note*.
Hale, Colonel Robert, letter of John Payne to, ii. 107 *note*; commander in the siege of Louisbourg, ii. 107 *note*.
Hampton, attacks upon by Indians, i. 46.
Harding, Stephen, escapes murder from Indians, i. 41.
Harley, ——, Lord Treasurer of England, i. 156.
Harmon, Captain, sent to attack Norridgewock, i. 236.
Harpe, Bénard de la. (*See* La Harpe, B. de.)
Hassell, Benjamin, a cowardly member of Lovewell's expedition, i. 253, 256, 258.
Hastings, John, helps form a settlement on the Connecticut called Number Four, ii. 235; chosen on committee to protect the settlement, ii. 235.
Hatfield, Mass., i. 54, 59; the inhabitants go to the rescue of Deerfield, i. 62; an intended Indian attack upon, i. 91.
Haverhill, attacked by Indians, i. 93; joins in Lovewell's expedition, i. 250.
Hawks, Ebenezer, killed at Deerfield by Indians, ii. 264.
Hawks, John, *Account of the Company at Fort Massachusetts*, ii. 257; in charge of Fort Massachusetts, ii. 257; considers and accepts terms of capitulation from Rigaud, ii. 262; serjeant, made lieutenant-colonel, ii. 269.
Heath, Joseph, an English settler at Brunswick, i. 210 *note*, 224 *note*; captain, burns the new village of the Penobscots, i. 245.
Heath, town of, Massachusetts, ii. 245.
Hill, General John, given command of the Canada expedition, i. 157; his reception in Boston, i. 159; anxious for retreat, i. 168; arrives in England, i. 174; reaps honors, i. 175.
Hill, Mrs. John, i. 174.
Hill, Samuel, capture of his family by Indians, i. 42; goes to Canada to negotiate for release of prisoners, i. 83, 99.
Hill, Fort, Boston, i. 159.
Hilton, Colonel Winthrop, a commander in the expedition to Port Royal, i. 121; mentioned, i. 210.
Historical Magazine, cited, i. 237 *note*.
Hix, Jacob, death of, i. 72.
Hobby, Sir Charles, in expedition against Port Royal, i. 145; at a breakfast of the English officers at Port Royal, i. 148.
Hochelaga, Indian defences at, i. 16.
Holton, Eleazar, Northfield, Mass., ii. 246.
Hook, Serjeant, defends Major March against Indians at Casco, i. 43.

Hoosac, name given to eastern tributary of the Hudson, ii. 251.
Horse Indians of the West, ii. 43 and *note;* visited by the brothers La Vérendrye, ii. 46; their march against the Snake Indians, ii. 47; they find the camp of the Snakes deserted, ii. 52; their disbandment, ii. 53.
Housatonic River, villages settled along the, ii. 245.
House of Representatives, the, approve Lovewell's expedition against Indians, i. 249.
Howe, Captain, the missionary Le Loutre charged with inciting the murder of, ii. 197; quartered with Colonel Noble at Grand Pré, ii. 210; wounded and taken prisoner, ii. 210; allowed by La Corne to call an English surgeon, ii. 213; released on parole after the capitulation, ii. 214.
Hoyt, General Epaphras, i. 88; *Antiquarian Researches* mentioned, ii. 244 *note*.
Hoyt, David, inhabitant of Deerfield, i. 59; his wife wounded during Indian attack, i. 60; death of, i. 72.
Hubert, his scheme for exploring the Missouri, ii. 9.
Hudson Bay, ii. 24.
Hudson River, i. 12; an eastern tributary called Kaskékouké, Schaticook, and Hoosac, ii. 251.
Huguenot colonists, their intention to settle on the Mississippi, i. 292; deceived by Bienville, and abandoned the project, i. 293; petition the French king to allow them to settle in Louisiana, i. 293.
Humble memorial, of John Lovewell and others, to destroy Indians, i. 249.
Hunter, Governor, endeavors to prevent the building of a fort by the French at Niagara, ii. 71.
Huron, Lake, i. 19.
Hurons and Ottawas, Indians settled at Michillimackinac, i. 16; savage and mischievous, i. 16.
Hurons, Indians, join a war-party, i. 92; settled about Detroit, i. 265; the village of, i. 269; their account of their defeat of the Outagamies, i. 331; form a party to attack the Outagamies, i. 329.
Hurst, Benjamin, child murdered by Indians, i. 86.
Hurst, Sarah, baptized as Marie Jeanne, i. 86.
Hurtado, Général, cited, ii. 22, *note*.
Hutchinson, ——, cited, i. 94 *note*, 219 *note*, 238 *note*, 253 *note*, 260 *note*, ii. 83 *note*.
Hutchinson, Thomas, mentioned, ii 160 *note*.
Hutchinson, *History of Massachusetts*, cited, ii. 160 *note*, 161 *note*.

I.

Iberville, Le Moyne d' (the Jean Bart of Canada), plan of, to destroy Boston, i. 3; offered to plant a colony in Louisiana, i. 290; his offer accepted, i. 290; explores his way to the mouth of the Mississippi, i. 290; builds a fort at Biloxi and sails for France, i. 292; returned to Louisiana to protect against English intrusion, i 293; removes the fort from Biloxi to Mobile Bay, i. 294; made a voyage up the Mississippi, i. 294; memorial by, quoted, i. 295 *note;* his hope of discovering the Pacific, ii. 8.
Illicit traders in Boston, i. 103, 105.
Illinois Indians, settled about Fort St. Louis, i. 265; aid Dubuisson at Detroit, i. 273.
Indian Old Point (Norridgewock), i. 211 *note*.
Indian Old Town, present abode of the Penobscots, i. 245.
Indian population in the West, i. 265.
Indian trade, the, between the English and West, i. 267.
Indians, the plan of La Mothe-Cadillac for civilizing, i. 22; attack towns in Massachusetts and New Hampshire, i. 90, 95; reward offered for scalps of, i. 95 and *note;* their native warlike propensities, i. 286.
Ingoldsby, Colonel, acting governor of Connecticut, i. 132.
Iowas, Indians, in council with Bourgmont, ii. 17.
Ipswich, i. 121.
Iroquois, Indians, the Five Nations of, i. 7; join in war-parties from Montreal, ii. 232.
Isle-au-Cochon, near Fort Detroit, i. 285.
Isle-aux-Œufs, the disaster to Admiral Walker's fleet at, i. 167.
Isle of Wight, i. 101.
Isles of Shoals, the, ii. 93.

J.

James II., mentioned, i. 2, 143.
James III., acknowledged king by Louis XIV., i. 2.
Jaques, Benjamin, shot the missionary Sebastien Rale, i. 237.

Jesuits, the amount of their possessions in Canada, i. 22; attempt to convert Rev. John Williams to certain rites of their church, i. 74; their attempts to convert the Deerfield captives, i. 81; the zeal displayed by both early and later missionaries in New France, i. 206, 207; they converted but did not civilize the Indians, i. 208.
Jogues, a Jesuit missionary, i. 16, 134, 207.
Johnson, Sir William, mentioned, ii. 225 *note*, 262 *note;* complains of certain persons selling liquor to the Indians, ii. 228; made a war-chief of the Mohawks, ii. 228; sends war-parties of Indians to check French invasion, ii. 229.
Joncaire, an agent among the Five Nations, i. 9, 11, 133, ii. 71; a French emissary among the Seneca Indians, ii. 227.
Jones, Esther, a heroine of Oyster River, i. 91.
Jones, Josiah, in the fight at Lovewell's Pond, i. 256; arrived at Biddeford, i. 257.
Jones, Lieutenant, killed by the French in their attack on Grand Pré, ii. 210.
Jonquière, Marquis de la, governor of Canada, ii. 57; charged St. Pierre with the search for the Pacific, ii. 57; remains with the fleet at Chibucto, ii. 180; succeeds to the command of D'Anville's fleet, ii. 180; sails for Annapolis, but abandons his design of attack, ii. 181; reaches Port Louis in Brittany, ii. 182; the breaking up of his fleet, ii. 182; sent with a fleet for the conquest of Acadia, etc., ii. 184; meets with an English fleet, and is totally defeated, ii. 184.
Jordan River in Carolina, ii. 67.
Journal of Governor, etc., cited, i. 159, *n.*
Journal of the Siege of Louisbourg, cited, ii. 124 *note*.
Juchereau de Saint-Denis, explored in Louisiana, ii. 9; seized by Spaniards, ii. 10.
Juchereau de Saint-Denis, Mother, quoted concerning the effect upon the ladies of Montreal, etc., of the news of Walker's expected attack, i. 171, 173, 175.
Justinian, Père, i. 187, 198.

K.

Kalm, Swedish naturalist, i. 170, ii. 269 *note*.
Kaministiguia River, a post established at, ii. 24, 33.
Kannan, H., cited, ii. 178 *note*.
Kaskaskia, town of, settled by Canadians, etc., i. 316, 317.
Kaskaskias, Indians, form a settlement on the Mississippi, i. 316.
Kaskékouké, eastern tributary of the Hudson, ii. 251.
Keene (Upper Ashuelot), the settlement of, ii. 230; its defences, ii. 230; attacked by Indians, ii. 230.
Kellogg, ——, escape from Indian captivity, i. 83.
Kellogg, Joanna, married Indian chief, i. 86.
Kennebec lands, parted with by the Indians, i. 214.
Kennebec River, i. 3, 34; a dividing line between French possessions and New England, i. 205.
Kennetcook River, ii. 205.
Kent, ——, killed by Indians at Casco, Me., i. 43.
Keyes, Solomon, in the fight at Lovewell's Pond, wounded, i. 255; arrived at Fort Ossipee, i. 256, 257.
Kidder, Benjamin, a member of Lovewell's expedition, i. 251.
Kidder, Frederic, cited, i. 212 *note*, 248 *note*, 260 *note*.
King, Colonel, letter on the manners, etc., of the colonists at Boston, i. 160; in Walker's expedition, escape of his ship from wreck, i. 156.
Kingston, annoyed by Indians, i. 95.
Kittery, a town in Maine, i. 37; annoyed by Indians, i. 95.
Kittery Point, the view of the Piscataqua from, ii. 92; the house of William Pepperrell at, ii. 92.
Kneeland, S., printer, Boston, ii. 249 *note*.
Knowles, Commodore Charles, advises the removal of the Acadians, ii. 193; presents a sword to Captain Phineas Stevens, ii. 243.
Knowlton, Thomas, killed in the defence of Fort Massachusetts, ii. 261, 269 *note*.

L.

Labat, M., at Port Royal, i. 112.
La Baye, fort, on Green Bay, ii. 76.
Lac des Cristineaux (Lake of the Woods), a post established at, ii. 24.
La Chasse, Père, quoted, i. 211 *note;* account of destruction of Norridgewock, cited, i. 238 *note;* aids Rale in inciting the Indians to insurrection,

i. 224; acts as interpreter at an interview between Indians and the embassy from Governor Dummer, i. 244.
La Chine, i. 25.
La Corne, Saint-Luc de, suggested to the French the fortifying of Crown Point, ii. 75; Récollet missionary at Miramichi, ii. 201; in Ramesay's expedition, ii. 202; assists in attack on Grand Pré, ii. 208; blockades the principal guard-house at Grand Pré, ii. 212; allows a suspension of arms while a surgeon attends Captain Howe, ii. 213; makes terms of capitulation to the English, ii. 214; his attentions to the English after capitulation at Grand Pré, ii. 216; returns to Beaubassin, ii. 216; his account of the French victory cited, ii. 217 *note*.
Lacroix, a French prisoner of war, ii. 214.
La Force, joins Rigaud's war-party, ii. 254.
La Forest, in the fur-trade at Fort St. Louis, i. 265.
Lafresnière, Sieur de, i. 302; sent to fortify Crown Point, ii. 75.
Lagny, assists in attack on Grand Pré, ii. 208.
La Harpe, Bénard de, i. 293 *note;* explorations along Red River, ii. 10; reaches the land of the Nassonites, ii. 11; arrives at an Indian village, ii. 12; pushes on to Arkansas River, ii. 12; explores it, ii. 13; returned to Natchitoches, ii. 13.
La Hontan, romances of, mentioned, ii. 8.
La Jemeraye, joins La Vérendrye's enterprise, ii. 32; death of, ii. 33.
Lalande, a prisoner among the Indians, i. 81.
Lallemant, a Jesuit mission priest, i. 134, 207.
La Loire des Ursins, in council at "the Illinois," i. 318.
Lamberville, Jacques, an agent among the Five Nations, i. 9; a Jesuit priest at Onondaga, i. 133.
La Mothe-Cadillac, Antoine de, in command at Michillimackinac, i. 15; portrayed, i. 16 and *note;* plan to attack Boston, etc., i. 17 *note;* his antipathy against Carheil, i. 18; his plans for the occupation of Detroit, i. 20; his memorial to Comte de Maurepas, i. 21; some of the features of his plan, i. 21; opposition to his scheme; i. 21; his plan opposed by Callières, Champigny, and others, i. 23; sails for France, i. 24; presents his plan to M. de Ponchartrain, i. 25; returns to Canada, i. 25; proceeds to found the city of Detroit, i. 26; lures the Michillimackinac Indians to Detroit, i. 27; letters to Ponchartrain, i. 28; desires to be appointed governor of Detroit, i. 28; given the control of the fur-trade, i. 30; governor of colony of Louisiana, i. 269; succeeds Bienville at Louisiana, i. 298; denounces the country, products, etc., i. 298; his spite towards Bienville, i. 302; supplanted by L'Epinay, i. 307; quoted, i. 322 *note;* cited, ii. 7 *note*.
La Ronde Denys. (*See* Denys, La Ronde.)
Lanaudière in Ramesay's expedition, ii. 202.
Lancaster, town of, joins in Lovewell's expedition, i. 250; infested by Indians, i. 95.
La Noue, Lieutenant, engaged in the exploration for the Pacific Ocean, ii. 25.
"La Palme," the suffering and starvation of her crew, ii. 183.
La Perelle, sent with flag of truce from Duchambon to Pepperrell, ii. 149.
La Plaine, reports an attack on Quebec, i. 137.
La Reine, Fort, built by La Vérendrye, ii. 35.
La Salle, Nicolas de, mentioned, i. 25, 329; gave Louisiana her name, i. 288; accuses Iberville, i. 296; accuses, Artaguette, i. 297; his settlement at St. Louis mentioned, i. 316; proposed expedition, ii. 9.
La Touche, clerk in Department of Marine, etc., i. 25.
La Tour, mentioned, ii. 80.
"Launceston," a war-ship of Commodore Warren, ii. 103, 444.
Laurain, an explorer on the Missouri, ii. 9.
Lauverjat, Father, a missionary, i. 234; a missionary of the Penobscots, i. 235.
La Vérendrye, Pierre Gaultier de Varennes de, his search for the Pacific, ii. 30, 31; given a monopoly of the fur-trade, ii. 31; raises a company of associates, ii. 32; winters at Fort Pierre, ii. 33; massacre of some of his party, ii. 33; develops the fur-trade, builds forts, etc., ii. 34; continued his explorations westward, ii. 36; certain Indian tribes join his party, ii. 36; arrived at a village of the Mandan Indians, ii. 36; returns to Fort La Reine, ii. 38; his sons join in the search for the Pacific, ii. 39;

promotion and honor bestowed upon him, ii. 56; death of, ii. 56.
La Vérendrye, Chevalier and Pierre de (sons of Pierre Gaultier), join in the search for the Pacific, ii. 40; journey towards the West, ii. 43, 44; arrive at the camp of Les Beaux Hommes, ii. 45; reach the camp of the Horse Indians, ii. 46; join in a march of Indians against the Snake Indians, ii. 47; visit the lodge of the Choke-Cherry Indians, ii. 53; return to Fort La Reine, ii. 55; their fur-trade, ii. 55; discovered the Saskatchawan River, ii. 56; badly treated by M. de Saint-Pierre, ii. 57; receive bad treatment from La Jonquière, ii. 57, 58.
La Vérendyre, Chevalier de, death of, ii. 62.
La Vente, *curé* of Mobile, accuses Bienville, i. 296.
Law, John, his undertaking to save the credit of France, i. 304; failure of his scheme, i. 308.
Lawson, an illicit trader, i. 103.
Le Ber, Mademoiselle, a patriotic nun at Montreal, i. 172.
Le Blanc, a notary to the Acadians, ii. 190.
Le Canada Français, cited, ii. 217 *n.*
Lechmere, Lieutenant, killed by the French in their attack on Grand Pré, ii. 210.
Lee, Colonel, quoted, i. 174 *note*.
Leisler, Jacob, mentioned, i. 5.
Le Loutre, missionary to the Micmac Indians, ii. 190; vicar-general to Acadians, ii. 196; accused of instigating the murder of Captain Howe, ii. 197.
Le Page du Pratz, cited, i. 311 *note*.
L'Epinay, supplanted La Mothe-Cadillac at Louisiana, i. 307; his removal, i. 307.
Le Rocher, station on the Illinois, i. 329.
Léry, assists in attack on Grand Pré, ii. 207.
Les Beaux Hommes, Indians of the Little Missouri, ii. 45.
Lestock, Admiral, in command of British troops, ii. 172.
Le Sueur, expedition to the Sioux country of Minnesota, ii. 3; given command and monopoly of trade, ii. 4; his commission revoked, ii. 4; makes a voyage up the Mississippi, ii. 5; encounters war-parties, ii. 5; builds a fort on the river St. Peter, ii. 6; opens trade with the Sioux Indians, ii. 7, 8; sailed for France, ii. 8; death of, ii. 8.
Lettres Edifiantes, cited, i. 226 *note*.
Leverett, John, sent to counsel with Colonel March at Port Royal, i. 125.
Lewis, C. W., cited, i. 260 *note*.
Lewis and Clark, Captains, visit to the Mandans, ii. 38 *note*; explore their way to the Pacific, ii. 55; discover the Rocky Mountains, ii. 55.
L'Huillier, Fort, built by Le Sueur, ii. 6.
Lighthouse Point, Louisbourg, a battery planted at, ii. 140; Beaubassin ordered to recapture it from the English, ii. 142; Gridley's effective firing at, ii. 147.
Lignery, Sieur de, called a council of Outagamies, i. 325; led an expedition against the Outagamies, i. 327; he does not succeed in it, i. 328.
Limoges, Jesuit missionary at the Illinois, ii. 5.
Little Butte des Morts, i. 332.
Little Harbor, the house of Benning Wentworth at, ii. 92.
Little Missouri, River, ii. 44.
Littlefield, Edmond, his house at Wells, Me., i. 40.
Littlefield, Francis, inventory of his personal property, i. 40.
Livingston, ——, New York, i. 7.
Livingston, Captain, Albany, an envoy to ransom the Deerfield captives, i. 82.
Livingston, Philip, concerning a fort at Niagara, ii. 71.
Livingston, Robert, i. 20 *note*, 129.
Longueuil, ——, an agent among the Five Nations, i. 9.
Longueuil, governor of Canada, desired peace with the Indians, i. 325.
Lorette, a Huron mission, i. 208.
Lotbinière, ——, a French officer who assisted in the attack on Grand Pré, ii. 211.
Lothrop, Lieut.-Colonel, mentioned, ii. 161 *note*.
Louis XIV., caused the War of the Spanish Succession, i. 1; places his grandson on the throne of Spain, i. 2; mentioned, i. 29; his throne threatened, i. 115; concerning republics, i. 152; his old age, i. 176; his concessions in the Treaty of Utrecht, i. 177, 179; commands the evacuation of Placentia, etc., i. 181; the foundations of Louisiana laid in his name, i. 292; refuses to allow some Huguenots to settle in Louisiana, i. 293; his instructions to D'Iberville at Louisiana, i. 294; contests with Spain the Louisiana country, i. 295; orders the destruction of the Outagamies, i. 324.

Louis XV., mentioned, ii. 196; demanded restitution of Louisbourg by Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle, ii. 270.
Louisbourg, Cape Breton, founded, i. 180, 181; called the Dunquerque of America, i. 181; received news of the breaking out of the War of Austrian Succession, ii. 78; called the American Dunkirk, ii. 83; an attack upon, proposed by the English, ii. 83 and *note;* its powerful defences, ii. 83; Governor Shirley furthers the design of taking, ii. 85–88; the appointment of William Pepperrell to command a siege of, ii. 91; a plan for sounding the fort at, ii. 96; gathering the troops, ii. 99; the naval force gathered intended for the siege of, ii. 101; the directions of Governor Shirley for the attack upon, ii. 104, 105 and *note;* the naval force arrive at Canseau, ii. 109; a delay in the attack upon, ii. 110; arrival of Commander Warren with his fleet, ii. 111; her situation and defences, ii. 112, 113; the naval force arrive at, ii. 112; the garrison at, ii. 113; alarmed at the arrival of the naval fleet, ii. 114; the Grand Battery attacked, ii. 116; the French abandon the Grand Battery at, ii. 118; English occupation of the battery, ii. 120; Pepperrell's army encamped at, ii. 121; their difficulties in landing cannon, ii. 121; the planting of the batteries at, ii. 122, 124; Titcomb's battery the most destructive at, ii. 124; a battery attacked by the French, ii. 126; the destruction accomplished by the advanced battery under Captain Sherburn, ii. 127; good conduct of the troops, ii. 129; the attack upon the Island Battery, ii. 137; it proves unsuccessful, ii. 139; the English loss in the attack, ii. 139; capture of the ship-of-war "Vigilant," ii. 141; skirmishes by Duchambon, etc., ii. 142; the effective firing of the English at Lighthouse Point, ii. 147; the surrender, ii. 149; the terms of capitulation consented to by Pepperrell and Warren, ii. 150; the French and English loss at, ii. 151; the disgust of the New England soldiers at the capitulation, ii. 153; the jealousies between the sea and land force concerning the taking of, ii. 155, 156; news of its surrender, ii. 158; papers relating to the siege of, ii. 161, *note;* after the conquest, dissatisfaction and mutiny of the troops, ii. 162, 163; arrival of Governor Shirley, ii. 163; arrival of supply troops from Gibraltar, ii. 167; "Siege of Louisbourg as described by French witnesses," ii. 288.
Louisiana, named by La Salle, i. 288; the seizure of, urged by Henri de Tonty, i. 288; the probable result of an English settlement at, i. 289; the English prevented from settling at, i. 289; Iberville's colonists at, i. 295; wives, priests, nuns, etc., sent to the colony of, i. 296; discord and disorder, i. 296; official disputes, i. 297; an attempt to import slaves from the West Indies, i. 298; discontent of the colonists, i. 299; farmed out to Antoine Crozat, i. 300; disaffection of the colonists, i. 301; wives sent to the colonists, i. 303, 304 *note;* abandoned to the Crown by Crozat, i. 304; leased to the Mississippi Company, i. 304; its condition under the Mississippi Company, i. 305; concerning the wives sent to, i. 306; Bienville re-appointed governor of, i. 307; a royal edict concerning live stock in, i. 309; the cost of its settlement, i. 309; Sieur Périer succeeds Bienville as governor, i. 309; transferred from the Mississippi Company to the Crown, i. 310; at war with the Natchez Indians, i. 310; fights the Chickasaws under Bienville as governor, i. 312; compared with the Canadian colony, i. 313; shows signs of growth, i. 313; desired trade communication with New Mexico, ii. 21; ceded to the United States, ii. 55.
Louvigny, expedition against the Outagamies, i. 320, 324; makes a treaty with them, i. 323.
Lovelace, Lord, i. 131 *note;* death of, i. 132.
Lovewell, John, of Dunstable, Massachusetts, i. 248; his father served in King Philip's War, i. 248; his expedition against the Indians, i. 249; the triumph of his first attack, i. 251; his second expedition, i. 251; his fight at Lovewell's Pond, i. 252; death of, i. 253, 258.
Lovewell, Mrs. John (Hannah), i. 248.
Lovewell's fight, i. 252–256; return of the survivors, i. 256–258; aid sent to the wounded, the dead buried, etc., i. 258; verses in commemoration of, i. 261.
Lovewell's Pond, i. 248.
"Lowestoffe," an English war-ship, i. 145.
Loyola, mentioned, i. 206.

Lund, Thomas, killed by Indians, i. 249 *note*.
Lusignan, in Ramesay's expedition, ii. 202; assists in attack on Grand Pré, ii. 207; wounded, ii. 209.
Lusignan, *père*, cited, ii. 217 *note*.
Lusignan, *fils*, cited, ii. 217 *note*.
Lydius, Fort, i. 135.
Lyman, Caleb, kills some Indians at Coos Meadows, i. 48.
Lynn, i. 121.

M.

McDonald, Captain, a messenger to Duchambon from Commodore Warren, ii. 143.
McKenney, killed by Indians at Keene, ii. 231.
Macquas (Mohawks), name given to Caughnawagas, i. 71 *note*.
Magazine of American History, cited, i. 142 *note*, ii. 258 *note*.
Maine, the forest of, i. 32; the various tribes of Indians dwelling in, i. 34; a continuation of warfare in her borders, i. 212.
Maine Historical Society, i. 210, *note*.
Maillard, a missionary at Shubenacadie, ii. 202; furnishes aid to Ramesay's troops, ii. 203.
Maisonfort, Marquis de la, commander of the French ship-of-war "Vigilant," ii. 141; informs Duchambon of cruel treatment to English captives, ii. 143; held a prisoner by Warren, ii. 143.
Makisabie, chief of the Pottawattamies, at Huron fort, i. 272; harangued the Outagamies in the midst of the fight, i. 276.
Malecite Indians, encamped with De Ramesay near Acadia, ii. 187.
Mallet brothers explore their way from Louisiana to Mexico, ii. 21.
Mandans, Indians, visit of La Vérendrye to the, ii. 36; their population, ii. 37; their descriptions of the Spaniards, ii. 37, 40; visit of Prince Maximilian to, ii. 38; description of their village, ii. 41; (*Blancs Barbus*), ii. 41 *note*.
Manitoba, ii. 31.
Mann, Fort, on Arkansas River, ii. 12.
March, Colonel John, attacked by Indians at Casco, Me., i. 43; captures Indians at Casco, i. 48, 53 *note;* commander of the expedition to Port Royal, i. 121; his unfitness for commander, i. 121, 122; the disorder among his soldiers, i. 123; the skirmish at Port Royal, i. 123; his miserable failure at Port Royal, i. 124; counsellors sent to him, i. 125; returns to Boston, i. 126.
Marest, ——, Jesuit missionary at Michillimackinac, i. 17; discontent at the conduct of the Michillimackinacs, i. 27; missionary to the Kaskaskias, i. 316; warns Le Sueur of war-parties, ii. 5.
Mareuil, ——, a Jesuit priest at Onondaga, i. 133.
Margry, M., cited, i. 19 *note*, i. 25 *note*.
Margry, Pierre, cited, ii. 62 *note*.
Marguerite, baptismal name of Abigail Stebbins, i. 86.
Marguerite, baptismal name of Martha French, i. 86.
Maricourt, ——, an agent among the Five Nations, i. 9.
"Marie-Joseph," vessel, i. 187.
Marin, ——, a French trader, attacks the Outagamies, i. 332; makes an attack upon Annapolis, ii. 144; ordered by Duchambon to assist in the resistance of Louisbourg to the New England soldiers, ii. 144; in Ramesay's expedition, ii. 202; assists in the attack on Grand Pré, ii. 211.
"Marine," frigate, i. 290.
Marlborough, Duke of, i. 115, 156, 157.
Marlborough, Sarah, Duchess of, i. 157.
Marlborough, Mass., annoyed by Indians, i. 95.
Marquette, Jesuit missionary at St Louis, i. 15, 316.
Martin, Judge M. L., i. 332 *note*.
Martissan, an *habitant* of Louisbourg, ii. 124.
Marshall, N., of York, Me., ii. 97.
Maryland, mentioned, i. 6; contributes men to capture Canada, ii. 169.
Mascarene, Paul, *Narrative*, cited, i. 184 *note;* quoted, i. 190 *note;* in charge of the fort at Annapolis, ii. 80; a threatened attack on the fort, ii. 81; refuses Duvivier's terms of capitulation, ii. 81; receives a reinforcement from Boston, ii. 82; commandant, quoted concerning Acadia, ii. 189; expels an Acadian priest, ii. 195 *note;* reports the French and English losses at Grand Pré, ii. 215.
Mascoutins, join with the Outagamies in a settlement at Detroit, i. 270.
Masham, Mrs., i. 157, 174.
Massachusetts, i. 6; desires aid from England for an attack upon Port Royal, i. 141 and *note;* preparations in, for the attack upon Port Royal, i. 144; prediction concerning the possible independence of, i. 154; her

financial exhaustion from war contingencies, i. 175 *note;* determined to destroy the village of the Penobscots, i. 235; sends a force to destroy Norridgewock, i. 236, 237, 238; her contribution towards the siege of Louisbourg, ii. 100; the cost to her of the taking of Louisbourg, ii. 159; reimbursed by England, ii. 160; sends troops to protect Acadia, ii. 199; builds Fort Dummer on the Connecticut River, ii. 233; disputes with New Hampshire concerning Fort Dummer, ii. 233.

Massachusetts, Fort, built near the present town of Adams, Mass., ii. 246; description of, ii. 256; attack made upon, by Rigaud's war-party, ii. 259; a "parley" desired, ii. 262; the French flag raised, ii. 263; capitulation, ii. 263; rebuilt, ii. 269.

"Massachusetts," a gun-ship commanded by Captain Tyng, ii. 101.

Massachusetts Archives, cited, i. 127 *note*, 220 *note*.

Mass. Hist. Coll., cited, i. 127 *note*, ii. 160 *note*.

Mass. Hist. Coll., 2d Series, cited, i. 94 *note*.

Mass. Hist, Coll., 5th Series, cited, i. 102 *note*.

Matchedash Bay, i. 16.

Mather, Cotton, mentioned, i. 48; his dislike for Governor Dudley, i. 101, 103.

Mather, Increase, i. 101.

Matinicus, the rendezvous of Colonel Church's troops, i. 117.

Maumee River, a fort built at, by the French, ii. 76.

Maurault, Abbé, missionary at St. Francis, quoted concerning the Gill family, i. 89.

Maurepas, Comte de, memorial of La Mothe-Cadillac to, i. 21; cited, ii. 217 *note*, 252 *note*.

Maurepas, Fort, built by La Vérendrye, ii. 34.

Maurepas, Lake, Le Moyne d'Iberville at, i. 292.

Maximilian, Prince, visit to the Mandan Indians, ii. 38, 41 *note*.

Meeting-house Hill, a palisaded enclosure at Deerfield, i. 54.

Memorial of Deplorable State of New England, etc., cited, i. 101 *note*.

Ménard, Jean Louis, a Canadian, i. 86.

Ménard, Mrs. Jean Louis (Martha French), i. 86.

Menomonies, Indians, of Michigan, i. 265; aid Dubuisson at Detroit, i. 273.

Mercier, ——, assists in attack on Grand Pré, ii. 207.

Meriel, Father, a priest of St. Sulpice, i. 79, 86 *note*.

"Mermaid," a war-ship of Commodore Warren, ii. 103, 141.

Merrimac River, i. 35, 250.

Merry-meeting Bay, attack of Indians at, i. 230.

Meserve, ——, lieutenant-colonel of New Hampshire regiment at siege of Louisbourg, ii. 122.

Mexico, i. 288.

Michigan, Lake, groups of Indians at, i. 265, 330.

Michillimackinac, a Jesuit mission station settled by Huron and Ottawa Indians, i. 15; the Indian defences at, i. 16; the French colony at, i. 16; mentioned, i. 327; ii. 27.

Micmacs, Indians, to emigrate to Isle Royale, i. 181; attack Canso, etc., i. 234; join in an attack upon Louisbourg, ii. 80; encamped with De Ramesay near Acadia, ii. 187; under control of their missionary, Le Loutre, ii. 190.

Militia, recruited for the expedition against Louisbourg, ii. 99 *note*.

Mines, a district of Acadia, ii. 199; the French in possession, ii. 219.

Mines Basin, ii. 206.

Minneconjou Indians, a tribe of the Sioux, ii. 54 *note*.

Minnesota, Le Sueur's expedition into, ii. 3.

Minnetarees, a tribe of the Missouri Indians, ii 41 *note*.

Minot, John, cited, i. 224 *note*.

Miramichi, a missionary station, ii. 201.

Mississagas, called to aid Dubuisson at Detroit, i. 271.

Mississippi and Great Lakes, considered in the Treaty of Utrecht, i. 178.

Mississippi, French settlements made upon the, i. 288; mentioned, i. 291.

Mississippi Company, given the monopoly of Louisiana, i. 304; its powers and privileges, i. 305; its despotic government over Louisiana, i. 305; its efforts to people Louisiana, i. 308; its stockholders, i. 308; failure of the, i. 308; resigns the charge of Louisiana, i. 311.

Missouries, Indians, aid Dubuisson at Detroit, i. 273; in council with Bourgmont, ii. 17.

Missouri River, ii. 5.

Mobile Bay, a fort established at, i. 294.

Mogg, Indian chief, killed, i. 238.

Mohawk Indians, settle at Caughnawaga, i. 11; chiefs, taken to England by Peter Schuyler, i. 141; their reception, i. 142.
Montigny, ——, a member of Rigaud's war-party, ii. 261.
Montmorency, M. de, ii. 283.
Montreal, i. 74; an Indian war-party mustered at, i. 92; a proposed attack upon, i. 130; consternation at, expecting an attack of the English, i. 137; to be attacked by the English expedition, i. 159; preparations for defence against Walker's attack, i. 171; the number of war-parties sent from, in 1746, ii. 232.
Moody, Captain, a British naval captain at Boston, i. 141 *note;* attacks Fort William, Newfoundland, i. 127; dismissed from office, i. 233.
Moody, Rev. Samuel, chaplain of the expedition against Louisbourg, ii. 96; his despotic rule over his parishioners, ii. 97; his long prayers and sermons, ii. 98; preached to the soldiers at Canseau, ii. 109; says grace at Pepperrell's dinner given at Louisbourg, ii. 153.
Moore, ——, his soldiers camped at Louisbourg, ii. 121, 161 *note*.
Moore, Colonel, mentioned, ii. 161 *note*.
Morpain, Captain, opposes the landing of the enemy at Louisbourg, ii. 115.
Morris, ——, of Cambridge, mentioned, ii. 132.
Moulton, Captain, sent to attack Norridgewock, i. 236.
Moulton, ——, his soldiers camped at Louisbourg, ii. 121.
Mount Desert, Colonel Church's troops sent to, i. 117.
Mouse River, ii. 40.
Muis de Poubomcoup, Marie, married at Port Royal, i. 114.
Musquawkies, a name by which the Outagamie Indians called themselves, i. 332 *note*.
Mussey, widow, murdered by Indians, i. 46.

N.

Nantasket Roads, arrival of English fleet in, i. 159.
Nassonites, Indians, on the Red River, ii. 11.
Nathaniel, Captain, Indian chief, i. 50.
Natchez, the tribe of sun-worshippers, i. 294; attack the colonists in Louisiana, i. 310.
Natchitoches, a settlement on the Red River, ii. 9.
Naval force, the equipment of, for the expedition against Louisbourg, ii. 101; its arrival at Canseau, ii. 109; encounters the French frigate "Renommée," ii. 110; takes some French prizes, ii. 110; sails from Canseau, ii. 111; arrives at Louisbourg, ii. 112.
Neal, Andrew, the house of, attacked by Indians, i. 46.
Necessity, Fort, i. 328.
Neutrality, treaty of, proposed between Canada and the New England colonies, i. 99.
Neuvillette, Lieutenant, killed in fight with a privateer, i. 107.
Newbury, an intended Indian attack upon, i. 92.
New Brunswick, originally Acadia, i. 106, 204.
Newcastle, Duke of, orders the protection of Acadia by Commodore Warren, ii. 102; sends aid to the expedition against Louisbourg, ii. 104; letter to Governor Shirley quoted, ii. 159 *note;* approves Governor Shirley's proposal to capture Canada, ii. 168; promises British troops, ii. 170; fails to send them, ii. 171; his apathy of interest in the protection of Acadia, ii. 187, 197.
New England, French schemes for conquest in, i. 2, 3; encroaches on Acadian fisheries, i. 107; determines to attack Port Royal, i. 140; desires aid from England, i. 141; prediction concerning the possible independence of, i. 154; barred out from the fur-trade, i. 262; the Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle proclaimed in, ii. 270; colonies, their attitude as regarded war, i. 5.
New Eng. Hist. Gen. Register, cited, ii. 217 *note*.
New England troops raised for an attack on Port Royal, i. 144; their camping at Louisbourg, ii. 121; at Louisbourg, their cheerfulness under hardship, ii. 123; their orderly conduct, ii. 129; sickness, etc., ii. 131; their dissatisfaction and mutiny after the conquest of Louisbourg, ii. 162; sickness and death of, ii. 166.
Newfoundland, its conflicting powers, i. 127; the fisheries of, considered in the Treaty of Utrecht, i. 178.
New France, the zeal displayed by Jesuit missionaries in, i. 206, 207; the influence upon, by the occupation of Louisiana, i. 288; her two colonies, Canada and Louisiana, i. 313.

New Hampshire, sends soldiers to Port Royal, i. 121; called upon for troops, i. 131; assists in an attack upon Louisbourg, ii. 88; her contribution towards the siege of Louisbourg, ii. 100; reimbursed for expenses of taking Louisbourg, ii. 160; contributes men to capture Canada, ii. 169; sends troops to protect Acadia, ii. 199; dispute with Massachusetts concerning Fort Dummer, ii. 233.

N. H. Historical Collections, cited, i. 219 *note*.

New Haven, i. 132.

New Jersey, i. 6; called upon for troops, i. 130; her contributions towards the reduction of Canada, i. 132; contributes men to capture Canada, ii. 169.

New London, a conference of governors at, concerning England's attack on Canada, i. 158.

New Mexico, desire of the French explorers to open trade with, ii. 1; a route discovered from Louisiana to, ii. 21.

New Orleans, the foundations laid by Bienville, i. 307.

New York, plan of a French officer to destroy, i. 3; the bulwark of the Southern colonies, i. 5; destitution of her soldiers, and unfitness for war, i. 6; the pacific relations with Canada, i. 99; joins in the reduction of Canada, i. 132; her interest in the fur-trade, i. 262; a rival of Canada for the control of the West, i. 263; her attitude towards the Five Nations, i. 264; their friendship necessary to her for her fur-trade, i. 265; her communication with the West carried on through the Five Nations, i. 266; contributes men to capture Canada, ii. 169; her condition respecting military efficiency, ii. 222.

New York Colonial Documents, cited, i. 225 *note*.

Niagara, an important post for the French to secure, ii. 70.

Nicholson, Colonel Francis (Lieut.-Governor of New York), takes part in the scheme for reduction of Canada, i. 131; in command of New York troops, i. 135 and *note*; his advance towards Canada, i. 135; builds several forts, i. 135; stations his army at Wood Creek, i. 137; his troops disbanded, i. 140; sails for England, i. 141; given command of a new enterprise against Port Royal, i. 142; his plans, etc., i. 143; a dinner at the Green Dragon Tavern, i. 145; lands at Port Royal, i. 146; receives a messenger from Governor Subercase, i. 146; demands the surrender of the fort, i. 147; changes the name to Annapolis Royal, i. 148; sent to Boston from England to make preparations for England's attack on Canada, i. 158; encamped at Wood Creek, i. 170; receives news of Admiral Walker's retreat, i. 170; disbands his army, i. 171; governor at Annapolis, i. 187; his behavior towards the Acadians, i. 188.

Nicholson, Fort, on the Hudson, i. 135.

Niles, *Indian and French Wars*, cited, i. 44 *note*.

Nims, ——, escapes from Indian captivity, i. 83.

Niverville, Boucher de, ensign under St. Pierre in the search for the Pacific, ii. 59, 60; commanded the Canadian troops in an attack against Number Four, ii. 239; demands the surrender of the fort, ii. 241; disappointed of success, he retires with his troops from the place, ii. 243.

Nipegon Lake, a French post, ii. 30.

Noble, Colonel Arthur, commands troops sent to protect Acadia, ii. 199; occupies the village of Grand Pré, ii. 200; his quarters at Grand Pré attacked by Coulon de Villiers' troops, ii. 208, 210; killed by the French, ii. 210.

Noble, Ensign, a brother of Colonel Noble, at Grand Pré, ii. 208; killed in the attack by the French, ii. 210.

Noddles Island (East Boston), English troops quartered at, i. 159.

Norridgewocks, Indians of Maine, pretend a peace with Governor Dudley, i. 34; join a war-party, i. 92; a guard to the French colony on the Kennebec, i. 205; in charge of Father Sebastien Rale, i. 206; how they parted with their lands, i. 214; alarmed by the intrusion of settlers, i. 215; join in council to meet Governor Shute, i. 216; they annoy the English settlers, i. 223; invited to another council at Georgetown, i. 224; their interview with Captain Penhallow, i. 225; attack the fort at Georgetown, i. 226; interview with the embassy from Governor Dummer, i. 244; the scattering of the tribe, i. 247.

Norridgewock, the village of, in 1716, i. 209, 210, 211; the government of Massachusetts determine to destroy, i. 236, 237, 238.

Northampton, Mass., i. 48, 62, 90, ii. 247.
Northfield, Mass., abandoned, i. 53; particularly liable to Indian attack, ii. 246; the Sunday drum-beat at, ii. 246; the labors of the Rev. Benjamin Doolittle at, ii. 247; mentioned, ii. 233.
"Northumberland," the war-ship of the Duc d'Anville, ii. 177 and *note*.
Norton, ——, chaplain at Fort Massachusetts, ii. 257; quoted, ii. 260; his account of their march from the fort as prisoners, ii. 265; invited by De Muy to visit the fort at Crown Point, ii. 268.
Nova Scotia, i. 106; originally Acadia, i. 204; Archives cited, i. 203 *note*.
Noyes, Dr., built a stone fort at Cushnoc (Augusta), i. 213.
Noyon, Jacques de, sergeant in colony troops, i. 86.
Noyon, Mrs. Jacques de (Abigail Stebbins), i. 86.
Nantasket Roads, ii. 106.
Number Four, a settlement formed by the brothers Farnsworth, of Groton, ii. 234; the fort built at, ii. 236; a small garrison sent from Massachusetts, ii. 237; attacked by Indians, ii. 237; abandoned by its settlers, ii. 237; Captain Phineas Stevens sent to garrison it, ii. 238; again attacked by Indians, ii. 239; defended by Captain Stevens, ii. 239; Niverville demands its surrender, ii. 241; which being refused, he retires from the scene, ii. 241; the inhabitants return to, ii. 244.
Nutfield, i. 251.

O.

Ohio River, the French propose to build forts at, ii. 70.
Ojibwas, called to aid Dubuisson at Detroit, i. 271.
"Old Indian House," the house of John Sheldon at Deerfield, i. 65.
Oncpapa Indians, a tribe of the Sioux, ii. 54 *note*.
Oneida Indians, settle at Caughnawaga, i. 11.
Onondaga, the Iroquois capital, i. 9.
Orléans, Duke of, i. 305; approves the plan for the discovery of the Pacific Ocean, ii. 24, 358.
Orléans, Fort, built by Bourgmont on Missouri River, ii. 15.
Osages, Indians, ii. 11.
Osborne, ——, chairman of the Committee of War, ii. 132.
Ossipee Lake, i. 247, 253.
Oswego, a trading-house built at, ii. 72; its demolition ordered by Beauharnois, ii. 73.
Otoes, Indians, on the Missouri River, ii. 17.
Ottawa Indians, a tribe of the "Far Indians," i. 11; settled about Detroit, i. 265; their houses, crops, etc., i. 269.
Otter Creek, ii. 250.
Ouacos, Indians on Arkansas River, ii. 12 *note*.
Oushala, a chief of the Outagamies, i. 324.
Outagamies, Indians of Michigan, i. 265; the terror of the West, i. 268; settle themselves at Detroit, i. 270; their hostile intentions, i. 271; their camp attacked, i. 275; a fight ensues, i. 276; they ask an interview of Dubuisson, i. 277; more fighting, i. 280; they leave Detroit, i. 284; surrender to the French, i. 285; attack the Illinois, i. 319; expedition of Louvigny against the, i. 320; Vaudreuil determined to destroy, i. 320; their defences, i. 322 and *note*; make treaty of peace, i. 323; they attack the Illinois, i. 324; their war-chief burned by the Illinois, i. 324; order of King Louis for their destruction, i. 324; conflicting opinions concerning their extermination, i. 325; in council with Sieur de Lignery, i. 325; an expedition against them by Lignery, i. 327; again attacked by Sieur de Villiers, i. 328; again attacked by Hurons, etc., i. 330; and defeated, i. 331; attacked by a French trader, Marin, i. 332; the survivors incorporate themselves with the Sacs, etc., i. 332; derivation of the name, i. 333 *note*.
Oxford, the village of, attacked by Indians, i. 234.
Oyster River, attacked by Indians, i. 90.

P.

Pacific Ocean, search for the, begun, ii. 24; Charlevoix's search for the, ii. 25, 29; a company sent from Canada under La Perrière, ii. 27; the enterprise and explorations of Varennes de la Vérendrye in search of, ii. 30–39; the search of the brothers De la Vérendrye for, ii. 40–56; Captains Lewis and Clark explore their way

to, ii. 55; the search for, undertaken by M. de St. Pierre, ii. 57, 59 *note*.
Paddon, Captain, of the "Edgar," i. 165.
Padoucas, Indians, ii. 14; name given to the Comanche Indians, ii. 19 *note*.
Pain, Father, at Acadia, i. 182.
Palfrey, *New England*, cited, i. 261 *note*, ii. 160 *note*.
Panawamské, an Indian village, i. 235.
Paradis, ——, acted as pilot in Walker's expedition, i. 164.
"Parfait," a French war-ship, ii. 181.
Paris Documents, i. 100 *note*.
Parsons's *Life of Pepperrell*, cited, ii. 99 *note*, 113 *note*, 158 *note*.
Parsons, Widow, carried of by Indians, i. 46.
Parthena, a negro woman, i. 58.
Partridge, Colonel Samuel, letters of, cited, i. 66 *note*.
Passamaquoddy Bay, Colonel Church's attack on Canadians at, i. 118.
Patterson's memoir, cited, i. 129 *note*.
Paugus, war-chief of the Pequawkets, i. 248; killed, i. 258.
Pawnees, Indians, on the Missouri, ii. 14; visited by Du Tisné, ii. 14.
Payne, John, letter to Colonel Robert Hale, ii. 107 *note*.
Peace of Ryswick, mentioned, i. 2, 55.
Pelham, Fort, built on the site of the present town of Rowe, Mass., ii. 246.
Pemoussa, an Outagamie chief at the fight of Detroit, appeals to Dubuisson for peace, i. 278; makes a second appeal to Dubuisson, i. 282; surrenders and escapes, i. 286.
Penacooks, Indians, pretended peace with Governor Dudley, i. 35.
Penecaut, accompanies Le Sueur on his voyage, ii. 5; *Relation of*, cited, ii. 8 *note*.
Penhallow's *History of Wars of New England*, etc., i. 35 *note*, 36 *note*, 44 *note*, 67 *note*, 127 *note*, 212 *note*, 226 *note*, 253 *note*, 260 *note*.
Penhallow, Captain, his interview with hostile Indians at the Georgetown council, i. 225.
Pennsylvania, called upon for troops, i. 130; refused aid in the reduction of Canada, i. 132; men raised in, to capture Canada, ii. 169.
Penobscots, Indians, pretended peace with Governor Dudley, i. 35; join a war-party, i. 92; join in a council to meet Governor Shute, i. 216; the mission village of the, destroyed, i. 235; conclude a treaty of peace, i. 245; their new village burned by Captain Heath, i. 245; encamped with De Ramesay near Acadia, ii. 187.
Penobscot, Me., i. 3.
Pensacola, i. 130; Le Moyne d'Iberville at, i. 290; also Spanish ships, i. 290.
Pensens, ——, induced the Acadians to migrate, i. 186.
Pepperrell, William, cited, ii. 83 *note*; his portrait, ii. 91; given the chief command of an attack upon Louisbourg, ii. 91; his mansion-house at Kittery Point, ii. 92; his early life, education, etc., ii. 93; held many offices, ii. 94; consults Rev. George Whitefield when appointed to command the siege of Louisbourg, ii. 95; a plan suggested to him for reconnoitring Louisbourg, ii. 96; receives commissions from three Provinces, ii. 100; manages the landing of the fleet at Louisbourg, ii. 115; his soldiers camped at Louisbourg, ii. 121; the cheerfulness of his men under difficulties, ii. 123; orderly conduct of his men, ii. 129; his popularity with his army, ii. 131; his cares and annoyances, ii. 132; receives Warren's plan for taking Louisbourg, ii. 146; agrees with Warren upon a mode of attack, ii. 148; makes terms of capitulation to Duchambon, ii. 150; quoted concerning the surrender, ii. 151; gives a dinner to celebrate the surrender, ii. 152; jealousies between his soldiers and the sea force of Warren, ii. 155, 156; receives the keys of the fortress, ii. 157; delivers them to Governor Shirley, ii. 158; as compared with Warren, ii. 158 and *note*; knighted and given a commission in British army, ii. 159, in charge with Warren at Louisbourg, ii. 164.
Pepperrell Papers, the, cited, ii. 161 *note*.
Pepin, Lake, a fort built at, ii. 3, 6.
Pequawket Indians, i. 48; join in a council to meet Governor Shute, i. 216; a tribe of the Abenakis living on the Saco, i. 247; Lovewell's expedition against the, i. 249; the fight at Lovewell's Pond, i. 252, 254; cowed by the English, i. 259.
Perelle, Ensign, carries a flag of truce from Governor Subercase to the English camp, i. 146.
Perier, Sieur, succeeds Bienville in Louisiana, i. 309; recalled from Louisiana, i. 311.
Perrière, Boucher de la, military chief

of the mission to the Sioux Indians, ii. 27.
Perrot, Nicolas, a famous *voyageur*, ii. 3; built a fort at Lake Pepin, ii. 6 and *note*, 27.
Perrot, Fort, built by Nicolas Perrot, ii. 6 and *note*.
Perry, Professor A. L., ii. 254 *note*.
Perry, John, Mrs., a war prisoner on the march from Fort Massachusetts, ii. 266.
Petit Lorembec, several Englishmen captured and killed at, ii. 143.
Petition, to General Court for compensation of losses from the Indian attack on Deerfield, i. 64 *note*.
Petty, ——, escapes from Indian captivity, i. 83.
Petty's Plain, near Deerfield, i. 53.
Philipps, Governor Richard, concerning the government of Annapolis, i. 190; advises recall of French priests from Acadia, i. 195; orders the Acadians to swear allegiance to George I., i. 198; succeeded by Lieutenant-Governor Armstrong, i. 200.
Phillips, an illicit trader, i. 103.
Phippeny, ——, killed by Indians at Casco, Me., i. 43.
Phipps, Hon. Spencer, mentioned, ii. 257 *note*.
Phips, Sir William, mentioned, i 97, 169; captured Port Royal, i. 149.
Pickering, Lieutenant, killed by the French in their attack on Grand Pré, ii. 210.
Pierce, Captain, killed at siege of Louisbourg, ii. 127.
Pigiquid, now Windsor, i. 201.
Pine Hill, on the banks of the Saco, i. 247.
Pinet, Jesuit missionary, established the village of Cahokia, i. 317.
Piscataqua River, a view of from Kittery Point, ii. 92.
Pisiquid (now Windsor), an Acadian village, ii. 206.
Pitt, William, mentioned, i. 156, 176.
Placentia, a French station in Newfoundland, i. 127; the people of, ordered to evacuate, i. 181.
Plaisted, Elisha, married to Hannah Wheelwright, i. 49; captured by Indians on his wedding-day, i. 50; ransomed, i. 51.
Platte River, ii. 21.
Plessis, Joseph, Bishop of Quebec, i. 86.
Plymouth, Mass., i. 117.
Pomeroy, Seth, gunsmith of Northampton, ii. 108; at battle of Bunker Hill, ii. 108; saluted by General Putnam, ii. 108; major in expedition against Louisbourg, ii. 108; extract from his diary at the siege of Louisbourg, ii. 109; at the Grand Battery, ii. 119; his journal cited, ii. 161 *note*.
Pomeroy, Theodore, Esq., ii. 109 *note*.
Ponchartrain, M. de, approves Cadillac's plan for occupation of Detroit, i. 25; concerning the Indian warfare, i. 98; gossiping letters sent to him from Port Royal, i. 114; concerning the designs of England against Massachusetts, i. 151.
Ponchartrain, Fort, built at Detroit, i. 26, 269.
Pontoosuc (Pittsfield), settlement, ii. 245.
Popple, Mr., i. 132 *note*.
Porpoise, Cape, Me., attacked by Indians, i. 42.
Port à l'Anglois (Louisbourg), a fortress to be built at, i. 180.
Port Royal (Annapolis), the seat of government at Acadia, i. 108; the internal dissensions at, i. 109; official gossip at, i. 113; the claim of "The Church" for authority, i. 113; Colonel Church at, i. 119; an expedition sent to, by Governor Dudley, i. 121; the attack upon, i. 122; proves a failure, i. 125; the New England colonies determine to attack, i. 140; an attack to be made upon, i. 144; arrival of the squadron at, i. 145; Nicholson and Vetch land at, i. 146; capitulates to the English, i. 148; name changed to Annapolis Royal, i. 148.
Portsmouth, England, i. 131.
Portsmouth, N.H., place of assault of the French, i. 3; troops sent for defence against the Indians at, i. 47; an attack upon intended by the Indians, i. 92.
Poskoiac, River, ii. 35.
Pottawattamie Indians, a tribe of the Far Indians, i. 11; settled about Detroit, i. 265.
Pottawattamie, the village of, i. 269.
Poutrincourt, Baron de, i. 109.
Powder River Range, ii. 44.
Preble, Captain, an English officer at Grand Pré, ii. 214.
Prentice, Rev. ——, mentioned, ii. 133.
Price, ——, a militia officer at Haverhill, i. 94.
Prince, Rev. Thomas, quoted concern the backsliding of his flock, ii. 95.
"Prince d'Orange," French war-ship, ii. 176.
Privateers, encroach on Acadian fisheries, i. 107.
Proceedings of Mass. Hist. Soc., i. 66 *note*.

Protestant Reformation, the, i. 206.
"Province Galley," a Massachusetts armed vessel, i. 44.
Provincial Papers of New Hampshire, cited, i. 226 *note*.
Public Documents of Nova Scotia, i. 203 *note*.
Purpooduck Point, Me., attacked by Indians, i. 42.
Putnam, General Israel, salute to Seth Pomeroy at the battle of Bunker Hill, ii. 108.

Q.

Quary, Colonel ——, quoted, i. 6.
Quebec, i. 4; in possession of the Jesuits, i. 22; expects an attack from the English, i. 137; to be attacked by the English expedition, i. 159; prepares for defence against Walker's attack, i. 171; arrival of Sieur de la Valterie with news of the retreat of Walker, i. 172.
Queen Anne's War, the part of the American colonies in, i. 1; called also War of the Spanish Succession, i. 1; the beginnings of, i. 44.
Quesnel, a Frenchman in Bourgmont's party, ii. 18.

R.

Rainy Lake, a fort built at, ii. 33.
Rale, Sebastien, Jesuit missionary at Norridgewock, i 35 *note*, 206; a missionary to the Abenakis, i. 209, 210; opposed to the ministrations of the Rev. Joseph Baxter, i. 220; his correspondence with Baxter, i. 221; his correspondence with other ministers, i. 221; his power over the Indians, i. 222; quoted, i. 223 *note;* fears to lose his influence over the Indians, i. 224; stirs up an insurrection at the council at Georgetown, i. 225; his account of the attack on Georgetown, i. 226 *note;* he escapes arrest, i. 229; the government of Massachusetts demand him from the Indians, i. 229 and *note;* his death, i. 237; his character portrayed, i. 239; Jesuit missionary at St. Louis, i. 316.
Ramesay, M. de, Governor of Montreal, quoted, i. 67 *note*, 89 *note*, 320; sent with troops to surprise Nicholson advancing on Canada, i. 135; lands his troops at Crown Point, i. 136; retreats to Chambly, i. 136; sent to cooperate with D'Anville in retaking Acadia, ii. 186; encamps at Chignecto with a force of Penobscot Indians, ii. 187; builds a fort at Baye Verte, ii. 192; endeavors to excite the Acadians to insurrection, ii. 198; retreats before the coming of Colonel Arthur Noble, ii. 200; plan for attacking Colonel Noble at Grand Pré, ii. 201; the winter march of his troops, ii. 203–206; his troops divided into ten parties for attack, ii. 206; the plan of attack upon Grand Pré, ii. 207; the attack upon Grand Pré and its results, ii. 208–215; threatens the Acadians against intercourse with the English, ii. 217; orders the Acadians to take arms against the English, ii. 219.
Ramillies, i. 157.
Raudot, Intendant at Canada, mentioned, i. 115; urged the settlement of Cape Breton, i. 179, 180.
Reade, General J. Meredith, mentioned, ii. 5 *note*.
Rébald, Père, cited, ii. 22 *note*.
Récollets, friars at Port Royal, i. 114.
Rednap, an engineer, in the expedition to Port Royal, i. 121; quoted, i. 123, 124.
Red River, ii. 10.
Reed, Josiah, on the march as a prisoner of war from Fort Massachusetts, ii. 266; death of, ii. 269 *note*.
Rémonville, Sieur de, proposed the settlement of Louisiana, i. 288.
Renaissance, the, produced also a revival in religious life, i. 206.
Renaudière, an engineer in Bourgmont's party, ii. 16, 17.
"Renommée," a French frigate, ii. 110.
Repentigny, in Ramesay's expedition, ii. 202.
Rhode Island, i. 6; sends soldiers to Port Royal, i. 121; called upon for troops, i. 131; promises assistance in an attack upon Louisbourg, ii. 88, 90; failed to join in the siege of Louisbourg, ii. 100; reimbursed for expenses incurred, ii. 160; contributes men to capture Canada, ii. 169; sends troops to protect Acadia, ii. 199.
Rhodes, Captain, hurt by the bursting of a gun at Louisbourg, ii. 129 *note*.
Ribaut, mentioned, ii. 66.
Richelieu, Cardinal de, ii. 283.
Richmond, Colonel, an officer in Pepperrell's army, ii. 149.
Richmond, Me., i. 214.
Richmond, Fort, built on the Kennebec, i. 214, 236.
Rigaud de Vaudreuil, ordered to defend

Fort Frédéric against English attack, ii. 250; intended to attack Schenectady, ii. 251; the march of his war-party to attack Fort Massachusetts, ii. 252–255, the numbers of his war-party, ii. 253; forms his war-party into two brigades, ii. 253; the plan of attack, ii. 255; the attack made, ii. 259; wounded, ii. 259; offers terms of capitulation, ii. 262; delivers some of the English prisoners to the Indians, ii. 264; his party kill some people at Deerfield, ii. 264; induces the Indians to treat the prisoners humanely, ii. 265, 266; allows his war-party to devastate the towns of the Hoosac Valley, ii. 267; return to Crown Point, ii. 268.
Rigauville, assists in attack on Grand Pré, ii. 208.
Rivière-aux-Canards, ii. 214.
Roberts, Colonel, burned the fort at Saratoga by advice of Governor Clinton, ii. 226.
Robbins, Jonathan, signs petition to fight Indians, i. 249; wounded by Indians, i. 253; killed in the fight at Lovewell's Pond, i. 255.
Robinson, John, re-captures some fishing vessels, i. 234.
Rochelle, France, ii. 175; colonists from, in Louisiana, i. 297.
Rock River, i. 330.
Rocky Mountains, ii. 8, 15 *note;* discovered by La Vérendrye brothers, ii. 50; discovered by Captains Lewis and Clark, ii. 55.
Rogers, John, minister of Boxford, i. 259.
Rogers, Susanna, her engagement to Jonathan Frye, i. 259; her verses on the fate of Jonathan Frye, i. 261.
Rolfe, Rev. ——, killed by Indians at Haverhill, i. 93.
Ronde, M. de la, an officer at Port Royal, i. 112.
Roosevelt, Theodore, mentioned, ii. 119 *note.*
Rosalie, Fort, uprising of the Natchez Indians at, i. 309.
Rouge, Fort, built by La Vérendrye, ii. 35.
Rouillé, Monseigneur, cited, ii. 57 *note.*
Rous, ——, an illicit trader, i. 103.
Rous, Captain, commands the war-ship "Shirley," ii. 101; commended for gallant conduct at siege of Louisbourg, ii. 159.
Rousseau, mentioned, i. 2.
Rouville, Hertel de, commands a war-party to attack Deerfield, i. 53, 56, 58; wounded, i. 65; commands an Indian war-party to attack New England towns, i. 92.
Rowe, Mass., ii. 246.
Roy, Jacques, a Canadian, married Martha French, i. 86.
Roy, Mrs. Jacques (Martha French) i. 86.
Royal Battery, the, at Louisbourg, ii. 103.
Rutland, i. 235.

S.

Sabrevois, Sieur de, a member of Rigaud's war-party, ii. 254.
Saco, town of, rebuilt, i. 213.
Saco River, i. 34, 35, 247.
Sacs, the, a tribe of the "Far Indians," i. 11; at Michigan, i. 265; aid Dubuisson at Detroit, i. 273.
Sacs and Foxes settle on the Mississippi, i. 332; in war against American frontiersmen, i. 333; a party of their chiefs at Boston, i. 333.
Sadler, ——, of Deerfield, ii. 264.
Sagean, Matthieu, romances mentioned, ii. 8.
Saginaws, the, attacked the Outagamies, i. 319.
Saguina, an Ottawa chief, i. 271.
St. André River, named by Fabry de la Bruyère, ii. 22.
Saint-Ange, Sieurs de (father and son), attack the Outagamies, i. 328; sent by Bourgmont to the village of the Kansas Indians, ii. 15.
St. Antoine, Fort, built by Nicolas Perrot, ii. 6 *note.*
Saint-Castin, Baron Vincent de, plan to attack Boston, i. 4 *note;* mentioned, i. 228.
Saint-Castin (son of Baron de Saint-Castin), Abenaki chief, i. 36; brought to Boston, charged with rebellion, i. 228.
St. Castin's Fort, now Castine, i. 118.
St. Charles, Fort, built by La Vérendrye, ii. 34.
St. Christopher, Island, a contribution for, i. 96 *note.*
Saint Clair, Lieutenant-General, given command of British troops to capture Canada, ii. 170.
St. Croix River, i. 205.
St. Francis, a Jesuit mission settlement, i. 74, 208, 274.
St. George River, a dividing line, i. 205 *note;* the fort at, attacked, i. 234.
St. John (Lord Bolingbroke), i. 156; scheme for attacking Canada, i. 157.

St. John, an English station in Newfoundland, i. 127; attacked by Subercase, i. 127.
St. John Isle, ii. 202.
St. John River, i. 205.
St. Joseph River, i. 271, 330.
St. Joseph, a fort built on the, by the French, ii. 76.
St. Lawrence River, i. 179.
St. Louis, i. 11.
St. Michael, name of the Canadian mission to the Sioux Indians, ii. 28.
Saint-Ours des Chaillons, commanded an Indian war-party, i. 92; in Ramesay's expedition, ii. 202.
Saint-Ovide, Sieur de, attacks Fort William, Newfoundland, i. 128; quoted, i. 190; keeps his agents at work among the Acadians, i. 192.
St. Paul's Bay, i. 22.
St. Peter River, settlement of Le Sueur on the, ii. 6.
Saint-Pierre, Legardeur de, abandons the Sioux mission, ii. 29; undertakes the search for the Pacific, ii. 57, 59 and *note;* spends the winter at Fort La Reine, ii. 60; returns to Quebec, ii. 61; visited by hostile Assiniboins, ii. 61; in Ramesay's expedition, ii. 202.
St. Pierre, Fort, built at Rainy Lake, ii. 33.
Saint-Poncy, an Acadian missionary, i. 193.
Saint-Simon, quoted, i. 306.
St. Sulpice, i. 79.
Saint-Vallier, M. de, i. 137 *note.*
Saint-Vincent, Madame de, at Port Royal, i. 113.
Salem, Mass., i. 121.
Saltonstall, ——, governor of Connecticut, i. 132.
Samuel, Captain, a chief of the Eastern Indians, i. 35.
Santa Fé, a route explored from Louisiana to, ii. 22 and *note.*
"Sapphire," one of Admiral Walker's war-ships, i. 170.
Saratoga, i. 135; the garrison withdrawn from the fort by Governor Clinton, ii. 225; the fort at, burned by order of Governor Clinton, ii. 226; attacked by Marin, ii. 226 *note.*
Saunderson, *History of Charlestown, N. H.,* cited, ii. 233 *note.*
Sauvolle, Sieur de, in charge of fort at Biloxi, near the Mississippi, i. 292.
Scalp Point (Crown Point), the intention of the English to seize, ii. 74.
Scarborough, Me., attacked by Indians, i. 42; rebuilt, i. 213.
Schaticook, name given to eastern tributary of the Hudson, ii. 251.
Schenectady, an intended attack upon, by Rigaud's war party, ii. 251.
Schuyler, Abraham, induces the Five Nations to aid in the reduction of Canada, i. 133.
Schuyler, Peter, i. 7, 10, 56; endeavors to keep alliance with the Five Nations, i. 8; gets promise of peace from Indians, i. 96; enters into the scheme for the reduction of Canada, i. 132; goes to England with some Mohawk chiefs, i. 141; concerning a fort at Niagara, ii. 71; sets the people of Newbury, &c., on guard against an Indian attack, i. 92; stationed at Saratoga, ii. 226.
Schuyler's *Colonial New York,* cited, ii. 226 *note.*
Scott, Moses, a prisoner of war from Fort Massachusetts, ii. 267.
Sedgwick, Major, captured Port Royal, i. 149.
Seminary, the, at Quebec, burned, i. 79 *note.*
Serier, Captain, mentioned, ii. 177 *note.*
Sewall, Judge Samuel, diary quoted, i. 35 *note;* 94 *note;* 215 and *note;* his feeling toward Governor Dudley, i. 101; oath administered by, at council of Indians, i. 216; his speech before the Councillors, i. 232.
Seven Years' War, mentioned, i. 204.
Seymour, i. 165.
Shannon, Richard Viscount, commissioned to attack Quebec, i. 143 and *n.*
Sheldon, George, of Deerfield, i. 56 *note;* 64 *note;* 66 *note;* 85 *note.*
Sheldon, Hannah, wife of John, Jr., i. 61; a prisoner in Canada, i. 82; ransomed, i. 83.
Sheldon, Ensign John, the house of, at Deerfield, defensible against Indians, i. 54; the attack upon his house by Indians, i. 60; the door of his house preserved, i. 65 and *note;* sent by Governor Dudley to ransom the Deerfield captives, i. 82; makes a second journey to Canada for release of prisoners, i. 84; a third visit, i. 85; a paper on, by Alice C. Baker, i. 85 *note.*
Sheldon, Mrs. John, killed by Indians, i. 61.
Sheldon, John, Jr., i. 61.
Sheldon, Mary, captured by Indians, i. 61.
Sheldon, Mercy, killed by Indians, i. 61.
Sheldon's *Early History of Michigan,* cited, i. 25 *note.*

Sherburn, Henry, commissary of New Hampshire regiment, ii. 95.
Sherburn, Captain Joseph, placed in charge of a battery at siege of Louisbourg, ii. 126; extracts from his diary concerning the siege, ii. 127; receives a flag of truce from Duchambon, ii. 149.
Shirley, Governor of Massachusetts, mentioned, ii. 80; advised to attack Louisbourg, ii. 83 and *note;* made governor of Massachusetts, ii. 84; proposes to the General Court an attack upon Louisbourg, ii. 85; his disappointment at their vote, ii. 86; at last prevails with the court, ii. 88; induces Governor Wentworth to assist in the attack upon Louisbourg, ii. 89; writes to the Duke of Newcastle concerning the siege of Louisbourg, ii. 104; his directions for the attack upon Louisbourg, ii. 105 and *note;* used his influence to obtain compensation to Massachusetts for the siege of Louisbourg, ii. 161 *note;* arrived at Louisbourg and quieted the discontented soldiers, ii. 163; urges upon the Duke of Newcastle the conquest of Canada, ii. 167; does not receive the promised troops from England, ii. 171; designs an attack against Crown Point, ii. 172; urges upon the Duke of Newcastle the protection of Acadia, ii. 187; sends militia, &c., to protect it, ii. 187; proposes the removal of the Acadians, ii. 193; his plan concerning them, ii. 194 and *note*, 195; proposed to exclude French priests from Acadia, ii. 195 and *note;* correspondence with Duke of Newcastle concerning the Acadians, quoted, ii. 196 *note*, 197; sends troops to the defence of Acadia, ii. 198, 199; sends Massachusetts troops to occupy Grand Pré, ii. 217; quoted concerning the condition of the Acadians, ii. 220.
Shirley, Fort, built to protect settlements in the Berkshire valley, ii. 245.
Shirley, Mrs., arrived at Louisbourg, ii. 163.
"Shirley," a war-ship in Pepperrell's squadron, ii. 101, 141; Massachusetts frigate sent to reinforce Annapolis, ii. 182.
Shirreff, William, proposal to remove the Acadians, ii 192.
Shrewsbury, Duke of, presents Mohawks to Queen Anne, i. 142.
Shubenacadie, a missionary station, ii. 202.
Shubenacadie River, ii. 204.
Shute, Governor Samuel, succeeds Dudley as governor, i. 214; called a council of Eastern Indians at Georgetown, i. 215; his speech at council of Indians, i. 216; the Indians renew their treaty with him, i. 219; declares war against the Abenaki, i. 230; hampered by the Government in making conciliation with the Indians, i. 230; returns to England, i. 231.
Sibley, John Langdon, cited, ii. 117 *n.*
Silesia, seized by Frederic of Prussia, ii. 78.
Simons, Benjamin, a wounded prisoner from Fort Massachusetts, ii. 267.
Sioux Indians, a tribe of the "Far Indians," i. 11; La Sueur opens trade with, ii. 8; a company formed in Canada to establish a mission among, ii. 26.
Sioux mission, the, sent from Canada, ii. 27; the company establish themselves at Lake Pepin, ii. 27; name their mission St. Michael, ii. 28; name their fort Fort Beauharnois, ii. 28; the mission a failure, ii. 28.
Skene Mountain, near Whitehall, ii. 252.
Slade, Dr. D. D., mentioned, ii. 258 *note*.
Smead, John, a prisoner of war on the march from Fort Massachusetts, ii. 266; killed by Indians, ii. 269.
Smead, Mrs. John, has a child born while on the march from Fort Massachusetts, ii. 266; death of, ii. 269.
Smead, Captivity, child of John Smead, ii. 266.
Smibert, ——, his portrait of William Pepperrell, ii. 91.
Smith, *History of New York*, cited, i. 142 *note*, ii. 225 *note*.
Smollett cited, ii. 83 *note*, 270.
Snake Indians of the West, ii. 40; attack the tribe of Horse Indians, ii. 46; a march of Horse Indians against them, ii. 47, 50; they flee before the enemy, ii. 52.
Snelling, *Tales of the Northwest*, i. 332 *note*.
Snow, E. A., ii. 62 *note*.
Soissons, Le Comte de, ii. 283.
Sokokis Indians, living on the Saco River, i. 247.
Sorel, town of, i. 74.
Southack, Captain, defends Major March against the Indians at Casco, i. 43.
Spafford, John, Jr., one of the settlers of Number Four, on the Connecticut, ii. 234; on committee for the protection of the settlement, ii. 234.

Spain, the power gained by Great Britain over, i. 1; bent on claiming the Mississippi, etc., i. 290.
Spaniards, the, of Mexico, jealous of French designs, ii. 10; attempt to attack the French at the Illinois, ii. 14; the Mandans' description of, ii. 37, 40.
Spanish Succession, War of, caused by Louis XIV., i. 1.
Sparhawk, Nathaniel, son-in-law of Pepperrell, ii. 133; desires some plunder from Louisbourg, ii. 154.
Sparks's American Biography cited, i. 220 *note*.
Spurwink, Me., Indian attack upon, i. 42.
"Squirrel," frigate, i. 216.
Stebbins, Abigail, mentioned, i. 85 *note*; married Jacques de Noyon, i. 86.
Stebbins, Benoni, sergeant in militia at Deerfield, i. 54; the Indians attack his house, i. 59; killed, i. 60.
Steele, i. 142.
Stella, i. 174.
Stevens, B. F., mentioned, ii. 244 *note*.
Stevens, Phineas, a settler of Number Four on the Connecticut, ii. 235; his ingenious defences of Number Four from the Indian attack, ii. 239; refuses to surrender to Niverville, and compels his departure, ii. 242; his gallant conduct recognized by Commodore Charles Knowles, ii. 243.
Stoddard, ——, escaped from Deerfield, i. 59.
Stoddard, John, superintendent of defence, etc., of Western Massachusetts, ii. 235; charged with construction of forts in Berkshire valley, ii. 247.
Stone, *Life and Times of Sir William Johnson*, ii. 225 *note*.
Stone, William L., cited, ii. 262 *note*.
Storer, John, major in the Maine militia, ii. 99.
Storer, Joseph, his house at Wells a garrison against Indians, i. 37.
Storer, Mary, carried off prisoner by Indians, i. 41.
Strait of Canso, i. 179.
Stuckley, Captain, of British frigate "Deptford," i. 125.
Subercase, Governor, quoted concerning the attack on Haverhill, i. 98 *note*, 107; quoted concerning affairs at Port Royal, i. 111; offers the capitulation of Port Royal to General Nicholson, i. 147; quoted, i. 149 *note*.
Sulte, M. Benjamin, cited, ii. 30 *note*.
Sunderland, Earl of, cited, i. 131 *note*.
"Superbe," a war-ship of Commodore Warren, ii. 103.
Superior, Lake, ii. 24, 30, 32.
Swanzey (Lower Ashuelot) a settlement in New Hampshire, ii. 230 *note*.
Swift, ——, quoted concerning the failure of Walker's expedition, i. 174.
Sydney, the fleet of Admiral Walker at, i. 170.
Symmes, Rev. Thomas, preached a sermon on the fate of Lovewell and his men, i. 260 *note*.

T.

Taconic Falls, Maine, i. 236.
Taensas, a tribe of sun-worshippers, i. 294.
Tailor, Colonel, sent with summons for the surrender of Port Royal, i. 147.
Tarbell, John, captured, and becomes Indian chief, i. 89 *note*.
Tarbell, Zechariah, captured, and becomes Indian chief, i. 89 *note*.
"Tartar," a war-sloop fitted out by Rhode Island, ii. 90, 101.
Tatmagouche, village of, ii. 203.
Taunton, Mass., i. 121.
Temple and Sheldon, *History of Northfield* cited, ii. 246 *note*.
Tennessee River, the French propose to build forts at, ii. 70.
Thaxter, Colonel Samuel, sent as ambassador to Vaudreuil, i. 243; has an interview with the Indians, i. 244.
The Boston Post Boy cited, ii. 217 *note*.
The Importance and Advantage of Cape Breton quoted, ii. 122 *note*.
"The Illinois," a settlement on the Mississippi, i. 316; settled by Canadians, etc., i. 317; the mixed marriages at, i. 317; annexed to Louisiana, i. 317.
Thierry, Captain of the Royal Battery at Louisbourg, ii. 118.
Thomassy, *Geologie*, etc., cited, ii. 10 *note*.
Three Rivers, ii. 29, 250.
Ticonderoga, Fort, ii. 252.
Titcomb's battery at Louisbourg, ii. 124.
Tiverton, R. I., i. 116.
Topsfield, Mass., i. 121.
Tonty, Alphonse de, accompanies Cadillac to Detroit, i. 25.
Tonty, Henri de, brother of Alphonse, i. 25; a letter written by him found among the Indians, i. 291 and *note*; in the fur-trade at Fort St. Louis, i. 265.

Tories, the, eager for peace with France, i. 176.
Toronto, a trading-post established at, ii. 73.
Toulouse, Comte de, interested in the discovery of the Pacific, ii. 26.
Trading-posts, a chain of, established by the French from Canada to Louisiana, ii. 76.
Treaty of Casco, between the Abenaki Indians and Governor Dudley, i. 34.
Treaty of Utrecht, ii. 67; the conditions of, i. 176–179.
"Trident," French war-ship, ii. 176.
Trinity Bay, Newfoundland, i. 127.
Tucker, Sergeant, wounded by Indians after a wedding-feast, i. 49.
Tufts, William, his exploit at Louisbourg, ii. 117, 139 *note*.
Turner, ——, a militia officer at Haverhill, i. 94.
Turner, *Reports upon Indian Tribes* cited, ii. 19, *note*.
Tuscaroras Indians joined to the Five Nations, i. 264.
Tyng, Captain, captures and scalps several Indians, i. 48, 53 *note*.
Tyng, Captain Edward, chosen naval commander by Pepperrell, ii. 101.
Tyng, Colonel, sent to aid the wounded in Lovewell's fight, i. 258.
Two Mountains, mission at, i. 330.

U.

Usher, Robert, killed in the fight at Lovewell's Pond, i. 255.

V.

Vaillant, ——, Jesuit, an agent among the Five Nations, i. 9.
Vallière, Sieur de la, attempts to burn Pepperrell's storehouses near Louisbourg, ii. 142.
Valterie, Sieur de la, arrives at Quebec with accounts of the wreck of Walker's fleet, i. 172; a member of Rigaud's war-party, ii. 253.
Vantadour, Le Duc de, ii. 283.
Varennes, René Gaultier de, governor of Three Rivers, ii. 29; marriage of, ii. 29.
Varennes, de la Vérendrye, Pierre Gaultier, his action at battle of Malplaquet, ii. 29.
Vaudreuil, Cavagnal Pierre Rigaud de, French governor in Quebec, i. 36; instigated some Indian attacks, i. 44, 45; sends a war-party to attack Deerfield, Mass., i. 52 and *note*; quoted, i. 65, 67; ransoms Rev. John Williams from the Indians, i. 76; terms for the ransom of prisoners, i. 82; bought Stephen Williams from Indians, i. 84; organizes a war-party of French and Indians, i. 92; quoted on losses at Haverhill, i. 94; quoted, i. 96 *note*; his terms of a neutrality with the colonies, i. 99; sends troops to surprise Colonel Nicholson advancing on Canada, i. 135; notified of English expedition against Canada, i. 171; lends aid to Rale in rousing the Indians to insurrection, i. 224; allows a pension to Rale, i. 227; pleased with the attack on Georgetown, i. 227; correspondence with Governor Dummer on the death of Rale, i. 241; receives an embassy from Governor Dummer, i. 243; determined to destroy the Outagamies, i. 320; gains the consent of the Five Nations to build a fort at Niagara, ii. 72.
Vaudreuil, Rigaud de. (*See* Rigaud de Vaudreuil.)
Vaughan, William, his character portrayed, ii. 83, 84; of Damariscotta, advised the siege of Louisbourg, ii. 83, 85; attacks the Grand Battery at Louisbourg, ii. 116; reinforced by Lieutenant-Colonel Bradstreet, ii. 117; announces the taking of the Grand Battery to Pepperrell, ii. 117; proposes to attack the Island Battery, ii. 136.
Vera Cruz, i. 290.
Verazan, Jean, ii. 274.
Verelst, Dutch artist, paints the portraits of Mohawk chiefs, i. 142.
Verrazzano, mentioned, ii. 66.
Vetch, Captain Samuel, goes to Canada to negotiate for release of prisoners, i. 83, 99; suspected of illicit trade, i. 100, 103; mentioned, i. 122; his antecedents, i. 129; his marriage, i. 129; his scheme for the reduction of Canada, etc., i. 130; sails to England for aid, i. 130; perfects his plans in Boston and New York, i. 131, 132; awaits at Boston the arrival of the English squadron, i. 139; his disappointment at the non-arrival, i. 140; made adjutant-general of a new enterprise, i. 142; a dinner at the Green Dragon Tavern, i. 145; lands at Port Royal, i. 146; takes command as governor of Annapolis Royal, i. 148; commands in Walker's expedition against Canada, i. 163; his escape from shipwreck, i. 167; offers to

pilot the fleet, i. 169; expresses his mind at the retreat of Walker, i. 170; his neglected condition at Annapolis, i. 183 and *note*, 184.
Vetch, William, death of, i. 129.
"Vigilant," a French ship-of-war taken by the English in Louisbourg harbor, ii. 141.
Villemont, assists in attack on Grand Pré, ii. 208.
Villiers, Coulon de, mentioned, i. 328; attacked the Outagamies, i. 328; at Fort Necessity, ii. 202; commands the Ramesay expedition, ii. 202; receives aid from the priests Maillard and Girard, ii. 204; receives information concerning his attack on Grand Pré, ii. 207; the number of his troops in the attack upon Grand Pré, ii. 215; makes the attack on Grand Pré and is wounded, ii. 209.
Villieu, M. de, accuses the ecclesiastics of illicit trade, i. 114.
Vincennes, Sieur de, arrived at Detroit to aid Dubuisson, i. 272; follows up an attack upon the Outagamies, i. 285.
Vincennes, on the Wabash River, ii. 76.
Virginia, i. 6; contributes men to capture Canada, ii. 169.

W.

Wainwright, Colonel Francis, a commander in the expedition to Port Royal, i. 121.
Waldo, Brigadier, sent to occupy the Grand Battery at siege of Louisbourg, ii. 119; *to Shirley*, cited, ii. 119 *note*; quoted, ii. 137; mentioned, ii. 161 *note*.
Waldron, Mrs. Adelaide Cilley, ii. 93 *note*.
Walker, Sir Hovenden, admiral of the Canada expedition from England, i. 157; his reception in Boston, i. 159; preparations in Boston to join his expedition, i. 161; quoted concerning deserters, i. 162; he sails from Boston, i. 163; quotations from his journal, i. 164; his fleet barely escapes shipwreck, i. 165; the loss of his fleet by wreck, i. 167; anxious for retreat, i. 168; holds a council of war, i. 168; sails for Spanish River, i. 170; wild reports at Quebec concerning the wreck of his fleet, i. 173; sails for England, i. 174; holds council of war concerning Placentia, i. 174; emigrated to South Carolina, thence to Barbadoes, where he died, i. 175; his journal, i. 175 *note*.
Wallace, town of, Acadia, ii. 203.
Walton, Colonel, called to account by the Massachusetts Assembly, i. 231.
Wanton, governor of Rhode Island, ii. 90 *note*, 94 *note*, 99 *note*.
War-parties sent from Montreal in 1746, ii. 232.
Warren, Commodore Peter, at Antigua, invited to aid in the siege of Louisbourg, ii. 102; ordered to the protection of Acadia by the Duke of Newcastle, ii. 102; joins the expedition against Louisbourg, ii. 103, 111; quoted, ii. 125; impatient for attack, ii. 137; his desire to secure humane treatment to captives, ii. 143; his plan for the immediate taking of Louisbourg, ii. 145; agrees with Pepperrell upon a mode of attack, ii. 148; together with Pepperrell agrees upon terms of capitulation from Louisbourg, ii. 150; his proposed "ball" at Louisbourg, ii. 152; the French prizes taken by his squadron, ii. 155; jealousies of his squadron and the army of Pepperrell, ii. 155, 156; his speech to the New England soldiers, ii. 158 *note*; compared with Pepperrell, ii. 158; made an admiral, ii. 159; remains with Pepperrell in charge of Louisbourg, ii. 164; received commission as governor of the fortress ii. 167; Admiral, defeats La Jonquière in command of a French fleet, ii. 184; mentioned, ii. 228.
Warren, Mrs., arrived at Louisbourg, ii. 163.
Washington, George, mentioned, i. 328.
Webster, Mount, i. 247.
Wedding, a notable, in Wells, i. 49.
Wells, John, an envoy to ransom the Deerfield captives, i. 82.
Wells, Jonathan, his house at Deerfield fortified against Indians, i. 55; assists in driving the enemy out of Deerfield, i. 63; petition for compensation of losses from the attack, i. 64 *note*.
Wells, Thomas, murder of his wife by Indians at Wells, Me., i. 40.
Wells, Me., its garrisons, i. 37; the church at, i. 38; its people, i. 38; its judicial officers, i. 39; its "turbulent women," i. 39; Indian attack upon, i. 41; troops sent for defence against the Indians at, i. 47; annoyed by Indians. i. 95.
Wendell, Jacob, cited, ii. 178 *note*.
Wentworth, Governor Benning, of New Hampshire, i. 260 *note*; induced to

aid in the attack upon Louisbourg, ii. 89; his desire to command the troops, ii. 91; his old mansion at Little Harbor, ii. 92.
Westbrook, Colonel, i. 210 *note;* sent to demand Rale from the Indians, i. 229; burns the mission village of the Penobscots, i. 235, 236.
Western Posts, the, Canada's endeavor to control, i. 315.
West India Company, built a fort on river Kansas, ii. 15.
West Indies, i. 107.
Weymouth, Mass., i. 121.
Whigs, the, fallen from power, i. 176.
Whipple, *Reports upon Indian Tribes*, cited, ii. 19 *note*.
Whitefield, George, his advice to William Pepperrell, ii. 95; his motto for a flag, ii. 95.
Whitehall, on Lake Champlain, ii. 252.
White Mountains, i. 247.
White River, i. 71, ii. 35.
Whiting, ——, a member of Lovewell's expedition, i. 253.
Wheelwright, John, the notable wedding of his daughter, i. 49.
Wheelwright, Hannah, married to Elisha Plaisted, i. 49; her husband captured by Indians, i. 50.
Wichitas, Indians, on Arkansas River, ii. 12 *note*.
Willard, ——, his soldiers camped at Louisbourg, ii. 121.
Willard, Rev. Joseph, killed by Indians, i. 235.
William III., deed of Northwestern country given to, by the Five Nations, i. 30.
William, Fort, Newfoundland, attacked by the French, i. 127; again attacked by Sieur de Saint-Ovide, i. 128.
Williams, Eleazer, grandson of Eunice Williams, i. 87 and 88 *note*.
Williams, Captain Ephraim, in command at Fort Shirley, ii. 247; the founder of Williams College, ii. 256; killed in battle at Lake George, ii. 257 *note*.
Williams, Esther, ransomed, i. 83.
Williams, Eunice, child of Rev. John, i. 71; kept at the Mission of St. Louis, i. 76; remains in captivity, i. 85; married an Indian, i. 87; visits to Deerfield, i. 87.
Williams, Major Israel, commissary at Fort Shirley, ii. 247.
Williams, Rev. John, minister at Deerfield, i. 54; mentioned, i. 55 *note;* his house attacked by Indians, i. 58; taken captive, i. 61; estimates the losses of the enemy, i. 65 *note;* account of their march, i. 67; preached to his flock during their march into captivity, i. 70; separated from his family, i. 71; his sufferings while on the march, i. 73; at the village of St. Francis, i. 74; entertained kindly by a Frenchwoman, i. 74; refuses to be converted to certain rites of the Jesuit church, i. 74; ransomed by Governor Vaudreuil and sent to Montreal, i. 76; sent to Quebec, i. 77; his experience with the Jesuit priests, i. 77, 78; sent to Château Richer, i, 78; released from captivity, i. 84; returns to Deerfield, i. 87; quoted, i. 91; mentioned, ii. 165.
Williams, Mrs. (Rev.) John, death of, i. 69.
Williams, Roger, mentioned, ii. 90.
Williams, Samuel, child of Rev. John, i. 71; conversion to Roman faith, i. 80; return to Deerfield and death, i. 80.
Williams, Stephen, son of Rev. John, captured by Indians, i. 66 *note;* released from captivity, i. 84; becomes a minister, i. 87; minister of Long Meadow, Mass., and chaplain in the army at Louisbourg, ii. 165.
Williams, Stephen W., i. 54 *note*.
Williams, Thomas, surgeon at Fort Massachusetts, ii. 257.
Williams, Colonel W., cited, ii. 240 *note*.
Williams, William, justice of peace, ii. 257 *note*.
Williams College, ii. 254.
Williams River, named for Rev. John Williams, i. 70 *note*.
Williamson, ——, *History of Maine*, cited, i. 44 *note*, 214 *note*, 219 *note*, 226 *note*, 253 *note*.
Williamstown, Mass., ii. 254.
Wilson, General James Grant, cited, i. 129 *note*.
Wind River Range of the Rocky Mountains, ii. 52.
Winnebagoes, Indians of Michigan, i. 265.
Winnepesaukee, Lake, the rendezvous of an Indian war-party, i. 92, 250.
Winnipeg, Lake, a post established at, ii. 24, 32.
Winsor, Justin, *Nar and Crit. Hist.*, cited, i. 142 *note*, 213 *note*.
Winter Harbor, Me., attack upon by Indians, i. 42, 45; annoyed by Indians, i. 95.
Winthrop, Fitz-John, sends relief to Deerfield, i. 66 *note*.
Wisconsin Historical Collections, cited, i. 328 *note*.

Wisconsin River, ii. 27.
Wiwurna, Indian chief, in dialogue with Governor Shute, i. 217, 218.
Wolcott, General Roger, commands Connecticut troops in an attack upon Louisbourg, ii. 90; commander of Connecticut forces in siege of Louisbourg, ii. 100; quoted concerning the Grand Battery at Louisbourg, ii. 120; quoted, ii. 138, 157; mentioned, ii. 161 *note*.
Wolfe, mentioned, i. 156.
Wood Creek, i. 130, 135, ii. 245, 252.
Woods, Sergeant, a member of Lovewell's expedition, i. 252.
Woods, Lake of the, ii. 33.
Wright, Daniel, Northfield, Mass., ii. 247.
Wright, Ebenezer, petition for compensation of losses from Indian attack on Deerfield, i. 64 *note*.
Wroth, Ensign, gains the submission of the Acadians, i. 200.
Wyatt, Lieutenant, attacked by Indians at Black Point, Me., i. 46.
Wyman, Ensign Seth, in the fight with Indians at Lovewell's Pond, i. 254; arrived at Dunstable, i. 257; joined in Lovewell's expedition, i. 251.

X.

Xavier, mentioned, i. 206.

Y.

Yankton Indians, a tribe of the Sioux, ii. 54 *note*.
Yellowstone Park, ii. 50.
Yellowstone River, ii. 21.
York, Me., attack upon the people at, by Indians, i. 46; annoyed by Indians, i. 95.